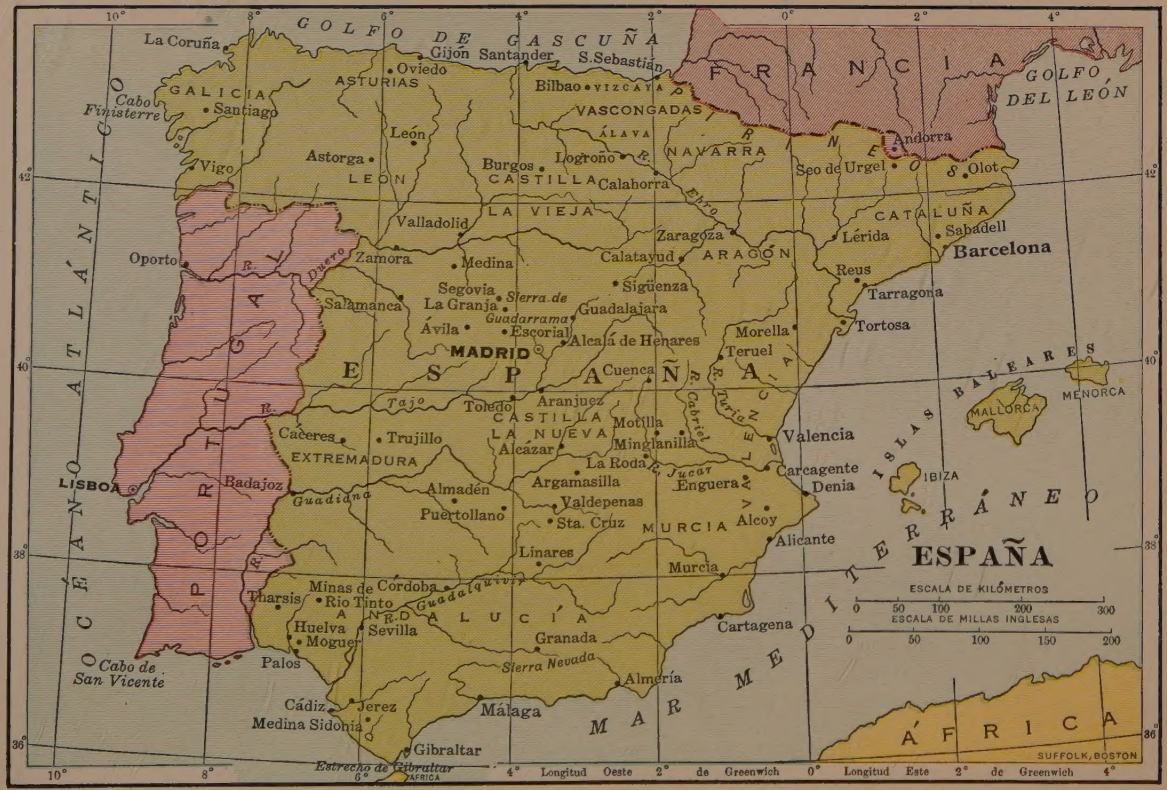
Ruth E. Black.


ESPAÑA
GOLFO DE GASCUÑA
GOLFO DEL LEÓN
FRANCIA
PIRINEOS
ESPAÑA
PORTUGAL
OCÉANO ATLÁNTICO
MAR MEDITERRÁNEO
ÁFRICA
ISLAS BALEARES
MALLORCA
MENORCA
IBIZA
GALICIA
ASTURIAS
LEÓN
CASTILLA LA VIEJA
VASCONGADAS
ÁLAVA
NAVARRA
CATALUÑA
ARAGÓN
CASTILLA LA NUEVA
EXTREMADURA
VALENCIA
MURCIA
ANDALUCÍA
MADRID
LISBOA
Cabo Finisterre
Cabo de San Vicente
Estrecho de Gibraltar
La Coruña
Santiago
Vigo
Oviedo
Gijón
Santander
S.Sebastián
Bilbao
Vizcaya
Andorra
Seo de Urgel
Olot
Lérida
Sabadell
Barcelona
Reus
Tarragona
Tortosa
Zaragoza
Calatayud
Sigüenza
Guadalajara
Morella
Teruel
Valencia
Carcagente
Denia
Alcoy
Alicante
Murcia
Cartagena
Almería
Málaga
Granada
Sierra Nevada
Sevilla
Huelva
Moguer
Palos
Tharsis
Minas de Rio Tinto
Córdoba
Cádiz
Jerez
Medina Sidonia
Gibraltar
Badajoz
Cáceres
Trujillo
Almadén
Puertollano
Alcázar
Toledo
Aranjuez
Cuenca
Alcalá de Henares
Escorial
Ávila
La Granja
Segovia
Salamanca
Zamora
Medina
Valladolid
Burgos
Logroño
Calahorra
Oporto
Astorga
León
Bilbao
Oviedo
Sierra de Guadarrama
Tajo
Duero
Guadiana
Guadalquivir
Ebro
Cabriel
Turia
Jucar
Sierra Nevada
Longitud Oeste de Greenwich
Longitud Este de Greenwich
ESCALA DE KILÓMETROS
0 50 100 200 300
ESCALA DE MILLAS INGLESAS
0 50 100 150 200
SUFFOLK, BOSTON

Heath's Modern Language Series

A SPANISH GRAMMAR FOR COLLEGES

BY

E. C. HILLS
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

AND

J. D. M. FORD
HARVARD UNIVERSITY

D. C. HEATH AND COMPANY
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO LONDON
ATLANTA DALLAS SAN FRANCISCO

COPYRIGHT, 1928,
BY D. C. HEATH AND COMPANY

3 F 1

PRINTED IN U.S.A.

PREFACE

THIS *Spanish Grammar for Colleges* may serve a two-fold purpose. It may be used to advantage in beginners' classes where the desire is to move forward rapidly and prepare the students to read and write Spanish with the least possible delay. And it may be used as a second-year review grammar.

Experience has shown that in examinations the average student is more likely to fail in the use of (1) personal pronoun objects and (2) the subjunctive mood, than in other parts of Spanish grammar. With this in view, the personal pronoun objects and the subjunctive mood have been introduced early, and their use has been stressed with much repetition throughout all the following lessons.

There are thirty lessons. In the first fifteen lessons the full inflection of all common verbs, both regular and irregular, and the rules for the use of moods and tenses, are given, together with the more common and elementary rules for the inflection and use of articles, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives. Beginning with Lesson XVI, the parts of speech are taken up separately and treated fully, one at a time. Thus Lesson XVI is devoted to the Articles, Lesson XVII is devoted to Nouns, Lesson XVIII to Adjectives, etc. There is also a short verb review in each of the last fifteen lessons.

In beginners' classes the *Spanish Grammar for Colleges* may be used in accordance with any one of several methods. Each lesson, including the rules of grammar and the English-Spanish exercise, may be done intensively and thoroughly.

If the instructor teaches by the direct method, the English-Spanish exercises may be omitted and the rest of the exercise material may be done without the use of English. The rules of grammar may be obtained from the exercises by deduction.

Or, if the instructor plans to do a large amount of reading the first year and postpone till later the study of grammar as such, the rules of grammar in the first fifteen lessons may be treated as recognition material and the emphasis be put on comprehension and vocabulary. After thus completing the first fifteen lessons, college students should be able to read ordinary Spanish prose understandingly with the aid of a special vocabulary or a dictionary.

We wish to express our gratitude to Professor G. Rivera of Harvard University for help in preparing some of the exercise material and in reading the proofs.

E. C. H. AND J. D. M. F.

CONTENTS

	PAGES
PRONUNCIATION	1–19
LESSONS	20–206
I. Gender of nouns. Indefinite article. Present indicative of regular verbs	20–23
II. Plural of nouns. Definite article. Negation. Numerals 1–10. Idioms	23–27
III. Feminine and plural of adjectives. Apocopation of adjectives. Present indicative of radical-changing verbs of the first and second conjugations. Personal pronoun subjects	28–33
IV. Present indicative of radical-changing verbs of the third conjugation, and of **tener** and **haber.** Meaning and use of **tener** and **haber.** Present perfect indicative. Participles. Idioms	33–38
V. Personal pronouns: subject and object of verbs. **Usted.** Possessives. Demonstratives. Present indicative and participles of **decir, ir,** and **venir**	38–43
VI. Personal pronouns: reflexive; two pronoun-objects. **Ser, oír,** and verbs regular in the present indicative except in the first person singular. Participles. Meaning and use of **ser** and **estar.** Idioms	44–50
VII. Possessive case. Indirect object. Direct object with **a.** Negation. Subjunctive forms in commands. Position of personal pronoun-objects in commands. Interrogative sentences	50–56
VIII. Imperfect and preterite indicative tenses of regular verbs. Their use. Personal pronouns governed by a preposition	56–61
IX. Imperfect and preterite indicative of irregular verbs. Pluperfect and preterite perfect. Present and imperfect indicative to denote an act or state that continues from one period into another. Idioms. Numerals	61–66

LESSONS		PAGES
X.	Future and conditional indicative of all verbs. Future perfect. "Will" and "should." Future of probability. Hours of the day	67–72
XI.	Imperative and present subjunctive of regular and radical-changing verbs. Use in commands. Present perfect subjunctive	73–78
XII.	Use of subjunctive in dependent clauses. Idioms	78–84
XIII.	Imperative and present subjunctive of irregular verbs. Orthographic variations	84–89
XIV.	Imperfect and future (hypothetical) subjunctive tenses. Their use. Pluperfect subjunctive	89–96
XV.	Conditional sentences. Use of infinitive. Idioms. Present and past participles. Their use	97–104
XVI.	Articles. Verb review	104–111
XVII.	Nouns. Verb review	111–117
XVIII.	Adjectives. Verb review	117–124
XIX.	Comparison of adjectives and adverbs. Verb review	124–130
XX.	Personal pronouns. Verb review	130–138
XXI.	Personal and reflexive pronouns. Verb review	138–145
XXII.	Possessives. Verb review. Idioms	146–152
XXIII.	Demonstratives. Verb review. Idioms	153–159
XXIV.	Relatives. Verb review. Idioms	159–165
XXV.	Interrogatives. Negation. Verb review. Idioms	165–171
XXVI.	Indefinite adjective pronouns. Verb review. Idioms	171–179
XXVII.	Numerals. Verb review. Idioms	179–186
XXVIII.	Adverbs. Prepositions. Verb review. Idioms	186–193
XXIX.	Conjunctions. Agreement of subject and verb. Word order. Verb review. Idioms	194–200
XXX.	Qualifying suffixes. Verb review	200–206

THE VERB		207–254
List of radical-changing and irregular verbs		255–267
List of verbs taking a direct infinitive object or requiring a preposition before a subordinate infinitive		268–272
VOCABULARY		273–322
INDEX		323–330
MAP OF SPAIN		*Frontispiece*
MAP OF SPANISH AMERICA	*Facing page*	1
MAP OF MEXICO		60

AMÉRICA DEL SUR
ESCALA DE KILÓMETROS
0 500 1000 1500
ESCALA DE MILLAS INGLESAS
0 100 300 500 1000
MAR CARIBE
(MAR DE LAS ANTILLAS)
Barranquilla
Cartagena
Maracaibo
Pto. Gallinas
CURAZAO (Hol.)
Puerto Cabello
La Guaira
G. de Paria
TRINIDAD (Inglesa)
L. de Maracaibo
CARACAS
R. Orinoco
Colón
Panamá
G. de Panamá
G. de Darién
Antioquia
Medellín
Bucaramanga
VENEZUELA
GEORGETOWN
PARAMARIBO
CAYENA
INGLESA
GUAYANA
HOLANDESA
FRANCESA
BOGOTÁ
Ibagué
Buenaventura
COLOMBIA
Popayán
Sierra Parima
R. Amazonas
R. Pará
ECUADOR
QUITO
Vol. Chimborazo
Guayaquil
G. de Guayaquil
Túmbez
Pta. Pariña
Paita
R. Napo
R. Negro
R. Branco
Manaos
Pará (Belém)
Maranhão
Ceará
C. São Roque
Pernambuco
Trujillo
Maranon
R. Ucayali
R. Purus
R. Madeira
R. Tapajos
R. Xingú
R. Tocantins
R. San Francisco
PERÚ
LIMA
Callao
R. Rimac
Cuzco
BRASIL
Bahía
Arequipa
Mollendo
L. BOLIVIA
Titicaca
La Paz
Cochabamba
Oruro
SUCRE
Potosí
R. Guapore
R. Mamore
R. Paraguay
R. Araguay
R. Paraná
Iquique
Ouro Preto
TRÓPICO DE CAPRICORNIO
Antofagasta
Concepción
PARAGUAY
Cabo Frio
RIO DE JANEIRO
São Paulo
Sra. do Mar
Santos
ASUNCIÓN
Villa Rica
Copiapó
Tucumán
Corrientes
Saladillo
Paraná
Uruguay
La Serena
Santa Fe
Porto Alegre
Córdoba
Paraná
Pelotas
Rio Grande do Sul
Aconcagua
Valparaíso
SANTIAGO
Mendoza
Rosario
URUGUAY
IS. JUAN FERNÁNDEZ (Chile)
BUENOS AIRES
MONTEVIDEO
Rio de la Plata
La Plata
Talca
Chillán
Concepción
R. Colorado
Bahía Blanca
Golfo de San Matías
I. CHILOE
Bahía de San Jorge
Cabo Blanco
Magallanes
ISLAS MALVINAS O FÁLKLAND (Inglesas)
Punta Arenas
TIERRA DEL FUEGO
Estrecho
Cabo de Hornos
GEORGIA DEL SUR (Inglesas)
SUFFOLK, BOSTON
OCÉANO PACÍFICO
OCÉANO ATLÁNTICO
Longitud 60° Oeste de 50° Greenwich
80° 70° 60° 50° 40°
10° 0° 10° 20° 30° 40° 50°

SPANISH GRAMMAR FOR COLLEGES

PRONUNCIATION

THE ALPHABET

1. The Spanish alphabet has twenty-nine different signs:

a, b, c, ch, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, ll, m, n, ñ, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, w, x, y, z.

NOTE. — The Castilian pronunciation of these is taken as the norm by cultured speakers in Spain. It is therefore the pronunciation adopted here. It is fair to state, however, that certain dialect peculiarities (especially Andalusian) have passed over to the former Spanish colonies in America and the Philippines and now represent the pronunciation of the larger proportion of the Spanish-speaking peoples. The signs *k* and *w* occur mainly in words from foreign languages, and in them receive their foreign values.

2. Vowels. — The vowel sounds are denoted by **a, e, i, o, u,** and occasionally **y** (which is a vowel in the conjunction **y,** *and,* as well as at the end of a word, as in **rey,** *king*). The vowel **y** has the same sound as Spanish **i**. There is in English a tendency to convert all long vowels into diphthongs; that is, to add a final glide sound to the original vowel. This tendency must be avoided in Spanish, where the individual vowel denotes a simple vocalic sound.

a is approximate to English *a* in *far,* as in **ala, cama, cada, vaca, canta,** etc. But it is a front **a,** between the *a* of *far* and that of *fad,* before **ll, ñ** and **y,** as in **calla, caña, mayo.** It is a back **a** before **u, g** or **j,** and before **l** in a closed syllable (that is, before an **l** in the same syllable), as in

causa, pago, bajo, igual. This **a** is not nearly so "broad" as the English *a* in *all*. The three sounds of Spanish **a** do not differ greatly, and may be illustrated by the stressed vowels of **caña, carta, causa.**

e has two sounds, that may be described as "close" and "open." The **e** is open in (1) closed syllables, except in those closed by **m, n,** or **s,** (2) in contact with trilled **r,** (3) before **j,** and (4) in the diphthong **ei** (**ey**). Thus: (1) **papel, valer;** (2) **perro, regla;** (3) **dejo, mejor;** (4) **aceite, ley.**

In all other positions **e** is close; thus: **mete, seda, cena, siempre, desdén.** Spanish close **e** resembles *a* in *mate*, but is without the English diphthongal glide. The English *a* in *mate* really approximates the Spanish diphthong **ei.** The **e** of Spanish **meto,** for instance, should be free from the diphthongal glide. Spanish open **e** approximates English *e* in *met.*

i usually resembles English *i* in *machine*, as in **mira, pido, sitio.** It is slightly more open in closed syllables, and especially before **l, r,** or **s,** but it is never quite so open as the English *i* in *ill.* The Spanish open **i** is midway between English *ee* in *eel* and *i* in *ill.* Thus: **ferrocarril, salir, desisto.**

o has two sounds, close and open. Spanish **o** is open (1) in all closed syllables, (2) in contact with trilled **r,** (3) before **j,** and (4) in the diphthong **oi** (**oy**). Thus (1) **con, dos, mayor, hombre;** (2) **corro, rojo;** (3) **cojo;** (4) **estoy, soy, oigo.** In all other positions **o** is close; thus: **bote, cosa, moda, toda.**

Close **o** resembles English *o* in *note*, but is without the English diphthongal glide. The English *o* in *note* really approximates the Spanish diphthong **ou.** The **o** of Spanish **moda,** for instance, should be free from the diphthongal glide. Open **o** resembles the English *o* in *north.*

It should be noted that while **e** is usually and **o** is always

open in a closed syllable, as in **papel** and **mejor**, this **e** and this **o** become close if the syllable becomes open. Thus **e** and **o** are close, and not open, in **papeles** and **mayores.**

u is usually pronounced like English *oo* in *moon*, as in **luna, mudo.** Spanish **u** is slightly more open in a closed syllable, as in **mundo, burla,** but it is not quite so open as English *u* in *put.* It never has the sound of English *u* in *cup.* Nor does Spanish **u** ever have the sound of English *u* in *cube.*

3. (1) **Quantity.** — In Castilian there are no long vowels, properly speaking, all being short or of medium length. English-speaking students must avoid prolonging vowels, especially final vowels, as occurs so generally in English when the vowel is stressed.

(2) **Elision.** — Elision is common in spoken Spanish, where a vowel is repeated, as in **de él** (pronounced **d'el**), **la altura** (l'altura), **de este** (d'este), **ya lo oigo** (ya l'oigo).

(3) **Synalepha.** — Within a phrase or breath group, and within a verse-line, the final vowel or diphthong of one word and the initial vowel or diphthong of the immediately following word usually combine to form one syllable, as in:

Ese hombre no está aquí (6 syllables).
La ofrenda ignoran que les da la fuente (11 syllables).
La muerte implora allí, la muerte airada (11 syllables).

a. **A** or **ha** (but no other vowel) may come between the words without interfering with synalepha, as in:

Salva a esta sociedad desventurada (11 syllables).
Huye el monstruo a exhalar su acerba pena (11 syllables).

b. But if one of the syllables involved is stressed, there may be hiatus instead of synalepha, and if the second of the syllables bears the rhythmic accent of a verse-line (if, for instance, it is in the rhyming syllable), hiatus is the rule, (but these exceptions are relatively infrequent).

¿ Quién calmará ¡ oh España ! tus pesares ? (11 syllables).
Porque es para el ser que ama (8 syllables).

4. Diphthongs and Triphthongs. — The vowels may be divided into two chief classes: the strong, **a, e, o**; and the weak, **i** (**y**) and **u**.

A combination of two or three adjacent vowels may form a single syllable in pronunciation; such a combination constitutes a diphthong or a triphthong. The individual elements of a diphthong or a triphthong are all to be pronounced, but more rapidly than when they stand outside such a combination.

(1) *Diphthongs.* — A Spanish diphthong, properly so called, consists of a combination into a single syllable of one of the strong vowels (**a, e, o**) with one of the weak vowels (**i** or **y, u**), or of one (i) of the weak vowels with the other (**u**). The stress, if the syllable be the accented one of the word, will fall upon the strong vowel, or upon the second of the weak vowels where the diphthong consists of two of these latter.

The possible combinations, governed by the relative position of the vowels, are given in the following list. The vowel of the diphthong that may bear the stress is the one in heavy type.

ai (**ay**) as in baile, *dance* (**hay**, *there is, there are*)
au as in flauta, *flute*
ei (**ey**) as in reina, *queen* (**rey**, *king*)
eu as in deuda, *debt*
oi (**oy**) as in oigo, *I hear* (**doy**, *I give*)
ou as in bou, *fishing-boat* (a rare diphthong)
iu as in triunfo, *triumph*

ia as in estudiar, *to study*
ua as in cuatro, *four*
ie as in sien, *temple*
ue as in fuerte, *strong*
io as in naciones, *nations*
uo as in cuota, *quota*
ui as in cuita, *grief*

a. The vowels of these combinations are of approximately equal force in a diphthong not bearing the accent of the word, as in **bailar,** *to dance;* **flautero,** *flute-player;* **reinar,** *to reign;* **deudor,** *debtor;* **oigamos,** *let us hear;* **triunfar,** *to triumph;* **fiaremos,** *we shall trust,* etc.

b. Two adjacent strong vowels are normally regarded as forming two distinct syllables, and not a diphthong; as in **faena,** *labor;* **caoba,**

mahogany; **loa,** *prologue;* **reo,** *defendant;* **leer,** *to read;* **roer,** *to gnaw,* etc. So also a combination of two weak vowels with the stress on the first of them (as in **flúido,** *fluid*), or of a strong and a weak vowel with the stress on the weak vowel (as in **traído,** *brought;* **roído,** *gnawed*), forms not a diphthong, but two separate syllables. In these two latter cases the stress is usually indicated by a written accent. For metrical purposes even these adjacent vowels may occasionally count as a single syllable. And in popular speech **flúido** is now usually pronounced **fluído.**

c. The accent mark is now usually placed on the **i** of the past participle of **–uir** verbs, as **huído, construída,** etc., to indicate that the **u** and the **i** are in separate syllables (as are **u** and **y** in **huyo**).

(2) *Triphthongs.* — A triphthong consists of a combination of a *stressed* strong vowel with two weak vowels, between which it is always placed. There are but four possible combinations, all of which end in **i** (written **y** in the final position or before the vowel of another syllable).

iai	as in estudiáis, *you study*
iei	as in principiéis, *you may begin*
uai (uay)	as in fraguáis, *you forge;* guay, *woe*
uei (uey)	as in continuéis, *may you continue;* buey, *ox*

NOTE. — Spanish words do not begin with the *i* or *u* of a diphthong or a triphthong. Where the normal development of a Latin word into Spanish involved the passage of initial stressed *ĕ* to *ie,* or of initial stressed *ŏ* to *ue* (for Spanish usually broke up the short Latin vowels into these diphthongs), the *i* was changed to *y* and a silent *h* was prefixed to the *u:* e.g., Latin *ĕrrat,* Spanish *yerra* (for *ierra*), 'he errs' (cf. Latin *erra're,* Spanish *errar,* 'to err'); Latin *óvum,* Spanish *huevo,* 'egg.'

5. Consonants.[1] — For the sake of convenience the consonants will be considered in several groups, determined, in the main, by the kind of organs that produce the sounds in question.

[1] The Spanish names of the consonants are these: **be, ce, che, de, efe, ge, hache, jota, ka, ele, elle, eme, ene, eñe, pe, cu, ere, ese, te, ve** (also called **u consonante,** or **ve corta** to distinguish it from **be larga** since **v** and **b** are pronounced alike), **ve doble, equis, ye** (also called **y griega**), **zeta.** To the consonants and vowels of these names are, of course, to be given their Spanish value. The **rr** may be called **erre,** although the combination **rr** is no longer considered a single letter.

6. Labials and labio-dentals, that is, sounds produced by the action, upon a current of air, of the lips alone or of the upper teeth and the lower lip working together: **b, v, p, f, m, w** (**u** in hiatus).

b and **v** denote the same sound. This (a voiced [1] bilabial fricative) is ordinarily one not used in English, but is akin to the German (bilabial) *w*. It is most easily pronounced by seeking to utter the English *b* without closing the lips entirely (as is requisite in the true English *b*), and permitting the air to pass out constantly through a narrow slit between the lips; as in **cabo,** *end, cape;* **lobo,** *wolf;* **clavo,** *nail;* **tuve,** *I had.* The sound of the English *v* (labio-dental) does not exist in Castilian.

After **m** or **n** (whether **n** be in the same word or at the end of the preceding word) both the **b** and the **v** receive a sound like that of the English *b* (a voiced labial stop); as in **también,** *as well, also;* **envidia,** *envy* (often spelled **embidia** in Old Spanish); **con valor,** *with courage.* In such cases the **n,** though retained in spelling, receives the value of **m.** Moreover, the English sound of *b* is often given to both **b** and **v** when initial and emphatic, as in **¡ basta !** *enough !* **¡ villano !** *villain !* Before **s, a b** is slighted entirely in popular speech, as in **substancia, obscuro,**[2] etc.

p. Approximately the English sound (a voiceless bilabial stop); as in **papel,** *paper.*

f. Usually like the English *f* (a voiceless labio-dental fricative); as in **favor,** *favor.*

m resembles the English *m* (a voiced labial nasal); as in **mimar,** *to fondle.* But final **m** is pronounced **n,** as in **álbum** (pronounced *a'lbun*).

w occurs usually in words from foreign languages, and in them it has the foreign pronunciation; thus it has the Eng-

[1] A voiced consonant is one in the production of which the vocal cords vibrate, as may be ascertained by touching the throat in front of the larynx during the utterance of *b, d, g* in English. There is no such vibration in the production of the corresponding voiceless stop consonants, *p, t, k.*

[2] The **b** of **obscuro, substancia,** etc., is sometimes omitted in writing, and is pronounced only by the pedantic.

lish sound in *Wellington* and the German sound in *Wagner*. Unaccented **u** in hiatus, as in **fuerte,** *strong*, or **cuando,** *when*, is, in Castilian pronunciation, only a semi-vowel; that is, it is partly a consonant, and as such it approximates in value to the English *w*.

W is found in Spanish in a few proper names that are by no means recent importations, but go back to the period of Visigothic dominion in Spain: **Wamba, Witiza.** In these it receives the usual value of Spanish **b** and **v**; cf. the spellings **Vamba, Bamba,** and **Vitiza** sometimes found.

7. Dentals or lingua-dentals, that is, sounds produced by the united action of the tongue and the teeth upon a current of air: **t, d, c** (followed by **e** or **i**), **z, l, n.** Along with these may be considered **ll, ñ,** and a variety of **n** occurring before "hard" **c, qu,** or "hard" **g,** etc., although these **l** and **n** sounds are not properly dentals.

t. Not unlike English *t*, except that it, as well as all the Spanish dentals, is produced farther forward in the mouth than the English dentals.

In Spanish the point of the tongue often touches the upper teeth when the **t** and other dentals are produced, whereas in English the tongue is allowed to touch the roof of the mouth somewhat back of the roots of the upper teeth. There is, therefore, a very appreciable difference between the sounds of *t* and *n* in English *ten* and those in Spanish **ten,** *hold*.

d. There is a marked difference between the sound of English *d* and the common sound of Spanish **d.** The latter may be compared to an English *d prolonged*, and uttered softly: the tongue approaches but may not touch the upper teeth. Ex.: **seda, nadie, todo.**

The English *d* (a voiced dental *stop*) is produced by the escape of air from the mouth after the passage of the air has first been stopped by contact between the tongue and the roof of the mouth near the upper teeth. The common Spanish sound (a voiced dental fricative) is produced without contact between the tongue and the teeth, and the passage of the air is not wholly cut off.

At the beginning of a breath-group, or after **l** or **n**, **d** resembles the English *d*, as in **¡ diablo !** *the deuce!;* **espalda,** *shoulder;* **andando,** *walking.* At the end of a word **d** is fricative in careful speech, while in colloquial speech it tends to disappear entirely, as in **usted,** *you,* which is usually pronounced *usté.* Between vowels, **d** has disappeared largely in the pronunciation of untrained speakers, and even those who pronounce carefully show a decided tendency to suppress this intervocalic **d,** especially in **–ado,** saying, for example, *amao* for **amado,** *loved.* Moreover, both the written and the spoken language have already accepted the loss of the intervocalic **d** of the reflexive imperative second person plural: e.g., **amaos,** *love one another* (for **amad,** *love,* + **os,** *you, each other*).

c followed by **e** or **i**;
z in all positions. } These have a common value (a voiceless dental fricative) in Castilian speech, viz., a lisping sound approximate to that of *th* in English *thin,* as in **cielo,** *heaven;* **cena,** *supper;* **zapato,** *shoe.* In Southern Spain and in Spanish America and the Philippines, both **c** (**e, i**) and **z** are pronounced like **s.**

If **z** is followed by a voiced consonant (i.e., such a consonant as **n, l, g,** etc.), it may itself become voiced and have approximately the value of English *th* in *with;* as in **portazgo,** *toll;* **hazlo,** *do it;* **gozne,** *hinge.*

l and **n** have usually values resembling the English values (**l,** a voiced lateral fricative; **n,** a voiced dental nasal), but they are produced farther forward in the mouth than the English sounds, so that there is a perceptible difference between the sounds of *l* and *n* in English *lance* and those in its Spanish equivalent **lanza,** as there is between the *n* of English *ten* and that of Spanish **ten,** *hold.*

Final **l** in Spanish never has the semivocalic, "hollow" sound of final English *l.* Compare English *dell* with Spanish **del.**

When followed by the so-called "hard" **g** or **k** sound, by **g** (before **e** or **i**), by **j,** or by **hue–,** as in **vengo,** *I come;* **blanco,** *white;* **banquero,** *banker;* **rengífero,** *reindeer;* **naranja,** *orange;* **un hueso,** *a bone,* **n** ceases to be dental, and acquires a value similar to that of *ng* in English *sing,* i.e., a velar nasal value.

ll has a sound most nearly represented in English by that of *lli* in *million* (i. e., it is a palatalized form of *l*, not a doubled *l*, in sound).

It should be noted that while the English sound of *lli* in *million* is that of *l* followed by that of *y*, the Spanish sound is that of l infected by **y** throughout the duration of its enunciation; i.e., it is l no longer dental, but produced with the tongue in the **y** position, or, in other words, with the middle of the tongue touching the hard palate, and with the tip of the tongue against the lower teeth. There is, therefore, a marked difference between the pronunciation of *lli* in *million* and that of ll in its Spanish equivalent **millón.** In some parts of Spain and Spanish America, ll has become **y** in sound, e.g., **caballo,** *horse,* is pronounced **cabayo.** In the vulgar speech of certain regions, this **y** has disappeared entirely when immediately following stressed **e** or **i:** e.g., **se-o** for **sello, si-a** for **silla,** etc. (but **si-yita** for **sillita,** etc.). This omission of **y** is everywhere considered as vulgar. In Argentina there is a tendency to pronounce ll like English *s* in *pleasure.*

ñ. This (a palatalized form of **n**) is similarly **n** produced with the tongue in the **y** position (see ll). It is only approximately rendered by the *ni* of *onion* or the *ny* of *canyon;* this latter expresses in a measure, but yet not perfectly, the **ñ** of the Spanish original **cañón.** The mark over the **n** is termed the **tilde.**

8. Palatals, that is, sounds formed by bringing the tongue into contact with the palate: **c** (1) followed by **a, o,** or **u,** (2) followed by any consonant except **h,** (3) at the end of a word; **qu** always followed by **e** or **i; k** in foreign words; **g** (1) followed by **a, o,** or **u,** (2) followed by a consonant; **gu** when followed by **e** or **i.**

The first three of these, i.e., **c** in the positions indicated, **qu,** and **k,** have approximately the sound of English *k* or "hard" *c* (a voiceless palatal stop); as in **carro,** *cart;* **conde,** *count;* **culto,** *cult;* **creador,** *creator;* **frac,** *evening coat;* **quedo,** *quiet;* **quilla,** *keel;* **kiosko,** *kiosk.*

The last two in the list, i.e., **g** before **a, o, u,** or a consonant, and **gu** before **e** or **i,** have approximately the sound of the

"hard" English **g** (a voiced palatal stop) of *got* or *get;* as in **galante,** *gallant;* **golfo,** *gulf;* **gutural,** *guttural;* **gruta,** *grotto;* **guarda,** *guard;* **guerrilla,** *guerrilla;* **guía,** *guide.*

In such cases as these last two (**guerilla, guía**) the **u** is not itself pronounced, but is merely a sign that the **g** has the "hard" sound before the following **e** or **i.** Where the **gu** is followed by another vowel than these, the **g** has its "hard" sound, but the **u** is pronounced, having to some degree the value of English **w,** as in **guano,** *guano.* Occasionally, even before **e** or **i,** the **u** has a pronounceable value, but in such cases it must be written with a diæresis, as in **antigüedad,** *antiquity;* **lingüístico,** *linguistic.*

Intervocalic "hard" **g** becomes fricative (i.e., a soft **g** without complete contact of tongue and palate: cf. **b** and **d**), as in **hago,** *I make;* **hormiga,** *ant;* **droga,** *drug,* etc. In some parts of southern Spain and Spanish America, **g** before **u** + vowel, and **gu** before **i** + vowel, tend to disappear in the vulgar speech, as **awa** for **agua,** *water;* **siyendo** for **siguiendo,** *following,* etc.

9. Sibilants, that is, hissing sounds. In Castilian **s** is the only simple sign denoting a sibilant value, but there are two signs denoting a compound sound into which an *s* value enters, viz., **ch** and **x.**

s. The Spanish **s** commonly has a sound similar to that of English initial *s,* as in *sing,* and of English *ss,* as in *kiss,* but it is uttered more softly than English *s;* thus, **saco,** *sack;* **sal,** *salt;* **pasar,** *to pass;* **notas,** *notes.*

Caution must be taken not to give to Spanish **s** between vowels the sound of English *z* (a voiced sibilant) or of intervocalic English *s* as in *rose.*

S before a voiced consonant becomes voiced in normal colloquial speech (= English *z*), as in **desde,** *since;* **sesgo,** *slope;* **mismo,** *same, self,* etc.

In parts of Spain and Spanish America, **s** before a consonant and final becomes in the vulgar speech a soft aspirate, approximating to but softer than German *ch* in *ich.* Ex.: **las bonitas muchachas** becomes **la' bonita' muchacha';** **el compás, el compa';** **dos niños, do' niño',** etc. This pronunciation is rather widespread, but should be avoided.

ch, a compound sound (a voiceless stop plus a voiceless palatal sibilant), like the *ch* of *church;* as in **mucho,** *much.*

x, a compound sound (a voiceless palatal stop plus a voiceless sibilant **s**), usually quite like the *x* of English *six* or *lax.* It consists of a **k** sound followed by the sibilant **s** sound, as in **axioma,** *axiom.* When the **x** stands before a consonant, the Spanish Academy insists that it be still pronounced as **ks;** but the generality of speakers pronounce it there as **s** simply; thus, in **extranjero,** *stranger;* **sexto,** *sixth.* In such cases there is a manifest tendency to write **s** instead of **x,** i.e., **estranjero, sesto,** etc.

Between vowels **x** is pronounced like a soft English *g* followed by *s* (not *z,* but *s* in *case*), i.e., as a voiced palatal fricative followed by a voiceless sibilant: **examen,** *examination;* **existencia,** *existence,* etc. In **exacto,** *exact,* **x** is usually pronounced as **s.** The Mexican government keeps, as the official spelling, the old forms, **México** and **mexicano,** but the **x** is pronounced as **j.**

10. Aspirates, or well-breathed sounds: **j** in all positions; **g** followed by **e** or **i.**

j in all positions and **g** before **e** or **i** denote the one sound (a voiceless guttural or velar fricative) which is most closely approximated in English by pronouncing the *h* of *hot* very far back in the mouth and in a very forcible way; as in **jamás,** *never;* **gente,** *people;* **girar,** *to turn.* The sound of the German *ch* in *nach, doch,* etc., affords a still closer parallel to the Spanish sound.

In the production of this Spanish sound, the velar (or soft) palate vibrates against the back of the tongue, which is withdrawn as much as possible into the rear of the mouth. The Castilian sound is a harsh one, but it is softened in Andalusia and Spanish America to the value of a strong English *h* or the German *ch* of *ich.*

h is always silent, as in **hora,** *hour,* **hacer,** *to do,* etc. In vulgar speech **hue–** is often pronounced as **güe–** (with a faint fricative **g**), but this initial consonant is a constricted

u rather than an **h**. Thus, *güeso* for **hueso,** *bone; güevo* for **huevo,** *egg,* etc. The same sound is heard for **bue–, vue–,** as in *güeno* for **bueno,** *good; güelvo* for **vuelvo,** *I return.*

11. Tongue-trilled Consonants: r and **rr.** These denote a sound not very unlike that of the English *r* carefully pronounced, and, upon occasion, having a well-prolonged trill.

The sound is produced by making the forward part of the tongue vibrate against the palate, just back of the upper teeth. The point of contact between the tongue and the palate is farther forward than in English.

It is made approximately in the position of English *d*. If students of Spanish use in their English the "back *r*" heard in parts of the Middle West of the United States and Canada, they must learn to move the tongue forward to the *d* position.

Final **r** in Spanish never has the semivocalic glide sound of final English *r*. Compare English *ther(e)* and Spanish **ser.**

There are two varieties of the sound:

a. A weaker variety, i.e., one in which the tongue goes to the **r** position only once. This is denoted in Spanish by a single **r** (1) between vowels, as in **pero,** *but;* (2) immediately before and after consonants (except **l, n, s**), as in **carne,** *meat;* **corto,** *short;* **bravo,** *wild;* **ladrón,** *robber;* **fresno,** *ash tree;* **grano,** *grain;* **prado,** *meadow;* **trato,** *behavior;* (3) final in a word, as in **amar,** *to love.* It is to be carefully uttered, and not slurred as it so often is in English; cf. *paper, mother,* etc., in which the *r* sound is barely discernible.

b. A reënforced variety, i.e., one with a well-prolonged trill. It is not a doubled consonant, but rather a prolongation of the other variety. It is denoted by **rr** between vowels, as in **perro,** *dog;* **parra,** *vine* (cf. **pero,** *but,* and **para,** *for,* in which the weaker variety occurs); by single **r** at the beginning of a word, as in **roble,** *oak;* and by single **r** after **l, n** or **s,** as in **alrededor,** *around;* **enredo,** *entanglement;* **israelita,** *Israelite.* Within a word, after **b** marking the end of a prefix, this same strong **r** occurs, as in **subrayar,** *to underline*

(cf. **raya,** *line,* with initial strong **r**). The fact that initial single **r** denotes the same reënforced variety as intervocalic **rr** is shown by words like **rota,** *rout,* and the derivative **derrota.** In colloquial speech, **s** may be absorbed by an immediately following **r,** so that **dos reales** becomes **dorreales** with a strongly trilled **r.**

12. Spirant y (a voiced palatal fricative), not much unlike English *y* in sound, except that its enunciation is stronger, as in **ya,** *already;* **yo,** *I;* **yeso,** *gypsum.*

When initial in a sentence and emphatic, or after **l** or **n,** **y** may sound like English *j* in *joy,* as in **¡ yo sí lo creo !** *I do believe it;* **cónyuge,** *spouse;* **un yugo,** *a yoke;* **con hierro,** *with iron* (note that **hie–** is equal to **ye–**).

Unaccented **i** in hiatus is often but a semivowel; i.e., it is partly consonantal and tends to become **y.** This is especially so in the case of the diphthong **ie:** cf. **yerra,** *he errs,* for **ierra,** and the spelling **yerba,** *herb,* and **hierba,** side by side. As already stated, **y** is a vowel in the conjunction **y,** *and;* it is a vowel (or at least a semivowel) whenever it occurs in a diphthong or triphthong, as in **bocoy,** *hogshead;* **buey,** *ox.*

13. Non-phonetic Orthography. — Spanish orthography is not consistently phonetic, though much more so than English orthography. According to the rules of the Spanish Academy, only two letters are ever mute, viz., **h** and **u,** as follows:

h is regularly silent, as in **hado,** *fate;* **hilo,** *thread.* In the digraph **ch** it has no individual value.

u is silent, or at least has no individual value, in the combination **qu.** It is also not pronounced in the combination **gu** followed by **e** or **i;** it is there but a sign of "hard" **g:** cf. **sigue,** *he follows,* **siguió,** *he followed,* with **sigo,** *I follow,* **siga,** *I may follow.* If it happens that the **u** of the combination **gue** or **gui** is actually pronounced, a diæresis is written over it; e.g., **argüir,** *to argue;* **averigüé,** *I ascertained* (cf. the infinitive **averiguar,** in which the **u** is, of course, pronounced).

In addition to **h** and **u,** there are several letters that, in certain combinations, are usually not pronounced in colloquial Spanish, viz.:

b is mute in **obscuro, subscripción, substancia,** etc.; that is, **b** before **s** plus a consonant is usually silent. In written Spanish also this **b** is often omitted, as in **oscuro, sustancia,** etc.

c, before a consonant, is often mute, as in **diccionario, lección, afectísimo,** etc. Students are advised to pronounce this **c.**

d is often silent in the final position, and between vowels when it follows stressed **a, o,** or **u** (less often after **e** or **i**), as in **Madrid, amado, nada, todo, toda, a menudo,** etc.; also before **s,** as in **adscribir, adstringir,** etc. The student should pronounce fricative **d.** As to final **d,** see § 7.

g, before a consonant, is often mute, as in **digno, magnánimo,** etc. The student should pronounce this as a very soft fricative **g.**

j is mute only in **reloj** (occasionally written **reló**). In the plural, **relojes, j** is pronounced.

n is usually mute in the prefix **trans-** before a consonant, as in **transcribir, transmitir,** etc.; but it is often pronounced in **transatlántico,** etc.

p is mute usually in **subscripción, séptimo, septiembre, pseudo, psicología,** etc. (i.e., before **t** or **s, p** is usually silent). In written Spanish also this **p** is sometimes omitted, as in **sétimo, setiembre,** etc.

t is usually mute in **istmo.**

Some other non-phonetic peculiarities of Spanish orthography are as follows:

n, before **p, b** or **v,** has the sound of **m,** as in **un perro, un vaso,** etc.; cf. § 7.

v = b. See § 6.

x, before a consonant, is usually pronounced as **s,** as in **extremo, exposición,** etc.; and in **exacto, x = s.**

Note. — The Spanish Academy has attempted of late years to put back into Spanish many sounds that had disappeared or changed, as the **x** of **experiencia** in place of **s,** the **b** of **obscuro,** the **p** of **séptimo,** the **d** of **adscribir,** the **t** of **istmo,** etc., and the Academy has asked the Spanish people to use these restored sounds in their speech. To some extent the sounds have been adopted, and they may be heard on the stage and in the pulpit, but practically never in colloquial Spanish (except **x,** which is making headway).

14. Doubled Letters. — The general statement may be made that the doubling of consonants is not favored in Spanish. **Ll** does not represent a double sound, and it figures in the alphabet as a distinct sign, for **ll** denotes a peculiar quality of **l** (the palatalized l). Three consonants,

however, may be written double, viz., **r**, **c**, and **n**. For the pronunciation of **rr**, see § 11. In the *refined* pronunciation of Castile each of the two **c**'s or two **n**'s is carefully articulated: as in **accidente**, *accident* (of which the first **c** sounds like *k*, and the second like *th* of *thin*), and in **innoble**, *ignoble*.

No other consonant is doubled in writing or pronunciation in modern Spanish. To the frequent *mm* of English (mostly in words of Latin and Romance origin) there corresponds the Spanish **nm**, as in **inmenso**, *immense*. Of the vowels only **e** occurs doubled with any frequency, and each **e** is pronounced in a distinct syllable; as in **creer**, *to believe;* **leer**, *to read*. Some of the double **e**'s of early Spanish are now reduced to single **e**; cf. **ser**, *to be*, for the older **seer**; **ver**, *to see*, for the older **veer**. We occasionally find **a** and **o** doubled and pronounced accordingly; the first **a** or **o** usually belongs to a prefix, as in **contraalmirante**, *rear admiral;* **cooperar**, *to coöperate*.

ACCENTUATION

15. For certain words it is necessary to indicate the place for the stress of the voice by a written accent put over the vowel of the syllable bearing it; for many others this written accent is not necessary, as, in accordance with rules laid down by the Spanish Academy, the mere aspect of the word clearly indicates the place of the chief stress. The leading rules are these:

(1) Words ending in a vowel, or in the consonants **n** or **s**, normally stress the second last syllable (the penult), and they require no written accent, as in:

carta letter	**respiro** I breathe	**hablan** they speak
palabra word	**sollozo** sob	**cartas** letters
dulce sweet	**tribu** tribe	**naciones** nations
hijo son		

Words ending in **n** or **s** normally receive the same treatment as those ending in a vowel, because the **n** or **s** is often but a sign of pluralization, or of verbal inflection, and is added to forms that regularly end in a vowel: cf. **carta**, *letter*, and **cartas**, *letters;* **ama**, *he loves*, and **aman**, *they love*.

(2) Words ending in a consonant except **n** or **s** normally stress the last syllable and need no written accent, as:

verdad truth **igual** equal

For accentual purposes, final **y** may be regarded as a consonant: hence, **bocoy,** *hogshead.*

(3) All words stressed on a syllable preceding the second last, and all not obeying the two rules already given, must have a written accent over the vowel bearing the stress; e.g.,

ejército army **mamá** mamma **interés** interest
hígado liver **rubí** ruby **lápiz** lead pencil
telégrafo telegraph **nación** nation **mármol** marble
sofá sofa **amáis** you love (cf. **amas** thou lovest)

As a result of the addition of the plural sign **–es** (but not **–s**), a word not bearing a written accent in the singular may now have to take one; as in **crimen,** *crime* (cf. rule 1), pl. **crímenes** (cf. rule 3); or, again, an accent written in the singular may not need to be written in the plural, as in **nación** (cf. rule 3), pl. **naciones** (cf. rule 1). It is the general principle that the addition of the plural sign should not affect the place of oral stress. This principle is violated in the case of **carácter,** *character,* and **régimen,** *régime,* which in the plural shift their accent one syllable farther on: **caracteres** and **regímenes.**

16. Diphthongs and Triphthongs. — If the stressed syllable of the word have a diphthong, this will bear the accent (written or unwritten) on the strong vowel, if there be one, or on the second of two weak vowels, as in:

baile dance **buitre** vulture **estudió** he studied
amáis you love **viuda** widow

A triphthong will always bear the accent (written or unwritten) on the strong vowel:

averiguáis you ascertain **fieis** may you trust

17. Monosyllables normally take no written accent:

no no, not **plan** plan **ruin** vile **buey** ox

Occasionally, however, a written accent is found in monosyllables (or in some dissyllables), where its use is that of a diacritic, intended to distinguish the sense or the particular employment of words written and pronounced alike, as in **cómo,** *how,* as distinguished from **como,** *as;* in **mí,** *me,* as distinguished from **mi,** *my;* in **éste,** *this one* (a pronoun), as distinguished from **este,** *this* (an adjective); in **quién,** *who* (an interrogative), as distinguished from **quien,** *who* (a relative), etc. The analogy of other preterites explains the use of the accent in certain monosyllabic preterites, such as **fuí,** *I was;* **fué,** *he was.* When **aun,** *still, yet,* is emphatic, it may become a dissyllable, and will then stress its **u,** which (cf. § 15, rule 3) must bear a written accent, **aún.**

18. Compound words, felt as such, normally stress the proper syllable of each component part, especially in the case of adverbs in **–mente** (the equivalent of English *–ly*) and of compound numerals; any accent required in one of the parts standing alone will continue to be written in the compound:

fácilmente easily (cf. **fácil** easy) **décimoséptimo** seventeenth (cf. **décimo** tenth, and **séptimo** seventh)
dulcemente sweetly

The addition of a pronoun-object to a verb form will not lead to the omission of any written accent that the verb form had when standing alone, as in **déme,** *give me* (cf. **dé,** *give*), even though without the writing of the accent its position is clear enough.

On the other hand, a verb form which does not normally need a written accent will take one if, by the addition of one or more object-pronouns, its stress is placed more than two syllables from the end of its whole combination, thus: **diciendo,** *saying,* but **diciéndomelo,** *saying it to me;* **haga,** *do* (polite imperative), but **hágalo,** *do it.*

NOTE. — The accent of the stressed syllable of a word is nearly as strong as in English; but the unstressed vowels must not be slurred in pronunciation, as they so often are in English.

SYLLABIFICATION

19. A single consonantal character and the digraphs **ch** and **ll** (these two being inseparable combinations) are, in a syllabic division, passed over to the following vowel; so,

also, are most combinations of a consonant with an ensuing **l** or **r** (including **rr**; but not **rl**, **sl**, **tl**, and **sr**, which are separable):

la-bio lip	**cu-brir** to cover	**no-ble** noble
ja-ca pony	**su-frir** to suffer	**mo-fle-tu-do** chubby-cheeked
la-do side	**re-pri-mir** to repress	
ne-xo knot	**la-cre** sealing-wax	**su-plir** to supply
mu-cho much	**ma-gro** meagre	**te-cla** key
bu-llir to boil	**ma-dre** mother	**si-glo** century
pa-rra vine	**cua-tro** four	

Cf. **mer-lu-za** cod **es-la-bón** link
At-lán-ti-co Atlantic **is-ra-e-li-ta** Israelite

20. With the exception of the inseparable combinations mentioned in the foregoing rule, two consonants between vowels are so divided that one remains with the preceding, the other goes to the following vowel:

ap-to fit	**más-til** mast	**in-no-ble** ignoble, etc.
cor-te court		**ac-ci-den-te** accident

Where the combination of consonants between vowels is of more than two, there is a tendency to pass over to the second vowel only a single consonant or one of the inseparable combinations mentioned in § 19; e.g.:

par-che plaster **cons-truc-ción** construction
pers-pi-ca-cia perspicacity

21. Prefixes felt as such are usually kept intact, contrary to the rule in § 19; e.g.:

des-es-pe-rar to despair (cf. **esperar** to hope)
sub-le-var-se to rebel (cf. **levar** to raise)
ab-ro-ga-ción abrogation (cf. **rogar** to ask)

PUNCTUATION

22. The only notable points here are the double use of question marks and exclamation points, which not only end

their clause, but in an inverted form usually precede it (e.g., **¿ Cómo está Vd.?** *How are you?* **¡ Qué hermosa mujer!** *What a beautiful woman!*), and the frequency of suspension points (. . .) in narrative or dramatic style.

CAPITALIZATION

23. Capitals are less commonly used in Spanish than in English. Unless they begin a sentence, a line of verse, or a quotation, proper adjectives, the pronoun **yo**, and the names of days of the week and of months, are not capitalized.

LESSON I

24. Gender of Nouns. — All Spanish nouns are either masculine or feminine; thus, grammatically speaking, **árbol,** *tree,* is masculine, and **casa,** *house,* is feminine.

(1) Names of male beings are masculine, and names of female beings are feminine, as in English.

(2) Names of things are masculine if they end in **–o,** and feminine if they end in **–a.** If they end otherwise, it is usually best to learn the gender of each noun separately.

libro *masc.* book	**pluma** *fem.* pen
plato *masc.* plate	**taza** *fem.* cup

a. But **mano,** *hand,* is feminine; and **día,** *day,* **mapa,** *map,* and several words of Greek origin ending in **–ta** and **–ma** are masculine.[1]

25. Many names of living beings have both a masculine and a feminine form, the latter ending in **–a.**

hijo son	**hija** daughter
hermano brother	**hermana** sister
gato cat (male)	**gata** cat (female)
monje monk	**monja** nun
huésped guest (male)	**huéspeda** guest (female)

26. Indefinite Article. — The Spanish indefinite article is **un** before a masculine, **una** before a feminine noun.

un hombre a man	**una mujer** a woman
un árbol a tree	**una casa** a house

a. In Spanish the indefinite article must be repeated before each noun to which it refers: **una casa y un jardín,** *a house and garden.*

[1] E.g., **cometa,** *comet;* **planeta,** *planet;* **idioma,** *language;* **poema,** *poem;* **programa,** *programme;* **sistema,** *system.*

27. The Regular Conjugations. — Spanish verbs are conveniently divided, according to the infinitive endings **–ar**, **–er**, and **–ir**, into three conjugations:

I	II	III
hablar (to) speak	**temer** (to) fear	**vivir** (to) live

Like these are inflected all regular verbs with corresponding infinitive endings.

28. Indicative: Present Tense

Hablar

Singular		Plural	
1. **habl o**	I speak, I do speak, I am speaking	1. **habl amos**	we speak, *etc.*
2. **habl as**	thou speakest *or* you (*fam.*) speak, *etc.*	2. **habl áis**	ye *or* you (*fam.*) speak, *etc.*
3. **habl a**	he, she, *or* it speaks, *etc.*	3. **habl an**	they speak, *etc.*

Temer

Singular	Plural
1. **tem o** I fear, do fear, etc.	1. **tem emos**
2. **tem es**	2. **tem éis**
3. **tem e**	3. **tem en**

Vivir

1. **viv o** I live, do live, etc.	1. **viv imos**
2. **viv es**	2. **viv ís**
3. **viv e**	3. **viv en**

Note that the Spanish verb may be expressed in English in three different ways; thus, **hablo** means *I speak, I do speak,* or *I am speaking.* Note also that the subject-pronouns may be omitted in Spanish though required in English. For **usted(es) habla(n)**, *you speak,* see § 46.

EXERCISES

A. *Study:* 1. Compro un libro. Leo un libro. Leo mucho. Compro papel. Compro tinta. Compro una pluma. Escribo mucho. Escribo en papel. Escribo con

pluma y tinta. Escribo en papel con pluma y tinta. Compro también un lápiz. Escribo con lápiz. Escribo en papel con lápiz. Escribo un libro. Escribo un libro en español.[1]

2. Estudiamos mucho. Estudiamos para aprender. Hablamos inglés y español. Aprendemos a[2] escribir en inglés y en español. Carlos compra una pluma y tinta. Escribe con pluma y tinta en papel. Escribe una carta en español. Escribe a un amigo. María estudia un idioma. Estudia mucho para aprender un idioma. Aprende a leer un libro en español. Carlos y María compran una casa con jardín.

B. *Answer in Spanish* (*see* A, 2). *In the answers use the subject — if there is one — and the verb:* ¿ Qué compra Carlos ?[3] ¿ Qué escribe Carlos ? ¿ Con qué escribe ? ¿ En qué escribe ? ¿ Qué estudia María ? ¿ Qué aprende ? ¿ Qué compran Carlos y María ?

C. 1. *Continue:* Compro papel (compras papel, compra papel, etc.). Leo un libro. Escribo con pluma y tinta. Hablo español.

2. *Repeat all the sentences of* A, 1, *in the first person plural and in the third person plural.* (Compramos un libro, etc.; compran un libro, etc.)

3. *Give the following nouns with the corresponding form of the indefinite article:* libro, monje, gato, pluma, idioma, casa, jardín, árbol, hermano, mano, mujer, día, hija, huésped, mapa, taza.

D. *Write in Spanish:* 1. A man speaks Spanish. 2. A woman speaks Spanish. 3. [They][4] speak Spanish. 4. [They] read a book in Spanish. 5. A man buys a book. 6. [He] reads a book. 7. [He]

[1] Note that a Spanish name of a language, like a Spanish proper adjective, is written with a small initial letter.

[2] After certain verbs such as **aprender** the preposition **a** is required in Spanish before an infinitive.

[3] Note that an inverted interrogation mark is required in Spanish at the beginning of an interrogative sentence or clause.

[4] Words enclosed in [] are not to be translated.

buys paper, a pen and ink. 8. [He] writes with pen and ink. 9. [He] writes to a friend. 10. A woman buys paper. 11. [She] buys a pencil also. 12. [She] writes on paper with [a] pencil. 13. Charles speaks Spanish. 14. Mary also speaks Spanish. 15. Mary and Charles speak Spanish. 16. Do [they] speak English? 17. [They] speak English also. 18. [We] study a language. 19. [We] study in order to learn. 20. [We] learn to speak Spanish. 21. [We] learn to read a book in Spanish.

Vocabulary

a to
un **amigo**, una **amiga** a friend
aprender (to) learn
Carlos Charles
una **carta** a letter
comprar (to) buy
con with
de of
en in, on
escribir (to) write
español Spanish
estudiar (to) study
inglés English
un **lápiz** a pencil
leer (to) read
María Mary
mucho much, a great deal
un **papel** a paper
para in order to, to
qué what (*interrog.*)
también also
una **tinta** an ink
y and

LESSON II

29. Plural of Nouns. — The plural of nouns is formed by adding **–s** or **–es** to the singular.

(1) If the noun ends in an unstressed vowel or diphthong, **–s** is added.

amigo friend	**amigos** friends
rosa rose	**rosas** roses
labio lip	**labios** lips
especie species *sg.*	**especies** species *pl.*

(2) If the noun ends in a consonant or in a stressed vowel or diphthong, **–es** is added.[1]

[1] In pluralizing, *y* final may be regarded as a consonant: it is really the last element of a stressed diphthong or triphthong, as in **bocoy**, *hogshead*, and **buey**, *ox*.

flor *f.* flower	**flores** flowers
mes *m.* month	**meses** months
rubí *m.* ruby	**rubíes** rubies
bajá *m.* pashaw	**bajaes** pashaws
rey *m.* king	**reyes** kings

EXCEPTIONS. — *a.* Nouns ending in stressed **–e** add **–s** to form the plural: **pie,** m. *foot;* **pies,** *feet.*

b. Nouns ending in unstressed **–es** or **–is** have the same form in the plural as in the singular: **lunes,** m. *Monday;* **lunes,** *Mondays;* but **inglés,** *Englishman;* **ingleses,** *Englishmen;* **crisis,** f. *crisis;* **crisis,** *crises.* Family names, especially those ending in **–z**, generally remain unchanged in the plural; e.g., **González, los González.**

c. Some nouns ending in stressed **–o** or **–u** take either **–s** or **–es. Papá** and **mamá** add **–s.** There are a few other exceptions, which are best learned by observation.

NOTE. — Final **z** is changed to **c** before **–es: cruz,** f. *cross;* **cruces,** *crosses;* **voz,** f. *voice;* **voces,** *voices.*

30. Definite Article. — In Spanish the definite article changes its form according to the gender and number of the noun it modifies.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Masculine	**el**	**los**
Feminine	**la** (**el**)	**las**

el hombre the man	**los hombres** the men
la mujer the woman	**las mujeres** the women
el plato the plate	**los platos** the plates
la taza the cup	**las tazas** the cups

(1) When **el** is preceded by **de,** *of,* or by **a,** *to,* the preposition and the article are contracted into one word: **de** and **el** become **del,** and **a** and **el** become **al: del padre,** *of the father;* **al padre,** *to the father.*

(2) **El** is used instead of the form **la** before a feminine singular noun beginning with *stressed* **a** or **ha: el agua,** *water;* **el hacha,** *the axe* (but **las aguas, las hachas,** etc.).

NOTE. — Observe that **el** is not used before a feminine noun beginning with **a** or **ha** unless the first syllable is stressed, nor is it used before a feminine adjective: **la hacienda,** *the estate;* **la alta montaña,** *the high mountain.*

31. Negation. — A sentence is made negative by placing **no**, *not*, before the verb.

No hablo. I do not speak, *or* I am not speaking.
No vendo flores. I do not sell flowers, *or* I am not selling flowers.

32. The English auxiliary *do*, which is usual in negative or interrogative constructions, is ordinarily not translated into Spanish. Compare **hablo,** *I speak;* **no hablo,** *I* do *not speak;* **¿ hablo ?** do *I speak?* In past tenses, *did* is similarly not expressed in Spanish.

33. Numerals. — **Un(o),–a** (1), **dos** (2), **tres** (3), **cuatro** (4), **cinco** (5), **seis** (6), **siete** (7), **ocho** (8), **nueve** (9), **diez** (10).

a. **Uno** is masculine and **una** is feminine. Before a noun **uno** loses the final **–o** and becomes **un: compro un lápiz,** *I buy one pencil* or *a pencil;* **compro uno,** *I buy one;* **compro una pluma,** *I buy one pen* or *a pen;* **compro una,** *I buy one.*

34. Idiomatic Expressions

buenos días, good morning, *or* good day.
buenas tardes, good afternoon, *or* good evening (until dark)
buenas noches, good evening (after dark), *or* good night.
hasta mañana, farewell until tomorrow.
hasta luego, farewell for a while.
adiós, good-bye.

EXERCISES

A. *Study:* 1. En la escuela estudio mucho. Llevo a la escuela libros, lápices y papel. Leo los libros. Escribo en el papel con lápiz. Escribo también con pluma y tinta. Escribo cartas a un amigo. Hablo inglés. No hablo español.

2. Llevamos a la escuela pan y mantequilla, queso y manzanas. Comemos el pan, la mantequilla, el queso y las manzanas. Bebemos agua o leche. Llevamos a la escuela vasos y tazas. Bebo agua en un vaso. Bebo leche en una taza. No llevamos platos a la escuela.

3. En la escuela Juan estudia español, matemáticas, historia y química. Ana estudia español, historia y química. No estudia matemáticas. Juan estudia mucho en la escuela. Desea viajar por España. Desea viajar por Inglaterra también. En España hablan español; en Inglaterra hablan inglés.

B. *Answer in Spanish* (*see* A). *Use* **sí señor** *or* **sí señora, no señor** *or* **no señora,** *whenever possible, and make complete sentences:* 1. ¿ Estudia usted mucho? ¿ Qué lleva usted a la escuela? ¿ Lee usted los libros? ¿ Con qué escribe usted? ¿ Escribe usted a un amigo? ¿ Habla usted español? ¿ Habla usted inglés?

2. ¿ Qué comen ustedes? ¿ Beben ustedes agua? ¿ Beben ustedes leche? ¿ En qué beben ustedes agua? ¿ En qué beben ustedes leche? ¿ No llevan ustedes platos a la escuela?

3. ¿ Qué estudia Juan? ¿ Qué estudia Ana? ¿ Qué no estudia Ana? ¿ Qué hablan en España? ¿ Qué hablan en Inglaterra? ¿ Hablan español en Inglaterra? ¿ Hablan inglés en España?

C. 1. *Continue:* Llevo libros a la escuela (llevas libros a la escuela, etc.) No bebo leche. No escribo mucho. Deseo viajar.

2. *Make each of the following sentences negative:* Estudio mucho. Juan escribe mucho. Comemos las manzanas. Juan y Ana comen las manzanas. Usted habla español. Ustedes escriben cartas en español. En España hablan inglés.

3. *Give the following nouns, in the singular and in the plural, with the corresponding form of the definite article:* taza (la taza, las tazas), agua, vaso, mano, cruz, flor, mes, lunes, inglés, labio, rey, lápiz, crisis, manzana, hacha, hacienda, madre.

D. *Write in Spanish:* 1. John and Mary take bread and cheese to school. 2. They eat the bread and the cheese. 3. They drink

water; they do not drink milk. 4. Do they not take books also to school? 5. Yes, sir, they take books, paper and pencils. 6. They read and write a-great-deal at school. 7. Do you (*sing.*) drink water or milk? 8. I drink water at school. 9. Do you take a glass to school? 10. No, sir, I take a cup. 11. I drink milk in a cup. 12. We do not take plates to school. 13. Do you (*pl.*) take flowers to school? 14. Yes, ma'am, Mary and Anna take flowers to school. 15. We study Spanish, history and chemistry. 16. Do you (*pl.*) not study mathematics? 17. Charles and John study mathematics. 18. Mary and Anna do not study mathematics. 19. Charles, do you desire to travel? 20. Yes, ma'am, I desire to travel through Spain. 21. Do you speak Spanish? 22. No, ma'am, I do not speak Spanish. 23. I desire [to] learn to speak Spanish.

Vocabulary

Ana Anna
beber (to) drink
comer (to) eat
desear (to) desire
España *f.* Spain
la **historia** history [1]
Inglaterra *f.* England
Juan John
la **leche** milk
llevar (to) carry, take
la **mantequilla** [2] butter
la **manzana** apple
las **matemáticas** mathematics
no no, not
o or
el **pan** bread
por for, through
el **queso** cheese
la **química** chemistry
señor sir
señora madam, ma'am
sí yes
usted *sing.*, **ustedes** [3] *pl.* you
el **vaso** (drinking) glass
viajar (to) travel

a la escuela to school; **en la escuela** at school

[1] In the vocabularies the definite article is not translated.

[2] Or **manteca.**

[3] **Usted** (sing.) and **ustedes** (pl.) take the verb in the third person: **usted estudia,** *you* (sing.) *study;* **ustedes estudian,** *you* (pl.) *study.* **Usted** and **ustedes** are usually not omitted. Students are advised to use **usted habla,** *you* (sing.) *speak,* **ustedes hablan,** *you* (pl.) *speak;* **usted teme, ustedes temen; usted vive, ustedes viven,** etc., and not use the intimately familiar forms (**tú**) **hablas,** *thou speakest* or *you* (fam. sing.) *speak,* (**vosotros**) **habláis,** *ye,* or *you* (fam. pl.), *speak;* (**tú**) **temes,** (**vosotros**) **teméis;** (**tú**) **vives,** (**vosotros**) **vivís,** etc. See § 46.

LESSON III

35. Feminine of Adjectives. — Many Spanish adjectives change their form according as the noun they modify is masculine or feminine, singular or plural.

(1) Adjectives ending in **–o** in the masculine singular change **–o** to **–a** to form the feminine.

un caballo blanco a white horse **una vaca blanca** a white cow

(2) But adjectives ending in a consonant or in a vowel other than **–o** have the same form for the masculine and the feminine.

Un libro azul.	A blue book.
Una casa azul.	A blue house.
Un hombre cortés.	A polite man.
Una mujer cortés.	A polite woman.
Un muchacho inteligente.	An intelligent boy.
Una muchacha inteligente.	An intelligent girl.

EXCEPTIONS. — *a.* Adjectives of nationality ending in a consonant add **–a** to form the feminine: **inglés, inglesa,** *English;* **español, española,** *Spanish.*

b. Adjectives ending in **–án, –ón,** or **–or** (except comparatives in **–or**) add **–a** to form the feminine: **holgazán, holgazana,** *lazy;* **burlón, burlona,** *roguish;* **traidor, traidora,** *treacherous.*

Note that in Spanish a qualifying adjective follows its noun.

36. Apocopation of Adjectives. — A few adjectives lose the final **–o** of the masculine singular when they precede their noun. Among these are **buen(o), –a,** *good;* **un(o), –a,** *one;* **ningun(o), –a,** *no, none;* **primer(o), –a,** *first;* **tercer(o), –a,** *third:* **un buen hombre,** *a good man;* **ningún libro,** *no book;* **el primer ejercicio,** *the first exercise,* etc.

37. Plural of Adjectives. — The plural of adjectives, like the plural of nouns, is formed by adding **–s** or **–es** to the singular.

blanco, blancos, blanca, blancas white **azul, azules** blue

38. Radical-changing *e* and *o* Verbs.[1] — Many verbs of the first and second conjugations, while otherwise regular, change the radical vowels **e** and **o** to **ie** and **ue** respectively, whenever the stress falls on the stem. The following will serve as models of these verbs:

Present Indicative

Temblar (*to*) *tremble*

Singular	Plural
1. **tiemblo**	1. **temblamos**
2. **tiemblas**	2. **tembláis**
3. **tiembla**	3. **tiemblan**

Perder (*to*) *lose*

1. **pierdo**	1. **perdemos**
2. **pierdes**	2. **perdéis**
3. **pierde**	3. **pierden**

Contar (*to*) *count*

1. **cuento**	1. **contamos**
2. **cuentas**	2. **contáis**
3. **cuenta**	3. **cuentan**

Volver (*to*) *return*

1. **vuelvo**	1. **volvemos**
2. **vuelves**	2. **volvéis**
3. **vuelve**	3. **vuelven**

Note that **e** becomes **ie** and **o** becomes **ue** only in the singular and the third person plural, since the stress falls on the inflectional endings of the first and second persons plural, and not on the stem.

[1] All verbs that make these phonetic changes will be found in the list of verbs, § 293.

39. The Personal Pronoun Subjects are used if they are needed for clearness or emphasis.

yo hablo I speak		**usted habla**	you speak
nosotros[1] **hablamos** we speak		**ustedes hablan**	
yo soy	I am	**usted es**	you are
yo estoy		**usted está**	
nosotros somos	we are	**ustedes son**	you are
nosotros estamos		**ustedes están**	

a. The forms **es** and **está** mean *is* when they are used with nouns or pronouns of the third person: **la mujer es cortés,** *the woman is polite.*

b. The forms **estoy, está, estamos, están,** must be used when referring to position, as in **¿ dónde está usted?** *where are you?*, and also in such expressions as **¿ cómo está usted?** *how are you?* (see § 52); but **la casa es blanca,** *the house is white;* **María es inteligente,** *Mary is intelligent.*

EXERCISES

A. *Study:* 1. ¿ Dónde está Carlos? — Aquí estoy, señor profesor. — ¿ Cómo está usted hoy? — Muy bien, gracias. — Carlos, ¿ escribe usted mucho con el lápiz azul? — Sí, señor; yo escribo mucho con el lápiz azul. — María, ¿ escribe usted también con el lápiz azul? — No, señor; yo escribo con pluma y tinta. — ¿ En qué escribe usted? — Escribo en papel blanco. — ¿ Quiere usted escribir en papel negro también? — No, señor; no quiero escribir en papel negro.

2. Ana escribe con una pluma pequeña y Juan escribe con una pluma grande. Juan estudia mucho, pero no aprende la lección. Cuando el profesor de español habla, nosotros escuchamos para aprender las palabras. Escribimos los ejercicios con tinta negra en el cuaderno, pero el profesor señala los errores con tinta roja.

3. Los españoles y los hispanoamericanos hablan español. Los ingleses y los norteamericanos hablan inglés. Los españoles y los hispanoamericanos aprenden el inglés para viajar por Inglaterra y los Estados Unidos. Los ingleses y

[1] There is also a feminine form, **nosotras,** which is used if all present are women.

los norteamericanos aprenden el español para viajar por España y la América española.

4. Pablo vive con su madre y su hermana. Pablo es inteligente y cortés. Teresa es la hermana de Pablo. Es muy burlona, pero es inteligente y cortés también. El padre de Pablo y Teresa tiene muchos caballos. Tiene dos caballos blancos. Tiene también muchas vacas. Las vacas no son blancas. Teresa cuenta los caballos. Cuando ve (*she sees*) las vacas, tiembla de miedo y vuelve a casa.

B. *Answer in Spanish* (*see* A, 2, 3, *and* 4): 1. ¿ Es pequeña o grande la pluma de Ana? ¿ Es pequeña o grande la pluma de Juan? ¿ Cuándo escuchan ustedes? ¿ Para qué (*why*) escuchan ustedes? ¿ Qué escriben ustedes? ¿ Con qué escriben ustedes? ¿ Qué señala el profesor? ¿ Con qué señala los errores?

2. ¿ Qué idioma hablan los españoles? ¿ Qué idioma hablan los hispanoamericanos? ¿ Qué idioma hablan los ingleses? ¿ Qué idioma hablan los norteamericanos? ¿ Para qué aprenden el inglés los españoles? ¿ Para qué aprenden el español los ingleses?

3. ¿ Con quién vive Pablo? ¿ Quién es la hermana de Pablo? ¿ Quién es burlón? ¿ Quién tiene muchos caballos? ¿ Quién cuenta los caballos? ¿ Cuenta las vacas también? ¿ Cuándo tiembla de miedo?

C. 1. *Continue:* Tiemblo de miedo. No quiero temblar de miedo. Cuento los caballos. No puedo contar las vacas. Vuelvo a casa.

2. *Put the correct ending of the adjective in place of the dash:* el buen pan blanc–, una casa blanc–, una casa grand–, dos hombres cortes–, las mujeres cortes–, caballos negr–, cinco vacas negr–, diez caballos ingles–, diez vacas ingles–, un lápiz negr–, papel blanc–, los hombres inteligent–, las mujeres inteligent–, lápices azul–, la tinta negr–, las palabras español–.

3. *Put in place of the dash the correct form of* **estoy**, *etc. or* **soy**, *etc.:* yo —— aquí, yo —— inglés, usted —— español, ¿ dónde —— España? ¿ dónde —— nosotros? ustedes —— aquí, ustedes no —— españoles, nosotros —— norteamericanos.

D. *Write in Spanish:* 1. John, are you present? — Present, sir (**señor profesor**). — When I speak Spanish you (*use* **usted**) do not listen. 2. — Yes, I do listen, and I write the words in the notebook. 3. — Do you write with a blue pencil? 4. — No, sir; I do not write with a blue pencil. 5. — Do you write with a red pencil? 6. — No, sir; I write with a large pen. 7. — Do you learn the Spanish lessons? 8. — Yes, sir; I study a-great-deal, and I listen when you speak Spanish. 9. I write the exercises in the notebook and you mark the mistakes. 10. — With what do I mark the mistakes? 11. — You mark the mistakes with red ink. 12. And you count the mistakes too.

13. The (North) Americans [1] speak English and the Spanish Americans Spanish. 14. The (North) Americans learn Spanish in order to travel in (**por**) Spain and (the) Spanish America. 15. The Spanish Americans learn English in order to travel in England and the United States. 16. They desire also to read books in English.

17. The father of Charles and Mary has many horses and many cows. 18. He has a good white horse and many black horses. 19. Does he have black cows also? 20. No, ma'am; he does not have [any] black cows, but he has two white cows. 21. Mary trembles with fear when she sees the cows.

Vocabulary

aquí here
bien well
el **cuaderno** notebook
cuando (*interrog.* **cuándo**) when
el **ejercicio** exercise
el **error** mistake
escuchar (to) listen (to)
los **Estados Unidos** the United States
gracias thank you
grande large, big
hispanoamericano, –a Spanish-American
hoy today

[1] In Spanish-speaking countries the inhabitants of the United States are called **norteamericanos, yanquis,** or, less often, **estadunidenses** (or **estadounidenses**).

la lección lesson
la madre mother
muchos, –as many
muy very
negro, –a black
norteamericano, –a (North) American
Pablo Paul
el padre father
la palabra word
pequeño, –a small, little
pero but
poder (ue) [1] can, be able
presente present
el profesor, la profesora professor, teacher
querer (ie) [1] (to) wish, want
quién (*pl.* **quiénes**) who? whom?
rojo, –a, red
segundo, –a second
señalar (to) mark
su(**s**) his, her, their, your
Teresa Theresa

tiene has; **la pluma de Ana** Anna's pen; **el profesor** (**la profesora**) **de español** the Spanish teacher; **la lección de español** the Spanish lesson; **tiembla de miedo** trembles with fear; **vuelve a casa** returns home.

LESSON IV

40. Radical-changing Verbs. — Some verbs of the third conjugation change the radical **e** to **ie** or to **i**, and **o** to **ue**, whenever the stress falls on the stem.[2] The following will serve as models of these verbs:

Present Indicative

Sentir (*to*) *feel, regret*

Singular	Plural
1. **siento**	1. **sentimos**
2. **sientes**	2. **sentís**
3. **siente**	3. **sienten**

Pedir (*to*) *ask for*

1. **pido**	1. **pedimos**
2. **pides**	2. **pedís**
3. **pide**	3. **piden**

[1] Radical-changing: **poder** (§ 265) and **querer** (§ 264) are irregular in some tenses.

[2] Cf. §§ 251, 252.

Dormir (*to*) *sleep*

1. **duermo**	1. **dormimos**
2. **duermes**	2. **dormís**
3. **duerme**	3. **duermen**

41. The Irregular Verbs *Tener* and *Haber*

Indicative: Present Tense

Tener (*to*) *have*

Singular	Plural
1. **tengo**	1. **tenemos**
2. **tienes**	2. **tenéis**
3. **tiene**	3. **tienen**

Haber (*to*) *have*

1. **he**	1. **hemos**
2. **has**	2. **habéis**
3. **ha (hay)**	3. **han**

42. Meaning and Use of *Tener* and *Haber*

(1) **Tener** means (*to*) *have* in the sense of (*to*) *possess;* **tengo una pluma,** *I have a pen.*

(2) **Haber** is chiefly used as an auxiliary verb with past participles in the formation of compound tenses. Thus, the present perfect tense of **hablar** is:

I have spoken, or *I have been speaking*

Singular	Plural
1. **he hablado**	1. **hemos hablado**
2. **has hablado**	2. **habéis hablado**
3. **ha hablado**	3. **han hablado**

a. **Hay**[1] means *there is,* or *there are;* **hay uno,** *there is one;* **hay dos,** *there are two.* The form **hay** is used only as an impersonal verb; **ha,** not **hay,** is used in the formation of compound tenses, as **ha habido,** *there has been,* and in temporal expressions, as **mucho tiempo ha,** *there is much time,* i.e., *long ago.*

[1] Composed of **ha,** *it has,* and **y,** an old adverb meaning *there.* Cf. French *il y a.*

43. Participles

hablar:	**hablando** speaking	**hablado** spoken
temer:	**temiendo** fearing	**temido** feared
vivir:	**viviendo** living	**vivido** lived
sentir:	**sintiendo** feeling	**sentido** felt
pedir:	**pidiendo** asking	**pedido** asked
dormir:	**durmiendo** sleeping	**dormido** slept
tener:	**teniendo** having	**tenido** had
haber:	**habiendo** having	**habido** had

44. Idiomatic Expressions

(1) **tengo que,** I have to, *or* I must.
tengo que estudiar mucho, I have to (*or* I must) study a great deal.
he de, I am to, I shall.[1]
ha de partir mañana, he is to leave tomorrow.

(2) **tengo calor,** I am warm.
tengo mucho calor, I am very warm.
tengo frío, I am cold.
tengo hambre,[2] I am hungry.
tengo sed,[2] I am thirsty.
tengo sueño, I am sleepy.
tengo miedo, I am afraid.
tengo prisa, I am in a hurry.
tengo cuidado, I am careful.
tengo ganas (de), I long (to).
tengo los ojos cansados, my eyes are tired.
tengo rota la pierna derecha, my right leg is broken.
tengo diez años, I am ten years old (lit., 'I have ten years').
¿ cuántos años tienes? how old are you? (lit., 'how many years have you?')

Note that these expressions refer to the physical or mental condition of a person or animal, not of inanimate objects; e.g., *the water is hot,* **el agua está** (from **estar,** *to be*) **caliente,** and not **el agua tiene calor.**

EXERCISES

A. *Study:* 1. Juan, ¿ está usted detrás de la mesa? — No, señor; estoy delante de la mesa. — ¿ Está el libro azul debajo de la mesa? — No, señor; está sobre la mesa. — ¿ Dónde están el papel y la tinta? — Aquí están, señor. — ¿ Tiene usted papel negro y tinta blanca? — No, señor;

[1] Or, *I have to,* not indicating external obligation. [2] **hambre** and **sed** are feminine.

tengo papel blanco y tinta negra. — ¿ Tiene usted papel verde también? — No, señor; no tengo papel verde, pero tengo papel azul, papel rojo y papel amarillo. Cuando escribo con tinta negra, prefiero papel blanco o amarillo. — ¿ Qué papel prefiere usted cuando escribe con tinta roja? — Cuando escribo con tinta roja, prefiero papel azul. — ¿ Tiene usted también libros rojos, azules, blancos y negros? — Tengo libros rojos y azules, pero no tengo libros blancos ni negros.

2. Nosotros hemos vivido un año en Madrid. Hemos tenido mucho frío a causa de los vientos fríos. Hemos tenido ganas de volver a los Estados Unidos. Pero hay también vientos fríos en los Estados Unidos. Pablo y Teresa han aprendido a hablar español en una escuela española. Teresa habla muy bien, pero Pablo habla mal. El muchacho nunca tiene cuidado. Siempre tiene prisa. Escribe muy mal en español, pero escribe bastante bien en inglés. No tiene ganas de estudiar. Siempre tiene sueño y quiere dormir.

3. ¿ Duerme Carlos? — No, Carlos no duerme. No tiene sueño. Pero no ha comido y tiene mucha hambre. Pide pan, jamón y huevos. — ¿ No tiene sed también? — Sí, quiere beber agua. Ana trae agua y leche. Carlos no bebe la leche porque no está fría. — ¿ Tiene Ana también hambre y sed? — No, Ana no tiene hambre ni sed, pero tiene sueño. Ha estudiado mucho y tiene los ojos cansados.

B. *Answer in Spanish:* 1. ¿ Tiene Juan papel blanco o papel negro? ¿ Tiene Juan tinta negra o tinta blanca? Cuando Juan escribe con tinta negra, ¿ qué papel prefiere? Cuando escribe con tinta roja, ¿ qué papel prefiere? ¿ Tiene usted libros rojos y blancos?

2. ¿ Cuántos años han vivido ustedes en Madrid? ¿ Por qué han tenido ganas de volver a los Estados Unidos?

¿ Quiénes han aprendido a hablar español? ¿ Quién habla muy bien y quién habla mal? ¿ Qué tiene Pablo? ¿ Qué quiere Pablo?

C. *Continue:* 1. No tengo prisa. Tengo mucha hambre. He aprendido la lección. Pido pan. Duermo mucho.

2. *Put in place of the dash the correct ending of the adjective or verb:* viento frí–, viento calient–, agua frí–, agua calient–, papel roj–, tinta roj–, muchachos inteligent–, muchachas inteligent–, muchachos burlon–, muchachas burlon–, Juan escrib– la lección, Juan y María escrib– bien, ¿ qué idioma habl– usted? ¿ qué prefier– ustedes?

3. *Put in place of the dash the proper form of* **tener** *or* **haber:** Juan —— calor. Juan —— tenido calor. ¿ —— ustedes prisa? ¿ —— tenido ustedes prisa? Yo —— un caballo inglés. Yo no —— leído mucho. Cuando —— sueño quiero dormir. Nosotros no leemos cuando —— los ojos cansados. Yo —— comprado muchos libros, y —— libros ingleses y españoles.

4. *Put in place of the dash the proper form of* **estoy,** *etc., or* **soy,** *etc.:* ¿ Dónde —— el profesor? —— detrás de la mesa. ¿ Dónde —— Carlos? —— delante de la mesa. ¿ —— Carlos español? No, señor, —— inglés. ¿ Quiénes —— debajo de la mesa? Juan y Carlos —— debajo de la mesa. ¿ Quién —— detrás de la puerta? No —— María, —— Juan.

D. *Write in Spanish:* 1. What do you (*pl.*) study at school? 2. — We study Spanish, history and chemistry. 3. — How many lessons do you have to study? 4. — We have to study two lessons; we do not have a Spanish lesson. 5. I have studied a great deal and my eyes are very tired. 6. I am sleepy and I wish to sleep. 7. But I am afraid to (**de**) sleep, because the teacher is very severe. 8. Mary is very sleepy also; she sleeps a great deal. 9. She has had to study two lessons and to write many letters. 10. — Does Paul study much? 11. — No, he does not study much, and he is always hungry. 12. When he is hungry, he asks for

apples. 13. We have to take (= carry) many apples to school. 14. We do not eat apples when we are thirsty; we drink water.

15. Charles and Theresa have lived [for] two years in Spain. 16. They have studied in a Spanish school. 17. They have learned to speak very well. 18. — Have you (*sing.*) learned[1] to speak well? 19. — No, sir; I have learned to write letters in Spanish, but I do not speak well. 20. I am always in a hurry and I am never (*say* never am I) careful. 21. — How old are you? 22. — I am fifteen years old. 23. — Do you have to write many letters in Spanish? 24. — No, sir, I have to write one or two at school.

Vocabulary

amarillo, –a yellow
el **año** year
bastante enough, quite
bien well
cuánto, –a how much? (*pl.* how [many?)
cuarto, –a fourth
debajo de under
delante de before
detrás de behind
frío, –a cold
el **huevo** egg
el **jamón** ham
mal badly
la **mesa** table
ni nor
nunca never
porque because; **¿ por qué?** why?
preferir (ie) (to) prefer
la **puerta** door
quince fifteen
severo, –a severe
siempre always
sobre on, upon
traer (to) bring
verde green
el **viento** wind
ya already

a causa de on account of; **bastante bien** rather well, well enough

LESSON V

45. Personal Pronouns

(1) Subject-Pronouns

yo I	**nosotros (–as)** we
tú you, thou	**vosotros (–as)** you, ye
él he, **ella** she	**ellos (–as)** they

a. Note that **nosotros, vosotros,** and **ellos** have the feminine forms **nosotras, vosotras,** and **ellas.**

[1] For the word order, see B, 2, first sentence.

b. **Él** and **ella** may also mean *it* when referring to things; but English *it*, when the subject of a verb, is not expressed in Spanish.

c. In Spanish, the subject-pronouns may usually be omitted.

(2) Object-Pronouns

me me, to me	**nos** us, to us
te you (thee), to you (thee)	**os** you, to you
le him **lo** it	**los** them *m.*
la her, it	**las** them *f.*
le to him, to her, to it	**les** to them *m. and f.*

a. It, as the direct object of a verb, is **la** when it refers to a feminine noun; otherwise it is **lo**: **¿ tiene usted la pluma ?** *have you the pen ?* — **sí, la tengo,** *yes, I have it;* **¿ tiene usted el libro ?** *have you the book ?* — **sí, lo tengo,** *yes, I have it.*

b. An object-pronoun usually precedes its verb.

46. ***Usted.*** — In familiar address, *you* is **tú** (sing.), or **vosotros** (pl.); but in formal address, *you* is **usted** (sing.), or **ustedes** (pl.), used with the third person singular or plural of the verb. Thus, in the singular, *you have* is **tú tienes**, or **usted tiene**, and in the plural it is **vosotros tenéis**, or **ustedes tienen. Usted** is usually not omitted.

a. The object-pronouns of the third person also mean *you*, referring to **usted** or **ustedes.**[1] It is often more explicit and more courteous to add **a usted** or **a ustedes**: **no le ama a usted,** or **no los** (**las**) **ama a ustedes,** *he doesn't love you;* **le** (**les**) **escribe una carta a usted** (**a ustedes**), *he writes a letter to you.*

47. Possessive Adjectives

mi (**mis**) my	**nuestro** (**–a, –os, –as**) our
tu (**tus**) your	**vuestro** (**–a, –os, –as**) your
su (**sus**) his, her, its, your	**su** (**sus**) their, your

a. Your: **tu** corresponds to **tú, vuestro** to **vosotros**(**–as**), and **su** to **usted** or **ustedes.** Instead of **su** (**sus**) meaning *your*, **el, la** (**los, las**) **de usted** (or **ustedes**) may be used.

[1] **Le, la,** etc., are the object-pronouns corresponding to **usted,** since the original meaning of **usted** was *your grace* (**usted** is an abbreviation of **vuestra merced**).

48. Demonstrative Adjectives

este (**–a, –os, –as**) this, these (*near to or appertaining to the speaker or writer*), this . . . of mine, etc.

ese (**–a, –os, –as**) that, those (*near to or appertaining to the person addressed*), that . . . of yours, etc.

aquel (**aquella, –os, –as**) that, those (*remote from the person addressed*) that . . . of his, hers, etc., *or* that . . . over there.

a. The possessive and demonstrative adjectives are usually repeated before each noun to which they refer.

Mi padre y mi madre.	My father and mother.
Este hombre y esta mujer.	This man and woman.

49. Irregular Verbs: *Decir, Ir,* and *Venir*

Indicative: Present tense

Decir (*to*) *say, tell*

Singular	Plural
1. **digo**	1. **decimos**
2. **dices**	2. **decís**
3. **dice**	3. **dicen**

Ir (*to*) *go*

1. **voy**	1. **vamos**
2. **vas**	2. **vais**
3. **va**	3. **van**

Venir (*to*) *come*

1. **vengo**	1. **venimos**
2. **vienes**	2. **venís**
3. **viene**	3. **vienen**

a. The participles of these verbs are:

Decir: diciendo, dicho
Ir: yendo, ido
Venir: viniendo, venido

EXERCISES

A. *Study:* 1. Juan, yo tengo su libro y usted tiene mi pluma. — No, señor; yo no tengo su pluma; tengo su lápiz. — Señor profesor, ¿ha leído usted mi ejercicio?

— Sí, lo he leído; he leído todos los ejercicios. — ¿ Ha tenido muchos errores mi ejercicio? — Algunos. Los he señalado con tinta roja. — Muchas gracias, señor profesor. — No hay de que, Juan.

2. Todo el mundo está ocupado. Yo escribo un ejercicio en español. Tú estudias la lección de historia. Él estudia en la biblioteca. Ella lee los periódicos. Usted toca el piano. Nosotros aprendemos a leer el español. Vosotros jugáis a la pelota. Sí, todos están muy ocupados.

3. ¿ Quién es Juan? — Es el primo de Pablo y María. Me dice que ha vivido tres años en Méjico. Habla bien dos idiomas, el inglés y el español. Vive con nuestro profesor en la casa amarilla. Toca bien el piano y juega a la pelota. — ¿ Toca usted el piano? — No, señor; no toco el piano, ni juego a la pelota. Pero estudio mucho y aprendo todas las lecciones. — ¿ Estudia Juan mucho también y aprende todas las lecciones? — No, señor; prefiere tocar el piano o jugar a la pelota.

4. Carlos me dice que ha escrito una carta a su padre. ¿ Quiere usted leer la carta? — Gracias; ahora no, porque tengo prisa. Voy a comprar flores para mi madre. — Hay muchas flores en nuestro jardín. ¿ No quiere usted entrar a coger algunas? — Bueno, muchas gracias. — Pase usted.

5. ¿ Tiene usted mi libro? — No, señor; no lo tengo. — ¿ Tiene usted mi pluma? — Sí, señor; la tengo aquí. — ¿ Ha estudiado usted la lección? — Sí, señor; la he estudiado mucho. — ¿ Ha escrito usted los ejercicios? — Sí, señor; los he escrito todos. — ¿ Juan le ha escrito a usted una carta en español? — No, señor; me ha escrito una carta en inglés.

B. *Answer in Spanish* (*See* A, 3): ¿ Quién es Juan? ¿ Con quién vive? ¿ Dónde viven ellos? ¿ Dónde ha vivido Juan? ¿ Qué idiomas habla bien? ¿ Qué toca bien? ¿ A qué juega él?

(*See* A, 4) ¿ A quién ha escrito Carlos la carta? ¿ Qué va a comprar usted? ¿ Para quién? ¿ Dónde hay muchas flores?

C. 1. *Continue:* La señora es mi madre (la señora es tu madre, etc.). Juan me busca (Juan te busca, etc.). No lo digo. Yo voy a Madrid. Yo vengo de Sevilla.

2. *Put the correct ending in place of the dash:* est– hombre, est– mujer, est– libros, est– plumas, es– palabras, es– pan, aquell– idiomas, aquell– muchachos, aquell– manzanas, nuestr— casa, nuestr– papel, mi– cartas, su– amigos, nuestr– madres.

3. *Substitute for the noun in each sentence the corresponding personal pronoun:* Yo no tengo el lápiz (no lo tengo). ¿ Tiene usted la pelota? Nosotros cogemos las flores. Comemos las manzanas. Bebemos la leche. Llevamos los vasos. No llevamos las tazas. Yo pido pan. No pido agua. Usted escribe la carta. Yo escribo el ejercicio. Aprendemos la lección.

4. *Change the verb from singular to plural:* Yo llevo manzanas a la escuela. Usted las come. Él aprende las lecciones. Ella aprende las lecciones también. Yo voy a la escuela. Él viene de Madrid.

D. *Write in Spanish:* 1. Are you (**usted**) very busy? 2. — Yes, ma'am; now I am going to study the Spanish lesson. 3. I prefer to play the piano or to play ball. 4. — Do you write the exercise in Spanish? 5. — Yes, ma'am; I write it in Spanish. 6. — Does the professor mark the mistakes with a blue pencil? 7. — No, he marks them with a red pencil. 8. — Do you read Spanish newspapers? 9. — Yes, ma'am; but I do not read them in the class. 10. — Do you study in the school library (= the library of the school)? 11. — Yes, ma'am; I study in the library every day (= all the days). 12. The school library has many books written in English and in Spanish. 13. John prefers the English books, but I [1] prefer the Spanish books.

[1] This emphatic pronoun should be expressed, but in the preceding sentences the personal pronouns (except **usted** or **ustedes**) may be omitted.

14. We have many flowers in our garden. 15. We pick them every day. 16. We do not have to buy flowers for our mother. 17. We go-into (**en**) the garden through (**por**) the gate (door). 18. We gather red, blue, yellow and white flowers (flowers red, blue, *etc.*). 19. Are there many flowers in Cuba? 20. — Yes, sir; and there are many flowers also in the United States. 21. — Do you (**usted**) prefer the red and blue flowers to the white ones[1]? 22. — No, sir; in school and at home I prefer the white flowers. 23. But my mother prefers the red ones.[1] 24. — Who lives in the large house? 25. — It is a cousin (*fem.*) of Paul; she has lived three years in Cuba. 26. She says that she prefers Cuba to the United States. 27. She has traveled in (**por**) Mexico too. 28. She comes here (**aquí**) every year (= all the years).

Vocabulary

ahora now
alguno, –a some
la **biblioteca** library
buscar (to) seek, look for
la **clase** class
coger (to) gather, pick
entrar (**en** *or* **a**) (to) enter, go into
escrito, –a written
gracias thanks
jugar (**ue**)[2] (to) play (*a game*)
ocupado, –a busy
para for, in order to
la **pelota** ball
el **periódico** newspaper
el **primo**, la **prima** cousin
pronto soon
que that
quinto, –a fifth
tocar (to) play (*a musical instrument*)
todo, –a all

todo el mundo everybody (*lit.*, all the world); **no hay de que** you are welcome *or* don't mention it; **jugar a la pelota** (to) play ball; **en casa** at home.

[1] Say **las blancas**, etc.; do not attempt to translate *ones*.
[2] In **jugar** the **u** becomes **ue** when stressed: **juego, juegas**, etc. See § 249.

LESSON VI

50. Personal Pronouns. — (1) **Me, te, nos** and **os** may be used as reflexive pronouns. The reflexive pronoun of the third person, singular and plural, is **se.**

yo me engaño I deceive myself, *or* I am mistaken
nos engañamos we deceive ourselves
se engaña he (she) deceives himself (herself), *or* you deceive yourself
se engañan they (you) deceive themselves (yourselves)

(2) When a verb has two personal pronoun-objects, the indirect precedes the direct object: **me lo da,** *he gives it to me;* **nos la da,** *he gives it to us.*

If both pronoun-objects are in the third person, **se** is used as the indirect object instead of **le** or **les: se lo da,** *he gives it to him* (*to her, to them, to you*). Although alike in form this **se** and the reflexive are different words

51. Irregular Verbs

(1) **Present Indicative of *Ser* and *Oír***

Ser (*to*) *be*

Singular	Plural
1. **soy**	1. **somos**
2. **eres**	2. **sois**
3. **es**	3. **son**

Oír (*to*) *hear*

1. **oigo**	1. **oímos**
2. **oyes**	2. **oís**
3. **oye**	3. **oyen**

(2) In the present indicative, the following verbs are regular except in the first person singular:

Dar (to) give: **doy, das, da, damos, dais, dan**
Estar (to) be: **estoy, estás, está, estamos, estáis, están**
Ver (to) see: **veo, ves, ve, vemos, veis, ven**
Caber (to) be contained: **quepo, cabes, cabe, cabemos, cabéis, caben**

Saber (to) know: **sé, sabes, sabe, sabemos, sabéis, saben**
Conocer (to) know: **conozco, conoces, conoce, conocemos, conocéis, conocen**
Traducir (to) translate: **traduzco, traduces, traduce, traducimos, traducís, traducen**
Hacer (to) do: **hago, haces, hace, hacemos, hacéis, hacen**
Caer (to) fall: **caigo, caes, cae, caemos, caéis, caen**
Traer (to) bring: **traigo, traes, trae, traemos, traéis, traen**
Poner (to) put: **pongo, pones, pone, ponemos, ponéis, ponen**
Salir (to) go out: **salgo, sales, sale, salimos, salís, salen**
Valer (to) be worth: **valgo, vales, vale, valemos, valéis, valen**

a. **Conocer** means *(to) know* in the sense of *(to) become acquainted with.*

(3) **Participles:** The participles of all these verbs are regular except the past participles of **hacer** (**hecho**), **poner** (**puesto**), **ver** (**visto**). But, note the substitution of **y** for **i** between vowels in the present participles of **caer** (**cayendo**), **oír** (**oyendo**), **traer** (**trayendo**), and the use of the accent mark on the weak vowel of the past participles of **caer** (**caído**), **oír** (**oído**), and **traer** (**traído**).

52. Meaning of *Ser* and *Estar*

(1) **Ser** and **estar** both mean *(to) be.* **Ser** expresses what is inherent, characteristic, or permanent.

Soy libre.	I am free (a free man).
Es cojo.	He is (permanently) lame (a cripple).
Soy viejo.	I am old (an old man).
Su hermano es médico.	His brother is a physician.

It is used also to denote time, possession, origin, or material, and in most impersonal expressions.

Es la una.	It is one o'clock.
Este libro es de Juan.	This book is John's.
Soy de España.	I am from Spain.
La taza es de oro.	The cup is of gold.
No es posible.	It isn't possible.

(2) **Estar** expresses what is accidental or temporary, and is always used for position (or location) whether permanent or temporary. It denotes *how, in what condition* or *where* a person or thing is.

Estoy libre.	I am free (now disengaged).
Hoy está cojo.	He is lame (limping) today.
Estoy enfermo.	I am ill.
Mi hermano está en Méjico.	My brother is in Mexico.
Méjico está en la América del Norte.	Mexico is in North America.

a. **Ser** alone permits of a predicate *noun* with it: **su hermano es soldado,** *his brother is a soldier.*

b. Some adjectives have one meaning when used with **ser** and another meaning when used with **estar.**

ser bueno (to) be good	**estar bueno** (to) be well
ser malo (to) be bad	**estar malo** (to) be ill
ser cansado (to) be tiresome	**estar cansado** (to) be tired

c. Progressive action may be expressed by **estar** and the present participle (see § 98, *b*): **estoy estudiando la lección,** *I am studying the lesson;* **¿ está usted escribiendo una carta a María?** *are you writing a letter to Mary?* The progressive forms, **estoy estudiando,** etc., indicate clearly that the act is now in progress.

53. Idiomatic Expressions

(1) **yo soy,**[1] it is I.
tú eres, it is you.
él es, it is he. } **ellos (–as) son,** it is they.
ella es, it is she. }
usted es, it is you.
nosotros (–as) somos, it is we.
vosotros (–as) sois, it is you.
ustedes son, it is you.

(2) **es lástima,** it is a pity.
es mentira, it is false (not true).
es verdad *or* **es cierto,** it is true.
¿ no es verdad? isn't it so?
está bien, it is well, all right.
¡ está bueno! good!

EXERCISES

A. *Study:* 1. Ahora estamos en la escuela. Esta escuela es un edificio grande. Está en el centro de la ciudad. Tiene cinco pisos. Nuestra sala de clase está en el tercer piso.

[1] Or **soy yo,** etc.

En la sala de clase hay pupitres y bancos para los alumnos. Hay una mesa y una silla para el profesor. El profesor está sentado en la silla detrás de la mesa.

2. ¿ Quién es profesor de español en esta escuela ? — El señor Montero es profesor de español. — Yo no le conozco. ¿ Es viejo o joven ? — Es joven. Ha estado enfermo y hoy está muy cansado. — Es lástima ¿ no es verdad ? — Sí; tiene mucho que hacer. Ahora está escribiendo un libro. — ¿ De dónde es el señor Montero ? — Es de España, pero ha vivido muchos años en la América del Norte.

3. ¿ Cuántos alumnos hay en la clase de español ? — Yo no sé, pero creo que hay veinte. Algunos alumnos son perezosos. — Juan y María son aplicados ¿ no es verdad ? — Juan es aplicado y estudia mucho. María ha estado mala y ahora no puede estudiar. — ¿ Qué idiomas estudian Pablo y Teresa ? — Han estudiado el francés. Ahora están estudiando el español.

4. Nuestro vecino vuelve a España. Ha vivido muchos años en los Estados Unidos. Tiene un hijo, Antonio. Este hijo tiene cinco años. Siempre está enfermo. Es lástima ¿ no es verdad ? Nuestro vecino es [1] médico. Antonio es el único hijo que tiene. La madre está muy triste. Tiene un hermano que es soldado. El soldado está enfermo también.

5. ¿ No se engaña usted ? — No, señor; no me engaño. Yo sé que es verdad; y Pablo me lo dice también. — Juan me dice que es mentira. — Juan se engaña.

María no me presta su libro. Yo no sé por qué no me lo presta. Yo le presto todos mis libros. Se los presto todos. — ¿ Le presta María su libro a usted ? — Sí, me lo presta todos los días.

B. *Answer in Spanish:* 1–3. ¿ Dónde estamos ? ¿ Dónde está la escuela ? ¿ Cuántos pisos tiene ? ¿ Dónde está nuestra sala de clase ? En la sala de clase ¿ qué hay para

[1] Note absence of indefinite article before a predicate noun (cf. § 103).

los alumnos? (. . . para el profesor?) ¿ Quién es el profesor de español? ¿ Dónde está sentado el profesor? ¿ De dónde es el profesor de español? ¿ Qué está escribiendo? ¿ Ha estado usted en Méjico? ¿ Cuántos alumnos hay en esta clase? ¿ Quién estudia mucho? ¿ Quién ha estado malo? ¿ Qué está estudiando Teresa? ¿ Qué está estudiando usted?

4. ¿ A dónde vuelve nuestro vecino? ¿ Qué es? ¿ Cuántos hijos (*children*) tiene? ¿ Quién es su hijo? ¿ Cuántos años tiene? ¿ Qué es el hermano de la madre? ¿ Está bueno o malo?

C. 1. *Continue:* Soy norteamericano (–a). No estoy en la escuela. No le conozco. Yo no sé lo que hago. Voy a traducir una novela. Estoy escribiendo una carta. Me lo da (te lo da, etc.).

2. *Substitute for the noun the corresponding personal pronoun:* Ella me presta el lápiz. No me presta la pluma. Ellos nos prestan los bancos. No nos prestan las sillas. Nosotros le prestamos la tinta. No le prestamos el papel. ¿ Quién les enseña la lección? El profesor les enseña la lección. ¿ Quién le trae la manzana? La alumna le trae la manzana.

3. *Put in place of the dash the proper form of* **ser** *or* **estar:** El profesor —— severo. Juan —— enfermo. Él —— joven. El soldado —— viejo. ¿ —— usted estudiando la lección? ¿ —— usted cansado? ¿ Cómo —— usted? ¿ Quién ——? Yo ——. Hemos —— en Méjico. Nosotros —— americanos. Carlos no —— en la clase. La taza no —— limpia. La taza no —— de oro. ¡ —— lástima! No —— bien. No quiero —— enfermo. No quiero —— soldado.

4. *Put in place of the dash the proper form of the present indicative of the verb in parenthesis:* (salir) Yo —— todos los días. (ir) Nosotros —— a la escuela. (traer) Él —— muchos libros. (traducir) Yo —— una novela. (ver) Yo —— la escuela. (prestar) Yo se lo ——. (saber) ¿ —— ustedes lo que hago? (conocer) ¿ La —— usted? (poner) Yo —— el libro sobre la mesa.

D. *Write in Spanish:* 1. My brother John has traveled a great deal. 2. In order to travel he is studying (the) Spanish. 3. He prefers it to (the) French. 4. He is-going (**va**) to Spain. 5. Now he is in Mexico. 6. When he is not busy he writes to all his friends. 7. He has not written to them this month because he has been ill. 8. But now he feels (**se siente**) well. 9. Do you know where Mexico is (is Mexico)? 10. — Yes sir; I know where it is. It is in (the) North America. 11. I am studying the geography of America. 12. There is a large map in the library of our school. 13. The library is on (**en**) the top (**último**) floor. 14. There are many chairs and some large tables in the library.

15. Do you know who that girl is in the library? 16. — It[1] is my sister. 17. — What is she doing? 18. — She is reading a Spanish book. 19. There are many Spanish books in our library. 20. — How old is your sister? 21. — She is fifteen years old. 22. — They[1] tell me that she is very inquisitive. 23. — No; she is talkative, but not inquisitive. 24. When the teacher speaks, she speaks also.

25. My neighbor (*fem.*) is not returning (**no vuelve**) to Spain. 26. She wishes to live in the United States. 27. She has a daughter, Mary. 28. I do not know her, but I know that she is ill. 29. — It is true that she is ill and she is the only daughter that she has. 30. She has a son also, who is a physician. 31. The son is now in Mexico. 32. She writes to him every day.

Vocabulary

el **alumno,** la **-a** pupil, student
Antonio Anthony
aplicado, -a studious
el **banco** bench
el **centro** center
la **ciudad** city
corregir (i) (to) correct
creer (to) believe
dónde where?
el **edificio** building
francés, -esa French
la **geografía** geography
hablador, -ora talkative
joven young
la **novela** novel
perezoso, -a lazy
el **piso** floor, story
preguntón, -ona inquisitive
prestar (to) lend
el **pupitre** writing desk
que who, that
la **sala** room
sentado, -a seated
señor Mr.

[1] This pronoun used as subject should not be translated.

señora Mrs.
sexto, –a sixth
la **silla** chair
triste sad
único, –a only (*adj.*)
el **vecino,** la **–a** neighbor
veinte twenty

la **sala de clase** classroom; **la América del Norte** North America

LESSON VII

54. Possessive Case (Genitive). — In Spanish possession is denoted by the preposition **de,** *of*.

El lápiz del niño.	The boy's pencil (lit., 'The pencil of the boy').
La pluma de Ana.	Anna's pen (lit., 'The pen of Anna').

55. Indirect Object (Dative). — A noun that is the indirect object of a verb requires the preposition **a,** whether *to* is expressed in English or not.

Ana dió un libro a Juan.	Mary gave John a book, *or* Mary gave a book to John.

56. Direct Object (Accusative). — A noun that is the direct object of a verb also requires the preposition **a,** if the direct object is a specific person or thing personified.

Busco a Pedro.	I am looking for Peter.
No hallo al niño.	I do not find the boy.
But:	
Busco mi libro.	I am looking for my book.
No hallo el libro.	I do not find the book.

a. **Querer a,** referring to a person, means *to be fond of, to love:* **mi hermano quiere a Sofía,** *my brother loves Sophia.*

57. Negation. — Negative pronouns such as **nada,** *nothing;* **ningun(o), –a,** *none,* and negative adverbs such as **nunca,** *never,* require the verb to be negative when they follow the verb.

No tengo nada.	I have nothing, *or* I haven't anything.
No tenemos ninguno.	We have none, *or* we haven't any.
No estudia nunca.	He never studies, *or* he doesn't ever study.

a. **Ninguno,** like **uno,** loses the final **–o** before a noun: **no tengo ningún libro,** *I haven't any book.*

58. (1) **Commands.** — The following subjunctive forms of verbs [1] are used in commands, with **usted** or **ustedes** as subject:

Escuchar (to) listen: **escuche usted, escuchen ustedes** listen
Aprender (to) learn: **aprenda usted, aprendan ustedes** learn
Escribir (to) write: **escriba usted, escriban ustedes** write

(2) The radical-changing verbs change **e** to **ie** or **i,** and **o** to **ue,** as in the third person of the present indicative.

Temblar (to) tremble: **tiemble(n) usted(es)** tremble
Contar (to) count: **cuente(n) usted(es)** count
Perder (to) lose: **pierda(n) usted(es)** lose
Volver (to) return: **vuelva(n) usted(es)** return
Sentir (to) feel: **sienta(n) usted(es)** feel
Pedir (to) ask: **pida(n) usted(es)** ask
Dormir (to) sleep: **duerma(n) usted(es)** sleep

(3) In most irregular verbs the **–o** of the first person singular of the present indicative is changed to **–a,** singular, and **–an,** plural, in commands.

Caer (to) fall: **caigo** I fall; **caiga(n) usted(es)** fall
Conocer (to) know: **conozco** I know; **conozca(n) usted(es)** know
Decir (to) say, tell: **digo** I say, tell; **diga(n) usted(es)** say, tell
Hacer (to) do: **hago** I do; **haga(n) usted(es)** do
Oír (to) hear: **oigo** I hear; **oiga(n) usted(es)** hear

[1] The subjunctive forms are also used commonly in such expressions as **quiero que usted aprenda la lección,** *I want you to learn the lesson;* **siento que Juan esté enfermo,** *I am sorry that John is ill.* Note the similarity of the command: **aprenda la lección,** *learn the lesson;* and of the wish: **(quiero que) aprenda la lección,** (*I want you to*) *learn the lesson.* See § 82 ff.

Poner (to) put: **pongo** I put; **ponga(n) usted(es)** put
Salir (to) go out: **salgo** I go out; **salga(n) usted(es)** go out
Tener (to) have: **tengo** I have; **tenga(n) usted(es)** have
Traducir (to) translate: **traduzco** I translate; **traduzca(n) usted(es)** translate
Traer (to) bring: **traigo** I bring; **traiga(n) usted(es)** bring
Venir (to) come: **vengo** I come; **venga(n) usted(es)** come
Ver (to) see: **veo** I see; **vea(n) usted(es)** see

a. The following are exceptions:

Dar (to) give: **doy** I give; **dé(n)** [1] **usted(es)** give
Estar (to) be: **estoy** I am; **esté(n) usted(es)** be
Ser (to) be: **soy** I am; **sea(n) usted(es)** be
Ir (to) go: **voy** I go; **vaya(n) usted(es)** go
Saber (to) know: **sé** I know; **sepa(n) usted(es)** know

59. In affirmative — but not in negative — commands, the personal pronoun-object follows the verb, and verb and pronoun are written as one word: **escríbalo** (§ 18) **usted,** *write it,* but **no lo escriba usted,** *do not write it;* **apréndanla ustedes,** *learn it,* but **no la aprendan ustedes,** *do not learn it.*

a. Similarly the pronoun object follows the infinitive and the present participle: **¿ quiere usted escribirlo?** *do you wish to write it?;* **escribiéndolo** (§ 18), *writing it.*

60. Interrogative Sentences. — In an interrogative sentence the subject, if expressed, usually follows the verb, and if a compound tense is used, the subject usually follows the past participle.

Ex. **¿ Habla Carlos?**	Does Charles speak? Is Charles speaking?
¿ Habló Pablo?	Did Paul speak?
¿ Ha vendido usted su caballo?	Have you sold your horse?

a. But in an interrogative sentence the subject may precede the verb. Interrogation is then expressed by the inverted question mark in writing, and by the inflection of the voice when speaking.

¿ Juan estudia mucho y aprende las lecciones?	Does John study much and learn the lessons?

[1] The plural **den** does not have the accent.

EXERCISES

A. 1. ¿ No tiene usted ningún libro? — Sí; he hallado dos libros en la biblioteca. — ¿ Son nuevos? — No, están muy usados. — Entonces no son mis libros. — ¿ Quiere usted prestarme uno? — Aquí está. — Muchas gracias. ¿ Dónde compra usted sus libros? — Compro libros y papel en la tienda de García. Vende muy barato. — ¿ En qué calle está la tienda de García? — Está en la calle Mayor, número diez.

2. Pedro, ¿ gana usted mucho dinero? — Sí, señor; gano bastante. — Está bien, pero no lo gaste todo. — No, señor; voy a ahorrar la mitad de lo que (*what*) gano. — Sí, ahorre usted. Oiga lo que digo. Trabaje usted mucho, gane mucho, y ahorre la mitad, y puede viajar. ¿ No quiere usted viajar? — Sí, señor; quiero viajar por España y Francia.—Está bien, estudie usted mucho, aprenda el español y el francés, escriba todos los ejercicios, traduzca todas las lecciones, y hable francés con el profesor de francés y español con el profesor de español. — Sí, señor; voy a estudiar las lecciones y aprenderlas todas.

3. Pedro, venga acá.[1] Dígame la verdad. ¿ Por qué no estudia usted las lecciones? — Yo las estudio, señor profesor, pero son difíciles y no puedo aprenderlas. — Entonces, estudie usted más. Vaya usted a la pizarra (al pizarrón) y escriba los ejercicios. Escríbalos correctamente. Ahora bórrelos y siéntese. No se siente en ese banco. Siéntese aquí. — Dispénseme, señor profesor. — Sofía, hágame el favor de escribir en la pizarra (el pizarrón) todos los ejercicios de la lección. Está bien. Pedro, corrija (*from* **corregir**) usted los ejercicios de Sofía. Corríjalos todos. Señale los errores. Está muy bien. Ahora bórrelos y siéntese.

4. Tengo en Granada un amigo muy rico. Este amigo

[1] *Come here* is usually **venga usted acá** (rather than **aquí**).

tiene una casa grande. En su casa hay muchas cosas costosas. Ha viajado mucho y ha comprado libros, cuadros y muebles. La casa de mi amigo es grande y cómoda. La biblioteca está en el piso alto (los altos). Hay muchos libros en inglés, español y francés. Mi amigo prefiere los libros en español a los otros libros.

B. 1. ¿ No tiene usted ningún libro? ¿ Dónde compra usted sus libros? ¿ En qué calle está?

2. ¿ Gana usted mucho dinero? Dígame usted cuánto ahorra. ¿ Quiere usted viajar? ¿ Qué tiene que hacer?

3. ¿ Estudia Pedro las lecciones? ¿ Las aprende? ¿ Qué dice el profesor a Pedro? ¿ Qué dice a Sofía?

4. *Describe in Spanish the house in Granada.*

C. 1. *Continue:* Yo busco mis libros. Yo busco a mi hermana. Pedro me lo trae (Pedro te lo trae, etc.).

2. *Supply the preposition* **a** *wherever needed:* He comprado un caballo. Usted quiere Sofía. Busco mi padre. Buscamos una tienda. Hemos hallado nuestra madre. ¿ Busca usted una pluma? ¿ Puede usted hallar el niño?

3. *Place the pronouns in parenthesis before or after the verb used in command:* (Me lo) traiga usted, (se lo) no traiga usted, (me lo) diga, (lo) no haga usted, (me) haga el favor, (los) ponga aquí, (lo) traduzca todo, (se lo) dé usted, (nos los) traiga usted, (lo) sepa usted, (se) sienten ustedes, (se) no sienten aquí, (la) pida usted, (me) escuche usted, (los) escriba todos, (los) no escriba en la pizarra (el pizarrón).

4. *Substitute for the noun the corresponding personal pronoun:* Compro la casa. No vendo la casa. Quiero comprar la casa. No quiero vender la casa. Compre usted la casa. No venda usted la casa. Él nos trae la tinta. Tráiganos usted la tinta. Ella le trae la pluma. Présteme usted dinero. No me presta dinero. ¿ No quiere usted prestarme dinero? Yo le enseño la lección. Enséñele

usted la lección. No le enseñe usted la lección. Usted me da el lápiz. No me dé usted la pluma. Déme usted el lápiz. ¿ No quiere usted darme el lápiz ?

D. 1. John says that he does not earn much money. 2. He spends a-great-deal and does not save anything. 3. John, hear what (**lo que**) I tell you. 4. Save (the) half of your money, and then you can travel. 5. — Yes, sir; I am going (**voy**) to save some money this year, but I can not save (the) half. 6. — If you wish to travel through Spain, learn Spanish. 7. Learn it well. Study all the lessons in (**de**) the grammar. 8. Write the exercises and write them correctly. 9. Learn the rules and learn them correctly too.

10. Peter, go to the (black)board and write the second sentence. 11. The sentence is (**está**) not correct. Please correct it. 12. Thank you. Now erase all the sentences. 13. Erase them all and take your seat. 14. Anna, please go to the (black)board. Write the third sentence in (**de**) the lesson. 15. Please write it correctly. Peter, correct Anna's mistakes. 16. Correct them all. Thank you. 17. Peter and Anna, erase the exercises and take your seats.

18. My friend has bought a large house in Malaga. 19. He tells me that he wishes to sell it. 20. He is going to sell it if he can. 21. But I do not wish to buy it. 22. He has bought many books for (**para**) the library. 23. The library is on the upper floor. 24. — Buy your friend's house. You are rich. 25. Buy it and we can live in Malaga. 26. — I can't buy it. I haven't enough money.

27. I am writing a letter to my friend Paul. 28. He and his aunt are now in Buenos Aires. 29. He writes to me when he is not busy. 30. In one of his letters he says: "We are here in Buenos Aires. 31. This city is very large and pretty. 32. We have visited Rio de Janeiro and Montevideo, and we are going to visit Santiago de Chile and Lima. 33. Write me at Santiago."

Vocabulary

ahorrar (to) save
barato, –a cheap
bonito, –a pretty
borrar (to) erase
la **calle** street
la **cocina** kitchen
el **comedor** dining room
cómodo, –a comfortable

correctamente correctly
correcto, –a correct
costoso, –a costly
el **cuadro** picture
difícil difficult
el **dinero** money
dispensar (to) excuse
entonces then
la **frase** sentence
ganar (to) earn
gastar (to) spend
la **gramática** grammar
Málaga Malaga
más more
Mayor Main (*street*)
la **mitad** half
el **mueble** piece of furniture; **los —s** furniture
nuevo, –a new
el **número** number
otro, –a other, another
Pedro Peter
la **pizarra** [1] (black)board
la **regla** rule
rico, –a rich
sentarse (ie) (to) take one's seat, sit down
séptimo, –a seventh
Sofía Sophia
usado, –a worn, old (= worn)
vender (to) sell

hágame usted el favor de hacerlo please do it; **el piso alto** *or* **los altos** the upper floor

LESSON VIII

61. Indicative: Imperfect and Preterite

(1) Regular Verbs

Hablar

IMPERFECT TENSE

Singular	Plural
1. **habl aba** I was speaking *or* used to speak	1. **habl ábamos**
2. **habl abas**	2. **habl abais**
3. **habl aba**	3. **habl aban**

PRETERITE TENSE

1. **habl é** I spoke *or* did speak	1. **habl amos**
2. **habl aste**	2. **habl asteis**
3. **habl ó**	3. **habl aron**

Temer

IMPERFECT TENSE

1. **tem ía** I was fearing *or* used to fear	1. **tem íamos**
2. **tem ías**	2. **tem íais**
3. **tem ía**	3. **tem ían**

[1] Or **el pizarrón.**

PRETERITE TENSE

1. tem í I feared *or* did fear	1. tem imos
2. tem iste	2. tem isteis
3. tem ió	3. tem ieron

Vivir

IMPERFECT TENSE

1. viv ía I was living *or* used to live	1. viv íamos
2. viv ías	2. viv íais
3. viv ía	3. viv ían

PRETERITE TENSE

1. viv í I lived *or* did live	1. viv imos
2. viv iste	2. viv isteis
3. viv ió	3. viv ieron

Note that the stress falls on the same vowel throughout the imperfect tense; and that, in both tenses, the stress never falls on the stem of regular verbs.

(2) **Radical-Changing Verbs.** — The imperfect indicative of all radical-changing verbs is formed regularly. The preterite of the radical-changing verbs of the first and second conjugations is formed regularly, but in the third conjugation the radical vowels **e** and **o** are changed to **i** and **u** respectively in the third person singular and plural of the preterite.

PRETERITE

Sentir

Singular	Plural
1. sentí	1. sentimos
2. sentiste	2. sentisteis
3. sintió	3. sintieron

Pedir

1. pedí	1. pedimos
2. pediste	2. pedisteis
3. pidió	3. pidieron

Dormir

1. dormí	1. dormimos
2. dormiste	2. dormisteis
3. durmió	3. durmieron

62. Use of the Imperfect and Preterite Indicative. — The imperfect indicative is used (1) to describe the conditions or circumstances which prevailed when something happened, or (2) to represent a state or action as protracted or habitual. The preterite is used to tell what happened on one or more occasions in the past without involving duration or extension of time.

Yo escribía cuando Juan entró.	I was writing when John entered.
Mi padre tenía dos hermosos perros, pero los vendió.	My father had two handsome dogs, but he sold them.
Era la una cuando llegó.	It was one o'clock when he arrived.
Llovía, y los caminos estaban malos.	It was raining, and the roads were bad.
El año pasado fumaba mucho.	Last year I used to smoke a great deal.
No fumé ayer.	I did not smoke yesterday.
Vendí mi casa y compré otra.	I sold my house and bought another.

a. Sometimes *I spoke, I did speak,* or *I would speak,* mean *I used to speak.* They are then to be expressed in Spanish by the imperfect: **hablaba español todos los días cuando estaba en Cuba,** *I spoke (did speak, would speak,* or *used to speak) Spanish every day when I was in Cuba.*

b. In Spanish the perfect indicative is sometimes used instead of the preterite to express an act that occurred recently: **ayer he matado un lobo,** *I killed a wolf yesterday;* **ha partido anteayer,** *he left day before yesterday;* **he creído que usted era francés,** *I thought that you were French.* This construction is not so common in Spanish America as it is in Spain.

63. Personal Pronouns. — Those governed by a preposition are the same in form as the subject pronouns, with the exception of **mí, ti,** and **sí; para él** (**ella**), *for him* (*her*); **para nosotros** (**–as**), *for us;* **para vosotros** (**–as**), *for you* (fam. pl.); **para usted**(**es**), *for you;* **para ellos** (**–as**), *for them;* but **para mí** (**ti**), *for me* (*you,* fam.); **para sí,** *for himself, herself, yourself, themselves, yourselves.* See § 133.

EXERCISES

A. 1. Ayer recibí una carta de mi amigo Pedro Arenas. Está ahora en Méjico. El mes pasado estaba en Cuba. No me escribió de Cuba. Dice en su carta que estaba muy ocupado. Cuando estaba allí llovía mucho. Pero viajó por todas las provincias. Visitó a Santiago, la Habana y otras ciudades de la isla.

2. Pedro estudiaba en nuestro colegio. Era (*He was*) muy inteligente. Cuando terminó sus estudios empezó a trabajar en una fábrica. Allí trabajó un año. En este corto tiempo aprendió mucho. Ahora es agente de la compañía y viaja por los países hispanoamericanos. Habla bien el español. Estudió este idioma mucho en el colegio.

3. Cuando estaba aquí tenía dos hermosos perros. Uno era muy grande. Ladraba mucho. Pero como dice el refrán, perro que ladra no muerde. El otro era pequeño y no ladraba mucho. Un día mordió a un niño. Entonces Pedro lo vendió a su primo.

4. Carlos, ¿ va a llover? — Creo que no, pero llovió mucho ayer. — Dígale [1] a Juan que empieza ahora la lección. — Juan, el profesor dice que empieza ahora la lección. — Está bien. Dígale al profesor que voy en un momento. — Señor profesor, yo no sé por qué no viene Juan. Me dice que viene en un momento. — Está bien. Siéntese usted. No se siente en ese banco cerca de Pedro. Siéntese aquí delante de mí. — Señor profesor, traigo para usted algunas rosas que cogí en nuestro jardín. — Muchas gracias, María. Póngalas en ese florero que está sobre la mesa. Ahora vamos a empezar la lección.

B. ¿ Quién le escribió a usted una carta? ¿ Dónde está Pedro Arenas? ¿ Dónde estaba el mes pasado? ¿ Qué le dice en la carta? ¿ Dónde llovía? ¿ Por dónde viajó Pedro?

[1] Frequently, one uses in Spanish the equivalent of 'tell to him to John,' instead of 'tell John.' See § 139.

¿ Qué ciudades visitó? ¿ Dónde trabajaba Pedro? ¿ Qué es Pedro ahora? ¿ Por dónde viaja? ¿ Qué tenía cuando estaba aquí? ¿ A quién mordió el perro de Pedro? ¿ Cuál de los perros vendió Pedro? ¿ Tiene usted un perro?

C. 1. *Continue:* Yo terminé mis estudios. Yo le escribí una carta. Yo le enseñaba el español. Yo lo sentía mucho. Tiene una rosa para mí (para ti, etc.). Juan se sentó cerca de mí.

2. *Change verb forms to the imperfect:* Tengo (tenía) algunas rosas para ti. Él compra las rosas aquí. Pablo la quiere mucho. Le escribe todos los días. ¿ Dónde trabajan ellos? ¿ A quién buscan ustedes? Estamos cansados. Tenemos mucha hambre.

3. *Change verb forms to preterite:* Me escribe una carta. ¿ Vende usted la casa? Yo gano mucho dinero. Lo gasto todo. Compramos muchos libros. Los vendemos todos. Ellos nos visitan. El perro ladra. No llueve. Empieza la lección. Los perros no muerden.

D. 1. Last year I traveled through Cuba and Mexico. 2. When I lived in Cuba, I used-to-visit my friends every day. 3. I would-speak Spanish with them. 4. I wished to learn to speak Spanish well (to speak well the Spanish). 5. One of my friends, John Ávila, had (**tenía**) a shop (store). 6. Another (**Otro**) friend, Charles Mora, was the agent of an American company. 7. Another, Peter Rojas, had a factory. 8. I liked (*use* **gustar**) these men [very] much and they liked me (**me querían a mí**). 9. They were very attractive (**simpáticos**). 10. Peter was intelligent. 11. He spoke English and Spanish well. 12. He lived one year in the United States. 13. He studied in an academy, and also in a factory. 14. In the factory he did not learn a great deal. 15. Then he returned to his country. 16. Now he is making a great deal of money.

17. John took (*use* **llevar**) me yesterday to his uncle's house. 18. The house is large and comfortable. 19. When we entered a dog barked. 20. We weren't afraid. 21. The proverb says [a] barking dog (= dog that barks) does not bite. 22. But this dog bit me. 23. It did not bite John. 24. I do not know why it did

MÉXICO Y LA AMÉRICA CENTRAL
ESCALA DE KILÓMETROS
0 100 300 500 1000
ESCALA DE MILLAS INGLESAS
0 100 200 400 600
ESTADOS MEXICANOS
1. Baja California (Terr.)
2. Sonora
3. Chihuahua
4. Coahuila
5. Nuevo León
6. Tamaulipas
7. Sinaloa
8. Durango
9. Tepic (Terr.)
10. Zacatecas
11. Aguas Calientes
12. San Luis Potosí
13. Jalisco
14. Guanajuato
15. Querétaro
16. Hidalgo
17. Colima
18. Michoacán
19. México
20. Distrito Federal
21. Tlaxcala
22. Guerrero
23. Morelos
24. Puebla
25. Veracruz
26. Oajaca
27. Chiapas
28. Tabasco
29. Campeche
30. Yucatán
31. Quintana Roo (Terr.)
ESTADOS UNIDOS
MÉXICO
GOLFO DE MÉXICO
MAR CARIBE
OCÉANO ATLÁNTICO
OCÉANO PACÍFICO
CUBA
AMÉRICA CENTRAL
Longitud Oeste de Greenwich
Canal de Panamá
Canal de Yucatán
Golfo de Honduras
Golfo de Tehuantepec
Bahía de Campeche
Bahía de Fonseca
Lago de Nicaragua
Río Grande
Río Bravo
Río Balsas
Río Usumacinta
Río Motagua
Río Chagres
Río Tuira
Río Atrato
Río Magdalena
Río Orinoco
Río Amazonas
Río Paraguay
Río Paraná
Río Uruguay
Río Negro
Río Colorado
Río Salado
Río Desaguadero
Río Pilcomayo
Río Bermejo
Río Pilcomayo
Río Iguazú
Río Tocantins
Río Xingú
Río Tapajós
Río Madeira
Río Purus
Río Ucayali
Río Huallaga
Río Marañón
Río Napo
Río Putumayo
Río Caquetá
Río Negro
Río Vaupés
Río Guaviare
Río Meta
Río Arauca
Río Apure
Río Caroní
Río Paragua
Río Branco
Río Negro
Río Trombetas
Río Tapajós
Río Xingú
Río Tocantins
Río Araguaia
Río Grande
Río São Francisco
Río Paraíba
Río Doce
Río Jequitinhonha
Río Pardo
Río Mucuri
Río Itapemirim
Río Paraíba do Sul
Río Ribeira
Río Tietê
Río Paraná
Río Paranapanema
Río Iguaçu

not bite him. 25. John's uncle died last year. He was (**Era**) very rich. 26. He had a factory and two shops. 27. He bought and sold many things (**artículos**). 28. The house in which he lived is very large. 29. It has a fine (**buena**) library on the ground floor. 30. Have you a letter for me? 31. — No, today I haven't any letter for you. 32. — I am very sorry (= I regret it much).

Vocabulary

el **agente** agent
allí there
cerca *adv.*, **cerca de** *prep.*, near
la **ciudad** city, town
el **colegio** school, academy
la **compañía** company
corto, –a short
cuál which?
empezar (**ie**) (to) begin
entonces then
el **estudio** study
la **fábrica** factory
el **florero** vase (*for flowers*)
la **Habana** Havana
la **isla** island
ladrar (to) bark
llover (**ue**) (to) rain
el **momento** moment
morder (**ue**) (to) bite
octavo, –a eighth
el **país** country
pequeño, –a small
poco, –a little
la **provincia** province
recibir (to) receive
el **refrán** proverb
la **rosa** rose
terminar (to) finish
visitar (to) visit

el piso bajo *or* **los bajos** the ground floor; **creo que sí** (**no**) I think so (not); **este hombre me gusta** I like this man (*lit.*, this man pleases me)

LESSON IX

64. Irregular Verbs

(1) **Imperfect Indicative.** — Most irregular verbs form the imperfect indicative regularly, thus:

Estar (to) be: **estaba, estabas, estaba, estábamos, estabais, estaban**
Tener (to) have: **tenía, tenías, tenía, teníamos, teníais, tenían**
Decir (to) say, tell: **decía, decías, decía, decíamos, decíais, decían**
etc.

a. But the three following verbs form the imperfect indicative irregularly:

Ir (to) go: **iba, ibas, iba, íbamos, ibais, iban**
Ser (to) be: **era, eras, era, éramos, erais, eran**
Ver (to) see: **veía, veías, veía, veíamos, veíais, veían**

(2) **Preterite Indicative.** — The following verbs form the preterite indicative irregularly:

Dar (to) give: **di, diste, dió, dimos, disteis, dieron**
Ser (to) be, **Ir** (to) go } **fuí, fuiste, fué, fuimos, fuisteis, fueron** [1]
Hacer (to) do: **hice, hiciste, hizo, hicimos, hicisteis, hicieron**
Querer (to) wish: **quise, quisiste, quiso, quisimos, quisisteis, quisieron**
Venir (to) come: **vine, viniste, vino, vinimos, vinisteis, vinieron**
Andar (to) go: **anduve, anduviste, anduvo, anduvimos, anduvisteis, anduvieron**
Estar (to) be: **estuve, estuviste, estuvo, estuvimos, estuvisteis, estuvieron**
Tener (to) have: **tuve, tuviste, tuvo, tuvimos, tuvisteis, tuvieron**
Haber (to) have: **hube, hubiste, hubo, hubimos, hubisteis, hubieron**
Caber (to) be contained: **cupe, cupiste, cupo, cupimos, cupisteis, cupieron**
Saber (to) know: **supe, supiste, supo, supimos, supisteis, supieron**
Poder (to) be able: **pude, pudiste, pudo, pudimos, pudisteis, pudieron**
Poner (to) put: **puse, pusiste, puso, pusimos, pusisteis, pusieron**
Traer (to) bring: **traje, trajiste, trajo, trajimos, trajisteis, trajeron**
Decir (to) say, tell: **dije, dijiste, dijo, dijimos, dijisteis, dijeron**
–ducir [2]: **–duje, –dujiste, –dujo, –dujimos, –dujisteis, –dujeron**

65. The Pluperfect and Preterite Perfect

(1) The pluperfect tense is formed with the imperfect tense of **haber.**

Hablar

PLUPERFECT TENSE

1. **había hablado**	I had spoken, *or* had been speaking	1. **habíamos hablado**
2. **habías hablado**		2. **habíais hablado**
3. **había hablado**		3. **habían hablado**

[1] See §§ 258 and 269.

[2] Thus are inflected all verbs that end in **–ducir,** as **conducir,** *to lead, conduct;* **traducir,** *to translate.*

(2) The Preterite Perfect is formed with the preterite of **haber: hube hablado,** *I had spoken*, etc. This tense is used only after expressions meaning *as soon as*, *after*, etc. In colloquial Spanish the preterite usually replaces the preterite perfect.

Luego que hube leído (*or* **luego que leí**) **la carta, la devolví.**	As soon as I had read the letter, I returned it.

Note also the following idiom:

Llegado que hubo a la costa.	As soon as he had arrived at the coast.
Terminado que hubo su discurso.	As soon as he had finished his speech, etc.

a. **Había** also means *there was, there were,* or *there used to be;* **hubo,** *there was* or *there were;* **había** (**hubo**) **habido,** *there had been.*

66. In order to denote an act or state that continues from one period into another, the *present* and *imperfect* tenses are used in Spanish; while in English the *perfect* and *pluperfect* tenses are used. Ex.:

¿Cuánto tiempo hace que ustedes viven en Madrid?	How long have you been living in Madrid?
Hace quince años que vivimos en Madrid.	We have been living in Madrid for fifteen years.
Hacía seis meses que vivíamos en Madrid.	We had been living in Madrid for six months.
Mucho tiempo ha que vivimos en Madrid.	We have been living in Madrid for a long time.
Desde entonces vivimos en Madrid.	We have been living in Madrid since then.

Compare these sentences with the following:

Hace un mes que partieron.	It is a month since they left, *or* they left a month ago.
Hacía ocho días que habían partido.	It was a week since they had left.
Poco ha que partieron.	They left a little while ago.

a. In expressions of time **ha** is generally used as an impersonal verb instead of **hay;** but **hace** is used much oftener than **ha.** As a rule, **ha**

follows and **hace** precedes the noun (or adjective) denoting time. **Ha** is generally used in indefinite expressions of time, as **poco ha,** *a short time ago;* while **hace** is more usual in definite expressions, as **hace ocho días,** *a week ago.*

67. Idiomatic Expressions

(1) **hace calor,** it is warm.
hace mucho calor, it is very warm.
hace frío, it is cold.
hace fresco, it is cool.
hace viento, it is windy.

(2) **hay sol** (*or* **hace sol**), it is sunny; the sun is shining.
hay luna, the moon is shining.
hay neblina, it is foggy.
hay polvo, it is dusty.
hay lodo, it is muddy.

Note that these expressions have to do with the state of the weather.

68. Numerals. — Learn the Cardinal Numerals, § 192; and the Ordinal Numerals from 'first' to 'twelfth,' § 193.

EXERCISES

A. — Hacía tres meses que me hallaba en este país.[1] Estudiaba con mucho ahinco el idioma inglés porque quería aprenderlo pronto y bien. Mi profesor era norteamericano, pero había estado en la América española. Le gustaba mucho el español, pero decía que el inglés era más fácil. Yo no convenía en ello.[2] Le decía que no era más fácil. Me daba traducciones difíciles y yo cometía muchos errores. Un día, además de la lección de gramática, tuve que traducir estos dos chistes al inglés:

1. Unos jóvenes comían juntos en una fonda, y uno de ellos habló tanto de los prodigios que sabía hacer que, cansado de oírle, uno de los concurrentes le dijo:

— Mire, amigo, ya basta; tenga la bondad de contarnos ahora una cosa que no pueda (*you can*) hacer.

— ¡Ay! Eso es muy fácil — contestó el joven; — no puedo pagar la parte de la cuenta que me corresponde.

[1] The new words of this and the following lessons are given in the general vocabulary.

[2] Lit., 'it': translate *that* or *that opinion.*

2. Un caballero fué a visitar a una señora y, aunque la criada le dijo que estaba ausente, él pudo verle la cabeza [1] en un espejo que estaba opuesto a la puerta de la sala. Una hora después, el caballero se encontró con la señora en la casa de un amigo y le dijo:

— Precisamente acabo de llegar de su casa y sentí mucho no haber tenido el gusto de verla.

— Lo siento, buen amigo, pero tuve que salir muy de prisa.

— Muy de prisa sería (*it must have been*), pues se dejó usted la cabeza en el espejo.

— Es muy posible, soy tan distraída.

B. 1. ¿ Cuánto tiempo hacía que estudiaba usted el español? 2. ¿ De dónde era su profesor? 3. ¿ Por dónde había viajado él? 4. ¿ Es más fácil el español que el inglés? 5. ¿ Dónde comían los jóvenes? 6. ¿ De qué hablaba uno? 7. ¿ Qué le dijo uno de los concurrentes? 8. ¿ Qué no podía hacer el primero? 9. ¿ Adónde fué el caballero? 10. ¿ Qué le dijo la criada? 11. ¿ Qué vió el caballero en el espejo? 12. ¿ Dónde se encontró con la señora? 13. ¿ Qué le dijo a la señora? 14. ¿ Qué respondió la señora? 15. ¿ Cuál fué la contestación final de la señora?

C. 1. *Continue:* No me gusta el café (no te gusta el café, etc.). Precisamente acabo de llegar de su casa. Hace tres meses que me hallo en este país. Dije que sí. Fuí a visitar a una señora. Pude verle la cabeza en un espejo.

2. *Give the three irregular imperfect tenses of the indicative.*

3. *Give the preterite of* **contestar** *and* **estar, comer** *and* **tener, escribir** *and* **decir.**

4. *Give the first person singular of the present and of the preterite indicative of* hablar, dar, estar; aprender, volver, ser, traer, querer, tener, caber, saber, haber, poner, poder; vivir, sentir, pedir, traducir, decir, venir, ir.

[1] Lit., 'see to her the head.'

5. *Give the third person singular of the present and of the preterite indicative of the verbs in* 4.

6. *The final vowels of* **hablé, habló,** *are accented. The final vowels of* **quise, quiso,** *are not accented. Which verbs do not accent the final* **–e** *and* **–o** *of the preterite? Give the forms.*

D. 1. Can you translate this story into Spanish? 2. A lady went to call on a friend (*fem.*). 3. The servant (*fem.*) came to the door. 4. When the lady asked if her friend was at home, the servant answered (her) that she had gone out. 5. There was a mirror opposite the door of the drawing room, and in it she could (*pret.*) see her friend's head. 6. The following day the lady met her friend at the house of another friend. 7. She told her that she had gone to call on her, and was very sorry not to have had the pleasure of seeing (**ver**) her. 8. Her friend replied (to her) that she was sorry to have been absent, but she had to go out in a great hurry. 9. The lady said ironically that it must have been (= it-was-probably) in a great hurry, as she had left her (**la**) head. 10. 'The truth is' — she said — 'that I saw it in the mirror that is opposite the door of the drawing room.' 11. Her friend replied: — 'It is possible, as I am very absent-minded. 12. I leave many things when I go out in a hurry.'

13. How long have you been (*use* **hallarse**) in the United States? 14. — I have lived in this country six months. 15. — Do you like the English language? 16. — Yes, I like [it], but it is very difficult. 17. (The) Spanish is easier (= more easy) than (the) English, is it not? 18. — I think not. (The) Spanish spelling is easier, but (the) Spanish grammar is difficult. 19. In order to speak Spanish correctly, one (**uno**) must study it a-great-deal. 20. — It-is-quite (**Será**) possible, but it seems to me that the English language is more difficult. 21. — I have studied (the) English for two months, and I speak it very badly. 22. I can translate from (the) English into (the) Spanish, but I cannot translate correctly from (the) Spanish into (the) English.

LESSON X

69. Indicative: Future and Conditional [1]

Hablar

FUTURE TENSE

Singular	Plural
1. **hablar é** I shall speak, *or* shall be speaking	1. **hablar emos**
2. **hablar ás**	2. **hablar éis**
3. **hablar á**	3. **hablar án**

CONDITIONAL TENSE

Singular	Plural
1. **hablar ía** I should speak, *or* should be speaking	1. **hablar íamos**
2. **hablar ías**	2. **hablar íais**
3. **hablar ía**	3. **hablar ían**

Temer

FUTURE TENSE

1. **temer é** I shall fear, *or* shall be fearing	1. **temer emos**
2. **temer ás**	2. **temer éis**
3. **temer á**	3. **temer án**

CONDITIONAL TENSE

1. **temer ía** I should fear, *or* should be fearing	1. **temer íamos**
2. **temer ías**	2. **temer íais**
3. **temer ía**	3. **temer ían**

Vivir

FUTURE TENSE

1. **vivir é** I shall live, *or* shall be living	1. **vivir emos**
2. **vivir ás**	2. **vivir éis**
3. **vivir á**	3. **vivir án**

CONDITIONAL TENSE

1. **vivir ía** I should live, *or* should be living	1. **vivir íamos**
2. **vivir ías**	2. **vivir íais**
3. **vivir ía**	3. **vivir ían**

[1] The Spanish indicative future tense is formed by postfixing to the infinitive the indicative present tense of **haber**, the conditional by postfixing the imperfect tense.

hablar(h)é	**hablar(h)emos**	**hablar(hab)ía**	**hablar(hab)íamos**
hablar(h)ás	**hablar(hab)éis**	**hablar(hab)ías**	**hablar(hab)íais**
hablar(h)á	**hablar(h)án**	**hablar(hab)ía**	**hablar(hab)ían**

Note the disappearance of **hab-**

All radical-changing verbs form the future indicative and the conditional tenses regularly.

70. Irregular Verbs. — Most irregular verbs form the future indicative and the conditional tenses regularly. Thus:

Estar (to) be: **estaré, estarás, estará, estaremos, estaréis, estarán**
estaría, estarías, estaría, estaríamos, estaríais, estarían
Ser (to) be: **seré, serás, será, seremos, seréis, serán**
sería, serías, sería, seríamos, seríais, serían
Ir (to) go: **iré, irás, irá, iremos, iréis, irán**
iría, irías, iría, iríamos, iríais, irían
Etc.

a. But there are twelve verbs that modify the form of the infinitive (by dropping the **e** or **i** of the infinitive ending, and by adding **d** after **l** or **n**, or by using a shorter form of the infinitive now obsolete) in the future indicative and conditional tenses.

Caber (to) be contained: **cabré, cabrás,** etc.; **cabría, cabrías,** etc.
Haber (to) have: **habré, habrás,** etc.; **habría, habrías,** etc.
Saber (to) know: **sabré, sabrás,** etc.; **sabría, sabrías,** etc.
Poder (to) be able: **podré, podrás,** etc.; **podría, podrías,** etc.
Querer (to) wish: **querré, querrás,** etc.; **querría, querrías,** etc.
Salir (to) go out: **saldré, saldrás,** etc.; **saldría, saldrías,** etc.
Valer (to) be worth: **valdré, valdrás,** etc.; **valdría, valdrías,** etc.
Poner (to) put: **pondré, pondrás,** etc.; **pondría, pondrías,** etc.
Tener (to) have: **tendré, tendrás,** etc.; **tendría, tendrías,** etc.
Venir (to) come: **vendré, vendrás,** etc.; **vendría, vendrías,** etc.
Decir (to) say, tell: **diré, dirás,** etc.; **diría, dirías,** etc.
Hacer (to) do: **haré, harás,** etc.; **haría, harías,** etc.

71. Indicative: Future Perfect

Hablar

I shall have spoken, or *I shall have been speaking*

Singular	Plural
1. **habré hablado**	1. **habremos hablado**
2. **habrás hablado**	2. **habréis hablado**
3. **habrá hablado**	3. **habrán hablado**

a. **Habrá** also means, *there will be;* **habrá habido,** *there will have been.*

72. *Will* and *Should.* — (1) The English auxiliary verb *will* may denote *future time*, as in *he will go tomorrow*, or it may express *willingness*, as in *I will go if you wish.* When *will* means *to be willing*, it is generally to be translated into Spanish by the proper form of **querer:**

¿ Quiere usted venir con nosotros?	Will you come with us?
Compraré la casa si quiere venderla.	I shall buy the house if you will sell it.

(2) The auxiliary verb *should* may be merely conditional, as in *I should speak if I knew what to say*, or it may mean *ought to*, as in *I realize that I should* (= *ought to*) *speak, but I do not wish to do so.* When *should* means *ought to*, it is usually expressed in Spanish by the proper form of **deber:**

Yo debo (debiera: § 96) hablar.	I should, *or* ought to speak.

73. The future may be used instead of the present, and the conditional instead of the imperfect, to denote probability or conjecture.

¿ Qué hora es? — Serán las once.	What time is it? It is probably (about) eleven o'clock.
¿ Qué hora era? — Serían las doce.	What time was it? It was probably (about) twelve o'clock.

a. Similarly the future perfect may be used instead of the perfect:

¿ Quién ha abierto la puerta? — Habrá sido José.	Who opened the door? It was probably Joseph.

74. Hours of the Day

es temprano, it is early.
es tarde, it is late.
es la una,[1] it is one o'clock.
son las dos, it is two o'clock.
son las tres y media, it is half-past three.
son las cuatro y cuarto, it is a quarter-past four.
son las cinco menos cuarto, it is a quarter to five.
a la una, at one o'clock.
a las dos, at two o'clock.

[1] After **la una** and **media, hora** is understood; after **las dos, las tres,** etc., **horas** is understood. **Cuarto,** as used here, is a noun.

a las seis y diez (minutos), at ten minutes past six.
a las siete de la mañana, at seven o'clock in the morning.
a las dos de la tarde, at two o'clock in the afternoon.
a las once de la noche, at eleven o'clock at night.
¿ qué hora es? what time is it?
en ocho días, in a week.
hace quince días, two weeks (a fortnight) ago.
el primero de enero, the first of January.
el dos (tres, cuatro, etc.) de febrero, the second (third, fourth, etc.) of February.

Note that, except the first, the cardinal numbers are used to denote the days of the month.

EXERCISES

A. 1. ¿ A qué hora llegará el tren? — Tomás dijo que llegaría a las tres y diez y ya son las cuatro menos cuarto. Parece que ya viene. La gente mira hacia el andén. — Me alegro. Estoy cansado. Hace ya casi una hora que estamos aquí. — ¿ No es Tomás aquel que trae un periódico en la mano? — Él mismo. ¡ Tomás! — ¡ Hola, amigos! ¿ Qué tal? ¿ Cansados de esperar (*waiting*)? Tuvimos un pequeño accidente al pasar (*on passing*) debajo de un puente. — ¿ Qué fué? Cuenta (*tell us*). — Después de almorzar (*eating lunch*) volvía yo a mi asiento cuando el tren se paró (*stopped*) de repente. El vendedor de periódicos y dulces dijo que había un obstáculo en la vía. Pero no era eso. La locomotora estaba inservible. El maquinista me lo explicó con muchos detalles, pero no comprendí. Hacía veinte o veinte y cinco minutos que esperábamos cuando llegó otra locomotora. — Pero ¿ y Juan? ¿ Dónde está Juan? — Él y Carlos llegarán el sábado. Irán directamente a casa de sus tíos y nosotros iremos allá a verlos.

Charlando y riendo salieron los tres amigos de la estación, y se dirigieron a la escuela. Tomás llegaba tarde, pues el curso se había inaugurado el día anterior. Tomás era gran futbolista y muy popular entre sus compañeros.

B. 1. ¿ Hacia dónde mira la gente ? ¿ Cuánto tiempo hace que estamos aquí ? ¿ Qué trae Tomás ? ¿ Qué tuvieron al pasar debajo de un puente ? ¿ A dónde volvía usted después de almorzar ? ¿ Qué hizo de repente el tren ? ¿ Qué dijo el vendedor de periódicos ? ¿ Cuánto tiempo esperaban ustedes ? ¿ Quiénes llegarán el sábado ? ¿ A dónde irán directamente ? ¿ De dónde salieron los tres amigos ? ¿ A dónde se dirigieron ?

C. 1. *Continue:* Venderé la casa. Vendré mañana. Se lo diré. No lo compraré. No lo haré. Yo querría hacerlo. Dije que estaría (*both verbs*) aquí a las diez.

2. *Which verbs drop the* **e** *of* **–er** *and the* **i** *of* **–ir** *in the future and conditional? Which verbs insert* **d** *between the stem and the* **r** (*note that* **veniré** *became* **venré,** *and this became* **vendré**) *? Which verbs form these tenses on a shorter form of the infinitive now obsolete?*

3. *Give the first person singular (and later, the third person plural) of the indicative present, imperfect, preterite, future and conditional of:* hablar, contar, dar, estar, comer, perder, ser, hacer, caber, tener, valer, haber, poner, saber, querer, poder, escribir, sentir, corregir, ir, decir, venir, salir.

4. *Translate* (*for* A.M., *use* **de la mañana**; *and for* P.M., *use* **de la tarde** *or* **de la noche**). 1. We arrive at 8:45 A.M. 2. The classes begin at 9 A.M. 3. We have-lunch at 12:15. 4. At 3 P.M. we play football. 5. At 6:30 we dine (**comemos**). 6. At 10 P.M. we go to bed (**nos acostamos**).

5. *In Spain and in some Spanish-American countries, the time-tables of public conveyances count the hours, beginning at midnight, up to* 24. *Change the following hours to the* 24*-hour system:* Este tren llegará a la una de la tarde (. . . a las trece). Otro tren llegará de Guadalajara a las diez de la noche. El primer tren de la mañana llegará a las cinco. El último tren de la noche llegará a las once y media. Este vapor saldrá de Cádiz a las tres de la tarde. Otro llegará a las ocho y media de la noche y saldrá a las diez.

D. 1. Do you speak Spanish? 2. — I have spoken Spanish for many years. 3. — How long have you lived here? 4. — I have lived here (**aquí**) in Cádiz for ten years. 5. Don't you speak Spanish also? 6. — No, I have not learned to (**a**) speak Spanish, but I shall begin to (**a**) study it at once. 7. — I am glad. In one year you should (**debiera**) speak it well if you take lessons every day. 8. — I shall take lessons nearly every day and I shall study hard (**mucho**). 9. When did you begin to study Spanish? 10. — I began fifteen years ago, and since then I have spoken Spanish every day.

11. Thomas said (that) the train would arrive at 3 P.M., but it arrived late. 12. It was 4:54 when the train arrived. 13. The vendor of newspapers and sweets explained to me with many details that the engine (locomotive) was out of order. 14. He said that the train stopped suddenly and he thought (that) there was an obstruction on the track (line), but it wasn't that (**eso**). 15. The engineer (driver) told him that the engine was old and out of order. 16. We had waited almost two hours when the train arrived; we were tired and we were hungry. 17. The train left at 5:10 and we arrived at Salamanca at 11 P.M.

18. What time is it? 19. — It is probably nine o'clock. 20. Where is my hat? 21. — It is probably on the table. 22. I shall go and get (= go to look-for) it. 23. When will the train come (*use* **llegar**)? 24. — They told me that it would come at two (o'clock). 25. — Will Charles come (*use* **venir**) today? 26. — He will come if he can. 27. He wrote me that he would come today. 28. Shall you go to the station? 29. — I shall not be-able to go to the station as I shall be busy at that (**esa**) time (= hour). 30. — I shall tell him that you are busy and can't come. 31. — Give him my regards and tell him that I shall see him tomorrow.

LESSON XI

75. Imperative Mood

(1) Regular Verbs

Hablar

Singular	Plural
2. **habla**	2. **hablad**

Temer

2. **teme**	2. **temed**

Vivir

2. **vive**	2. **vivid**

With **habla, teme,** and **vive, tú** is understood; while **vosotros (–as)** is understood with **hablad, temed,** and **vivid.**

(2) Radical-Changing Verbs

Temblar: tiembla, temblad
Perder: pierde, perded
Contar: cuenta, contad
Volver: vuelve, volved
Sentir: siente, sentid
Pedir: pide, pedid
Dormir: duerme, dormid

76. The Imperative Mood is limited to the second person singular and plural. It is also limited to affirmative commands or entreaties. See § 78.

a. The final **–d** of the plural imperative is lost before the object-pronoun **os,** *you, yourselves* (cf. § 130): **preparaos** (for **preparad-os**), *prepare yourselves;* except in **idos,** *go away,* from **irse,** *to go away.*

77. Subjunctive: Present Tense

(1) Regular Verbs

Hablar

Singular	Plural
1. **habl e**	1. **habl emos**
2. **habl es**	2. **habl éis**
3. **habl e**	3. **habl en**

Temer

1. **tem a**	1. **tem amos**
2. **tem as**	2. **tem áis**
3. **tem a**	3. **tem an**

Vivir

Singular	Plural
1. viv a	1. viv amos
2. viv as	2. viv áis
3. viv a	3. viv an

(2) Radical-Changing Verbs

Temblar: tiemble, tiembles, tiemble, temblemos, tembléis, tiemblen
Perder: pierda, pierdas, pierda, perdamos, perdáis, pierdan
Contar: cuente, cuentes, cuente, contemos, contéis, cuenten
Volver: vuelva, vuelvas, vuelva, volvamos, volváis, vuelvan
Sentir: sienta, sientas, sienta, sintamos, sintáis, sientan
Pedir: pida, pidas, pida, pidamos, pidáis, pidan
Dormir: duerma, duermas, duerma, durmamos, durmáis, duerman

Note that the radical-changing verbs of the third conjugation change **e** to **i**, and **o** to **u**, in the first and second persons plural of the present subjunctive, even though the syllables in question are not accented.

78. The Present Subjunctive is often used in Spanish to express command or entreaty. In the third person singular and plural, it is then usually introduced by **que**.

Que él hable. Let him speak. **Que ellos hablen.** Let them speak.
Que Juan hable. Let John speak. **Hablemos.** Let us speak.

Note that the present subjunctive in these expressions is usually to be translated into English by *let* and the infinitive; but, when used with **usted** or **ustedes** (as in **hable usted**), it is translated by the English imperative.

Hable usted. Speak. **Abra usted la puerta.** Open the door.

a. In the second person, singular and plural, the present subjunctive is used to express a negative command or entreaty, while in an affirmative command or entreaty the imperative is used; thus:

Habla, *or* **Hablad.** Speak. **No hables,** *or* **No habléis.** Do not speak.

b. The final **–s** of the first person plural of the present subjunctive is omitted before the object-pronoun **nos,** *us, ourselves:* **sentémonos** (for **sentemos-nos**), *let us seat ourselves.*

79. Subjunctive: Present Perfect Tense

Hablar

Singular	Plural
1. **haya hablado**	1. **hayamos hablado**
2. **hayas hablado**	2. **hayáis hablado**
3. **haya hablado**	3. **hayan hablado**

a. **Haya,** used as an impersonal verb, means *there may be, let there be,* etc.; **haya habido,** *there may have been.*

EXERCISES

A. — Esta lección no me parece difícil.

— Yo creo que es fácil. No contiene muchas reglas y el ejercicio de escritura es corto.

— Pero ¿ te olvidas de (*about*) las formas de los verbos y de la tarea impuesta por el profesor ?

— No, no me olvido. El imperativo tiene pocas formas, aunque su uso no es sencillo. El subjuntivo se asemeja bastante al indicativo. Las formas no son difíciles. La tarea es hallar muchas formas del imperativo o subjuntivo ¿ no es verdad ?

— Sí, yo no he podido hallar muchas.

— Pues, mira. ¿ No conoces el libro de lectura titulado *Tesoro de las Escuelas ?*

— Sí, lo tengo.

— Pues, léelo. En él hay muchos ejemplos. Escucha éstos: « Doña Julia se agravó y, temiendo por su vida, llamó a sus hijos a la cabecera de su cama y, con voz débil y pausada, habló así: ‹ Ésta será la última vez que me *oigáis* (*may hear*), queridos hijos: *obedeced* a vuestro padre y a vuestros maestros y superiores; *agradeced* los buenos consejos que os *den* (*give*); *amaos* y *amad* al prójimo; *sed* honrados y seréis felices. › »

— Aquí hay otros. El padre de Faustino le dice:

« Yo también quiero premiarte, Faustino: *pídeme* lo que *quieras* (*whatever you may wish*), y te lo concederé. »

— Y la madre le dice:

« Bendito *seas* (*Bless you:* lit., '*May you be blessed*'), hijo mío. »

Así hablaban dos jóvenes estudiantes. Otro que los escuchaba, sonriéndose, dijo:

— Los dos estáis perdiendo tiempo. Esos ejemplos son difíciles. Yo he hallado una edición antigua de este texto con estas frases:

« No *tiemble* usted, no hay peligro. *Sentémonos* debajo de este árbol y *hablemos*. *Pierda* usted cuidado. *Cierre* usted la ventana, no *cierre* la puerta. *Cuenta* los lápices, no *cuentes* las plumas. No *vuelvan* ustedes antes del lunes. No *pidas* dinero a ese hombre. »

B. 1. ¿ Es difícil esta lección ? 2. ¿ Cuántas reglas de gramática contiene ? 3. ¿ Ha escrito usted los ejercicios ? 4. ¿ Cuáles son las formas del imperativo de *estudiar, empezar,*[1] *contar, aprender, perder, volver, escribir, sentir, pedir, dormir ?* . . . del subjuntivo de los mismos verbos ? 5. ¿ Cuál es la tarea para hoy ? 6. ¿ Ha podido usted hallar muchas formas del subjuntivo en esta lección ? 7. ¿ Conoce usted el libro de lectura *Tesoro de las Escuelas ?* 8. ¿ Cuántos libros de lectura tiene usted ? 9. ¿ Quién se agravó ? 10. ¿ A quién deben obedecer los niños ? 11. ¿ A quién deben amar ? 12. ¿ Qué dijo el padre de Faustino ? 13. ¿ Quiénes hablaban ? 14. ¿ Cómo son los ejemplos ? 15. ¿ Dónde halló ejemplos el otro estudiante ?

C. 1. *Substitute for the dash the correct form of the imperative or subjunctive of the verb in the sentence:* No hables alto; —— bajo. Cierra la puerta; no —— la ventana. Enciende la vela; no —— la lámpara. No apagues la vela; —— la lámpara. Temed a los traidores de la patria; no —— a los enemigos. No bebáis café; —— agua pura. No te sientes cerca de él; —— aquí.

[1] Change **z** to **c** before **e**.

2. *Repeat the sentences in* 1, *with* **usted(es)** *as subject.*

3. *Repeat them with the verbs in the first person singular of the present indicative. Then repeat in the first person singular of the preterite, and lastly in the first person singular of the future.*

D. *Use* **usted(es)** *if* **tú** *or* **vosotros, -as,** *is not specified:* 1. Study (*pl.*) the lesson for (**para**) tomorrow, and write the exercises. Learn all the rules. 2. — But, Professor Ortega (*say:* **Pero, señor profesor**), there are many rules and some are very difficult. 3. Please (**Háganos usted el favor de**) explain the rules now. 4. If you explain them, we shall-be-able to learn them quickly. 5. — Very well. The use of the imperative is simple. 6. It is used (**Se emplea** *or* **Se usa**) only in the second person, singular or plural, and in affirmative sentences. 7. For example, "buy[1] (*sing.*) the house," "buy (*pl.*) the house"; "sell[1] (*sing.*) it," "sell (*pl.*) it"; "write[1] (*sing.*) me a letter," "write (*pl.*) me a letter." 8. We can add **tú** or **vosotros, -as,** for emphasis, as (**como**) in English: "you buy[1] it" (*say:* "buy it you"), etc. 9. If the expression is negative, we cannot use the imperative. 10. In that (**ese**) case we must use forms of the subjunctive to (**para**) express a command. 11. For example, "do not buy[1] (*sing.*) the house," "do not buy (*pl.*) the house"; "do not sell[1] (*sing.*) it," "do not sell (*pl.*) it"; "do not write[1] (*sing.*) me a letter," "do not write (*pl.*) me a letter."

12. If the subject is **usted** or **ustedes,** we must always use the subjunctive. 13. For example, "buy (**usted**) the house," "do not buy the house"; "sell it," "do not sell it"; "write me a letter," "do not write me a letter." 14. The rules are simple, are they not? 15. — Yes, sir; they are simple enough when you explain them to us. 16. — Now, look-for good examples of all the rules in your reader. 17. — Professor Ortega, I have found some in a book entitled *Spanish Reader.* 18. — I know the book. Please read the sentences. 19. — "Light[1] the lamp, do not light the candle." 20. — That is a good example, but read louder and pronounce more distinctly. 21. — Yes, sir; I shall try to (**de**) do so (**lo**). 22. "Open[1] the window, but do not open the door." 23. "Do not close[1] the window, open it." 24. "Do not write[1] letters, write the exercises." 25. "Speak[1] louder (= more loud), do not speak

[1] Use the form that corresponds to **tú.**

so low." 26. — I like the examples that you have found. 27. Now repeat all the sentences that you have read, using **usted**. 28–32. *Repeat nos.* 19, 22, 23, 24, 25, *with* **usted** *and the corresponding forms of the verbs.*

LESSON XII

80. Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses

The general difference between the Spanish indicative and subjunctive moods is that the indicative states or denies a fact, while the subjunctive expresses (1) a wish, (2) doubt or uncertainty, or (3) the cause of emotion.

81. The Spanish subjunctive may be used independently to express command or entreaty (as explained in Lesson XI), but it is used much oftener in dependent clauses. There is no mood (or but few survivals of one; cf. *if I were*) in English corresponding to the Spanish subjunctive. In cases where the Spanish language requires the subjunctive in subordinate clauses, the English has generally the indicative, but sometimes the infinitive, the present participle (verbal noun in *-ing*), or the compound forms with *should*, *may*, or *might*.

82. Some of the commoner uses of the dependent subjunctive are:

(1) After expressions of *willing* or *forbidding:*

Quiero que él escriba la carta.[1]	I wish him *to write* the letter.
Prohibo que entres.[2]	I forbid your *entering*.

[1] But, **yo quiero escribir la carta,** *I wish to write the letter;* **temo no llegar a tiempo,** *I fear that I shall not arrive on time,* etc. Here the infinitive is used because the main and the dependent verbs have the same subject.

[2] One may also say **te prohibo entrar.**

(2) After expressions of *doubting* or *fearing:*

Dudo que seas feliz.	I doubt that (whether) you *will be* happy, *or* I doubt your *being* happy.
Temo que no llegue a tiempo.	I fear that he *will* not *arrive* in time.

A negative or an interrogative verb may express doubt: **no creo que seas culpable,** *I do not believe that you are guilty;* **¿ Crees que yo sea culpable ?** *Do you believe that I am guilty?*

(3) After expressions of *joy* or *sorrow:*

Siento que usted esté enfermo.	I am sorry that you *are* ill.
Me alegro de que estudies el inglés.	I am glad that you *are studying* English.

(4) After expressions of *necessity*, and after *impersonal* expressions not stressing a fact:

Es necesario que usted estudie mucho.[1]	It is necessary that you should study a great deal.
Es posible que él lo haga.	It is possible that he may do it.

Cf. **es verdad que lo hizo,** *it is true that he did it.*

(5) After certain conjunctions:

Cuando, *when*, **hasta que,** *until*, **luego que,** *as soon as*, **mientras (que),** *as long as, while*, and the like, if future time is implied; and after **antes (de) que,** *before*, whether the time be future or not.

Cuando venga a verme, le recibiré cordialmente.	When he comes to see me, I shall receive him cordially.
But:	
Cuando viene a verme, le recibo cordialmente.	When he comes to see me, I receive him cordially.
No lo venda usted antes que yo lo vea.	Do not sell it before I see it.
Lo vendió antes que yo lo viera.	He sold it before I saw it.

[1] But, **es necesario estudiar mucho,** *it is necessary to study much.* The infinitive is used here because its subject is not expressed and the obligation is a general one.

Para que, *in order that,* **de modo (manera) que,** *so as, so that,* **con tal que** or **siempre que,** *provided that,* **a menos que,** *unless,* **aunque,** *although, even if,* **dado que,** *granted that,* and the like, if the subordinate verb does not state a fact.

Mientras dure la vida.	As long as life lasts.
Para que lo creas.	In order that you may believe it.
No aprenderé esta lección aunque estudie toda la noche.	I shall not learn this lesson although I study all night.

But:

No aprendí la lección aunque estudié toda la noche.	I did not learn the lesson although I studied all night.

(6) After a relative with a negative or an indefinite antecedent:

Busco un hombre que hable español.	I am looking for a man who speaks Spanish.
No encuentro a nadie que hable español.	I do not find any one who speaks Spanish.

Note also the following:

a. The present subjunctive may denote either present or future time.

b. **Que** is rarely omitted in Spanish: **teme que no lleguemos a tiempo,** *he fears (that) we shall not arrive on time.*

But it is sometimes omitted after verbs denoting request, permission, etc.

Te suplico tengas la bondad de decírmelo.	I beg you to be kind enough to tell me.
Permita le diga que no es verdad.	Let me tell you that it is not so.

83. Idiomatic Expressions

por malo que sea, however bad he may be.
sea lo que sea, whatever it may be.
por más dinero que gane, lo gasta todo, whatever money he earns, he spends it all.
dure lo que dure, however long it may last.

EXERCISES

A. — No olvidaré nunca mi visita a la fábrica de alambre. Fuimos todos los de la clase con el profesor. Vimos primero los grandes hornos donde funden el metal. Tuvimos que usar espejuelos azules para protegernos la vista. Luego pasamos a un extenso cobertizo. Aquí los lingotes que salen de los moldes son reducidos a barras pequeñas. Estas barras pasan luego por canales. De estos canales sale el alambre. En varios edificios hay máquinas para convertir el alambre en diferentes objetos.

Al pasar por la oficina de uno de los talleres pude oír esta conversación entre el director y uno de los empleados.

— ¿ Crees tú que Juan venga al taller hoy ?

— No, me han dicho que no está bien todavía.

— Es lástima. Yo siento mucho que esté enfermo. Oye, escríbele una carta diciéndole que se cuide, que no venga hasta que se restablezca [1] completamente. Buscaré un hombre que haga su trabájo mientras él esté enfermo. Dile también que es posible que yo vaya a verle uno de estos días.

— Usted irá a ver a la sana, no al enfermo. ¡ Cuidado !

— Déjate de chistes. Ya sabes que la hermana de Juan tiene novio.

— Ah, pero ¿ no sabe usted lo que hay ?

— No, ni quiero saberlo.

— De todas maneras voy a contárselo. Los padres de Isabel quieren que se case con Tomás, pero yo dudo que ella le quiera mucho. Los padres insisten porque Tomás gana bastante dinero y es buen muchacho. Juan me ha dicho que Isabel no se casará con Tomás por bueno que sea y por más dinero que gane.

— Ah ¿ sí ? ¿ Es verdad eso ?

—¿ Y lo duda usted ? ¿ No se ha fijado usted en que Isabel y Tomás no salen juntos tanto ahora ?

[1] Pres. subj. of **restablecerse.**

— Mira . . . no escribas la carta. Yo hablaré con Juan hoy mismo. Es preciso que se cuide mucho.

— ¡ Ajá ! ¿ Qué le decía yo ?

— Mira, vete [1] a tu trabajo y no me molestes más. Te prohibo hablar de Juan.

— Pero ¡ si [2] yo no hablaba de Juan !

— No importa. Vete a tu trabajo.

B. 1. ¿ Ha visitado usted una fábrica de alambre ? 2. ¿ En qué funden el metal ? 3. ¿ Para qué se usan los espejuelos azules ? 4. ¿ Quién está enfermo ? 5. ¿ Quién hará su trabajo ? 6. ¿ Quién quiere ir a ver a Juan ? 7. ¿ Por qué quiere ir a ver a Juan ? 8. ¿ Cuántas hermanas tiene Juan ? 9. ¿ Qué quieren los padres de Isabel ? 10. ¿ Cuánto gana Tomás ? 11. ¿ Qué ha dicho Juan ? 12. ¿ Qué duda el director del taller ? 13. ¿ En qué no se ha fijado el director ? 14. ¿ Quién debe cuidarse ? 15. ¿ Quién molesta al director ?

C. 1. *Substitute for the dash the correct form of the verb in parenthesis:* (estar) Siento que tú —— enfermo. ¿ Sientes tú que Juan —— enfermo ? (escribir) No quiero —— la carta. Prefiero que usted la ——. Hágame el favor de ——la. No, señor; dígale a Juan que la ——. (ser) ¿ Cree usted que ella —— feliz ? Sí, creo que —— feliz. (pagar) El sastre quiere que usted —— la cuenta hoy. No puedo ——la hoy ni mañana tampoco. (perder) Yo no deseo —— un momento, y deseo que tú no —— tampoco un momento. No —— (tú) el tiempo. Si —— el tiempo, vas a —— tu dinero también. (llegar) ¿ Cuándo —— el tren ? Debe —— a las ocho, y es posible que —— a tiempo. Yo dudo que —— a tiempo. No —— nunca a tiempo. (hablar y escribir) ¿ Conoce usted alguna persona que —— y —— bien el castellano ? Sí, señor; conozco a una mujer que —— y —— muy bien el castellano, y puede —— y —— el inglés también. (llevar) ¿ Quiere usted —— esta carta al

[1] Imperative of **irse.** [2] Cf. **si** *exclam.* in Vocab.

correo? No, señor; no puedo ——la al correo, pero llamaré un criado y le diré que la —— al correo en seguida. ¡Está bien! No es necesario que usted la ——. Llame al criado y dígale que —— la carta al correo en seguida.

2. *Give the first person plural of the present, imperfect, preterite, future, and conditional indicative, and the present subjunctive of* comprar, temblar, contar, aprender, perder, volver, escribir, sentir, pedir, dormir.

3. *Give the third person plural of the same tenses and verbs.*

D. 1. Yesterday we went to see the wire factory. 2. — Where is the factory? I have never seen it. 3. — It is near the river, (at) five kilometers from here. 4. We went first to the office and asked-for permission to (**para**) visit the factory. 5. The superintendent accompanied us and explained everything. 6. We had to wear blue glasses when we approached (**a**) the furnaces where they melt the metal. 7. The heat was terrible. 8. The superintendent explained to-us how the metal passes through little canals and is reduced to wire. 9. He showed us the machines that change the wire into different objects. 10. When we were in one of the buildings, the superintendent stopped (**se detuvo**) to (**para**) talk with one of the employees, and we heard this conversation:

11. — John is ill, and I fear that he will not come today to the (work)shop.

12. — I am sorry that he is ill. Telephone and tell him to take care of himself and not come until he gets-well. 13. Do you know a man that can do his work while he is ill?

14. — I shall look-for a man to do his work, but I fear that John may be ill [for] a long time.

15. — I hope not. Tell him (that) it is possible that I may go to see him tonight.

16. — Be careful! You know that John's sister is very pretty. You know her, do you not?

17. — Yes, I know her, but I shall go to see John and not his sister. 18. They tell me that Isabel has a fiancé, Thomas Morales.

19. — But Isabel's father does not want her to marry Thomas.

20. — Does Thomas make (earn) much money?

21. — Enough, and he is a good lad, but Isabel's father forbids

her marrying Thomas without regard to the money he makes (= whatever money he earns).

22. — Well, I hope she will not marry him.

23. — What was I telling you?

24. — Look [here]. Go to work and do not speak [any] more of John or (**ni**) of his sister.

25. The superintendent begged our (**nos pidió**) pardon. We thanked him (= gave him the thanks), and took leave.

LESSON XIII

84. Imperative of Irregular Verbs. — Many irregular verbs form the imperative regularly. Thus:

Dar (to) give: **da, dad** give
Estar (to) be: **está, estad** be
Saber (to) know: **sabe, sabed** know
Traer (to) bring: **trae, traed** bring
Etc.

a. The plural of the imperative is regular in all verbs, but the following verbs form the singular of the imperative irregularly:

Huir[1] (to) flee: **huye, huid** flee
Oír (to) hear: **oye, oíd** hear
Decir (to) say, tell: **di, decid** say, tell
Ir (to) go: **ve, id** go
Hacer (to) do: **haz, haced** do
Poner (to) put: **pon, poned** put
Tener (to) have: **ten, tened** have
Venir (to) come: **ven, venid** come
Salir (to) go out: **sal, salid** go out

85. Present Subjunctive of Irregular Verbs. — The stem of the present subjunctive of all verbs except four is the same as that of the first person singular of the present indicative.

Conocer[2]: **conozco**; – **conozca, conozcas, conozca, conozcamos, conozcáis, conozcan**

[1] And thus, all verbs in **–uir**, such as **construir, destruir**, etc.
[2] And thus, most verbs ending in vowel plus **–cer** or **–cir** (see § 242).

Huir (to) flee: **huyo; – huya, huyas, huya, huyamos, huyáis, huyan**
Hacer (to) do: **hago; – haga, hagas, haga, hagamos, hagáis, hagan**
Poner (to) put: **pongo; – ponga, pongas, ponga, pongamos, pongáis, pongan**
Decir (to) say, tell: **digo; – diga, digas, diga, digamos, digáis, digan**
Venir (to) come: **vengo; – venga, vengas, venga, vengamos, vengáis, vengan**
Dar (to) give: **doy; – dé,**[1] **des, dé, demos, deis, den**
Estar (to) be: **estoy; – esté, estés, esté, estemos, estéis, estén**

And thus: **andar, asir, caber, caer, oír, poder, querer, salir, tener, traducir, traer, valer, ver** (see § 51).

a. The four verbs that are the exceptions to this rule are **ser, ir, haber, saber.** Note that the present indicative, first person singular, of these verbs, and of **dar** and **estar,** does not end in **–o.**

Ser (to) be: **soy; – sea, seas, sea, seamos, seáis, sean**
Ir (to) go: **voy; – vaya, vayas, vaya, vayamos,**[2] **vayáis, vayan**
Haber (to) have: **he; – haya, hayas, haya, hayamos, hayáis, hayan**
Saber (to) know: **sé; – sepa, sepas, sepa, sepamos, sepáis, sepan**

b. The present perfect subjunctive is formed as follows:

Singular	Plural
1. **haya hablado**	1. **hayamos hablado**
2. **hayas hablado**	2. **hayáis hablado**
3. **haya hablado**	3. **hayan hablado**

86. Orthographic Variations. — According to the Spanish system of orthography, it is sometimes necessary to change the spelling of the stem of an inflected word, to show that the consonant sound at the end of the stem does not ordinarily change.

(1) The rules for the more common changes are:

To express the sound of:	k	"hard" g	gw	jota	zeta
Before **–a** or **–o,** or final, write:	c	g	gu	j	z
Before **–e** or **–i,** write:	qu	gu	gü	g	c

[1] The accent distinguishes this **dé** from the preposition **de,** *of.*

[2] In commands, **vamos,** *let us go,* is used instead of **vayamos: vamos a casa,** *let us go home;* **vamos a trabajar,** *let us go to work.*

Sacar: saco I take out; **saqué** I took out; **saque usted** take out
Llegar: llego I arrive; **llegué** I arrived; **llegue usted** arrive
Coger: cojo I catch; **coges** you catch; **coja usted** catch
Empezar: empecé I began; **empezaste** you began; **empiece usted** begin
Luz light; **luces** lights

a. But verbs in **–jar** keep the **j** throughout; **trabajar: trabajo,** *I work;* **trabajé,** *I worked.*

(2) When the stem of a verb of the second or the third conjugation ends in **a, e,** or **o,** its preterite is written as follows:

Creer (to) believe: **creí, creíste, creyó, creímos, creísteis, creyeron**

a. Note the unusual accent marks in the second person singular and the first and second persons plural, and the change of **–ió** and **–ie–** to **–yó** and **–ye–** in the third person. This is because stressed **i,** standing next to **a, e,** or **o,** requires the written accent; and **y** takes the place of unstressed **i** between vowels.

EXERCISES

A. Anoche llamamos a la puerta de los señores de Vega. Una criada abrió la puerta y nos dijo: — Pasen ustedes. — Entramos en el (*o* al) comedor. Era una habitación agradable. Tenía muchas ventanas. En las paredes había algunos cuadros. Los muebles eran de caoba. En el centro estaba la mesa. Había además un aparador, una mesita de servicio y varias sillas.

Sentada a la mesa estaba una señora. Tenía los codos en la mesa y la cabeza entre las manos. No comía. A su lado estaba de pie un hombre que parecía muy triste. La consolaba diciéndole: — ¡ No llores, no llores, esposa mía ! — Cuando la señora de Vega nos vió, levantó la cabeza, se enjugó los ojos y nos dijo cortésmente: — Pasen ustedes y siéntense. — Entonces señaló un periódico que estaba sobre la mesa. Vimos un encabezamiento que decía: « Continúa la policía indagando el paradero de dos niños. » En otro periódico hallamos lo siguiente:

« Desaparición de dos niños

Ayer no regresaron de la escuela a casa los dos niños de los señores de Vega. Al principio la señora de Vega supuso que estaban jugando con algunos compañeros. Pero luego empezó a creer que habían sido secuestrados. Los padres han recurrido a la policía, a la prensa y a los vecinos. Anoche nos decía la madre con lágrimas en los ojos: — Serían las ocho y diez cuando salieron. Alegres, como siempre, se levantaron temprano, y entraron en (*o* a) mi habitación a darme los buenos días. Se desayunaron, salieron para la escuela, y no han vuelto más. »

Cuando nos despedimos de los señores de Vega y salimos de la casa, dije a mi amigo: — Yo dudo que los niños hayan sido secuestrados. Es posible que se hayan extraviado, y que vuelvan a casa mañana. — No lo creo, — me contestó. — Los niños eran muy formales y siempre volvían a casa temprano.

B. 1. ¿ Qué había en las paredes? 2. ¿ Qué muebles había en el comedor? 3. ¿ Quién estaba sentada a la mesa? 4. ¿ Qué hacía la señora? 5. ¿ Quién estaba a su lado? 6. ¿ Qué le decía él? 7. ¿ Qué había en la mesa? 8. ¿ Qué vimos en el periódico? 9. ¿ Qué indagaba la policía? 10. ¿ Quién ha desaparecido? 11. ¿ Qué supuso la señora de Vega? 12. ¿ A quién han recurrido los padres? 13. ¿ Qué hora sería cuando los niños salieron? 14. ¿ A qué hora volvieron a la habitación? 15. ¿ Cree usted que los niños hayan sido secuestrados? 16. ¿ Cree usted que se hayan extraviado?

C. 1. *Substitute for the dash the correct form of the verb in parenthesis:* (llegar) ¿ Crees que nuestro padre —— hoy? No, creo que —— mañana. ¡ Bueno ! Me quedaré aquí hasta que —— el tren. (querer) Pida usted lo que (*what*) —— y se lo daré. (llover) Voy esta noche al teatro aunque ——,

pero creo que no va a ——. Anoche —— mucho y temo que —— esta noche también. Pero ! hombre ! ya ——. (decir) Permita usted que yo le —— la verdad. Le suplico que me —— la verdad. Si no me la ——, no le perdonaré. (hacer) Prohibe que lo —— nosotros. Pero no queremos ——lo, y no lo —— mientras dure la vida. (venir) Se lo diré todo a mi padre cuando ——. ¿ Sabe usted a qué hora ——? No, señor, pero dudo que —— antes de las diez. Yo sí creo que —— antes de esa hora.

2. *Give the first person singular — and later the third person plural — of the present indicative and the present subjunctive of the following infinitives. Use the subject pronouns, and put* **que** *before the subjunctive:* comprarlo (yo lo compro, que yo lo compre), empezarlo, sentarse, pagarlo, creerlo, no caer, entenderlo, cogerlo, ponerla aquí, valer, conocerle, verlos, traerlas, tenerlo, hacerlo, quererle, vivir aquí, no dormir allí, venir, decirlo, oírlo, huir, saberlo todo, haberlo hecho, irse, ser bueno, dárselo, estar presente.

D. 1. Do you believe that the two children of the (**señores**) de Vegas have been kidnapped? 2. — No, I believe that they merely got lost and (that) they will return home tomorrow. 3. — Perhaps. My children are well trained, and they always return home early, but my wife is afraid that they may be kidnapped some day. 4. — Have you seen the de Vegas since the disappearance of the children? 5. — Yes, I went to their house this morning and the servant (*fem.*) introduced me into (**al**) the dining room where Mr. and Mrs. (**los señores**) de Vega were eating (**tomando el**) breakfast. 6. Mrs. (**La señora**) de Vega was weeping and her husband was trying to console her. 7. When they saw us, they said: — Come in and be-seated. 8. We are glad that you have come to see us. — 9. Then Mr. de Vega told us that yesterday the children arose early as always, dressed, ate breakfast, and left for school at half-past eight. But they have not returned yet. 10. What a pity!

11. Do you wish to sell the automobile (motor car)? 12. — It is possible that I may sell it tomorrow. 13. — Do not sell it before I

come. I wish to be present when you sell it. 14. — Even if I sell it, I doubt that you can buy it, but I shall wait until you come. 15. As soon as you arrive, I shall sell it if there is any one who wishes to buy it. I am sorry that you can not buy it now. 16. — I haven't enough money to buy it today, but as the proverb says, there is no evil that lasts a hundred years, and I hope to get (**conseguir**) the money tomorrow.

LESSON XIV

Subjunctive: Imperfect and Future Tenses

87. Imperfect Subjunctive of Regular Verbs

Hablar

First Form

Singular	Plural
1. **habl ase**	1. **habl ásemos**
2. **habl ases**	2. **habl aseis**
3. **habl ase**	3. **habl asen**

Second Form

1. **habl ara**[1]	1. **habl áramos**
2. **habl aras**	2. **habl arais**
3. **habl ara**	3. **habl aran**

Temer

First Form

1. **tem iese**	1. **tem iésemos**
2. **tem ieses**	2. **tem ieseis**
3. **tem iese**	3. **tem iesen**

Second Form

1. **tem iera**	1. **tem iéramos**
2. **tem ieras**	2. **tem ierais**
3. **tem iera**	3. **tem ieran**

[1] The imperfect subjunctive in **ra** is derived from the Latin pluperfect indicative [*ama(ve)ra(m)* > *amara*], and it is sometimes still used in literary Spanish with the force of an indicative pluperfect or preterite.

Vivir

First Form

Singular	Plural
1. viv iese	1. viv iésemos
2. viv ieses	2. viv ieseis
3. viv iese	3. viv iesen

Second Form

1. viv iera	1. viv iéramos
2. viv ieras	2. viv ierais
3. viv iera	3. viv ieran

Note that the imperfect subjunctive has two forms, that in **–se** and that in **–ra.** In dependent clauses there is usually little choice between the two. In most parts of Spanish America the form in **–ra** is the more common in colloquial speech.

a. The **–ra** subjunctive is sometimes called the Conditional Subjunctive. Note that the accent remains on the same vowel throughout the two imperfect subjunctives.

88. Future (or Hypothetical) Subjunctive of Regular Verbs

Hablar

Singular	Plural
1. habl are	1. habl áremos
2. habl ares	2. habl areis
3. habl are	3. habl aren

Temer

1. tem iere	1. tem iéremos
2. tem ieres	2. tem iereis
3. tem iere	3. tem ieren

Vivir

1. viv iere	1. viv iéremos
2. viv ieres	2. viv iereis
3. viv iere	3. viv ieren

89. Imperfect and Future Subjunctive of Radical-Changing and Irregular Verbs. — The first person singular of the two imperfect tenses and the future (or hypothetical) tense of the subjunctive of all verbs, regular, radical-changing and irregular, may be formed by changing **–ron** of the third

person plural of the preterite indicative to **–se, –ra** and **–re** respectively. To this rule there are no exceptions.

Sentir (to) feel: **sintieron**
sintiese, sintieses, sintiese, sintiésemos, sintieseis, sintiesen
sintiera, sintieras, sintiera, sintiéramos, sintierais, sintieran
sintiere, sintieres, sintiere, sintiéremos, sintiereis, sintieren

Pedir (to) ask: **pidieron**
pidiese, pidieses, pidiese, pidiésemos, pidieseis, pidiesen
pidiera, pidieras, pidiera, pidiéramos, pidierais, pidieran
pidiere, pidieres, pidiere, pidiéremos, pidiereis, pidieren

Estar (to) be: **estuvieron**
estuviese, estuvieses, estuviese, estuviésemos, estuvieseis, estuviesen
estuviera, estuvieras, estuviera, estuviéramos, estuvierais, estuvieran
estuviere, estuvieres, estuviere, estuviéremos, estuviereis, estuvieren

Ser (to) be: **fueron**
fuese, fueses, fuese, fuésemos, fueseis, fuesen
fuera, fueras, fuera, fuéramos, fuerais, fueran
fuere, fueres, fuere, fuéremos, fuereis, fueren

Haber (to) have: **hubieron**
hubiese, etc.; **hubiera,** etc.; **hubiere,** etc.

Tener (to) have: **tuvieron**
tuviese, etc.; **tuviera,** etc.; **tuviere,** etc.

Querer (to) wish: **quisieron**
quisiese, etc.; **quisiera,** etc.; **quisiere,** etc.

Decir (to) say, tell: **dijeron**
dijese, etc.; **dijera,** etc.; **dijere,** etc.

Huir (to) flee: **huyeron**
huyese, etc.; **huyera,** etc.; **huyere,** etc.

Etc.

90. Use of the Imperfect Subjunctive. — A present or future tense in the main clause is usually followed by the present subjunctive, and a past tense or the conditional by the imperfect:

Deseo que él escriba la carta.	I wish him *to write* the letter.
Desearé que él escriba la carta.	I shall wish him *to write* the letter.
Deseaba que él escribiese, *or* **escribiera, la carta.**	I wished (was wishing) him *to write* the letter.
Deseé que él escribiese, *or* **escribiera, la carta.**	I wished him *to write* the letter.

Desearía que él escribiese, *or* **escribiera, la carta.**	I should wish him *to write* the letter.[1]
Temo que usted no llegue a tiempo.	I fear that you *will* not *arrive* on time.
Temeré que usted no llegue a tiempo.	I shall fear that you *will* not *arrive* on time.
Temía que usted no llegase, *or* **llegara, a tiempo.**	I feared (was fearing) that you *would* not *arrive* on time.
Temí que usted no llegase, *or* **llegara, a tiempo.**	I feared that you *would* not *arrive* on time.
Temería que usted no llegase, *or* **llegara, a tiempo.**	I should fear that you *would* not *arrive* on time.
Prohibo que entres.	I forbid your *entering*.
Prohibiré que entres.	I shall forbid your *entering*.
Prohibía que entrases, *or* **entraras.**	I forbade (was forbidding) your *entering*.
Prohibí que entrases, *or* **entraras.**	I forbade your *entering*.
Prohibiría que entrases, *or* **entraras.**	I should forbid your *entering*.

a. After a present or a future tense the imperfect subjunctive is used to denote a past action: **siento que usted no llegase,** or **llegara, a tiempo,** *I am sorry that you did not arrive on time*.

b. The perfect is followed by the present or imperfect subjunctive according to the meaning of the sentence.

El general ha mandado que los prisioneros sean fusilados.	The general has commanded that the prisoners (should) be shot.
Ayer he escrito a Juan que volviese (volviera) a casa.	Yesterday I wrote to John to return home.

91. Use of the Future (or Hypothetical) Subjunctive — The future subjunctive always denotes a condition or a present or future contingency. In the spoken Spanish of today the future subjunctive is rarely used except in proverbs, legal expressions, etc. Its place is regularly taken by the present subjunctive, or by the present indicative if used with **si**, *if*.

[1] Note **quisiera que él escribiese,** or **escribiera, la carta,** *I wish he would write the letter.*

Si tuviere (tengo) dinero, lo compraré.	If I have money, I shall buy it.
Mientras durare (dure) la vida, trabajaré.	As long as life lasts, I shall work.
Créelo si quisieres (quieres).	Believe it if you wish.
Es necesario aceptar lo que nos dieren (den).	It is necessary to accept what they give us.
Las leyes permiten que cada uno se defienda de quien quisiere (quiera) agraviarle.	The laws permit every one to defend himself against any one who may wish to injure him.

92. (1) Pluperfect Subjunctive

Hablar

First Form

Singular	Plural
1. **hubiese hablado**	1. **hubiésemos hablado**
2. **hubieses hablado**	2. **hubieseis hablado**
3. **hubiese hablado**	3. **hubiesen hablado**

Second Form

1. **hubiera hablado**	1. **hubiéramos hablado**
2. **hubieras hablado**	2. **hubierais hablado**
3. **hubiera hablado**	3. **hubieran hablado**

a. **Hubiese** and **hubiera,** used impersonally, mean *there might be,* etc.; **hubiese,** or **hubiera, habido,** *there might have been.*

(2) Future (or Hypothetical) Perfect Subjunctive

Hablar

Singular	Plural
1. **hubiere hablado**	1. **hubiéremos hablado**
2. **hubieres hablado**	2. **hubiereis hablado**
3. **hubiere hablado**	3. **hubieren hablado**

a. **Hubiere** is also used as an impersonal verb.

EXERCISES

A. 1. Cuando yo vaya a Madrid me alojaré en una casa de huéspedes. Deseo perfeccionarme en el español. Es posible hacerlo en una casa donde no haya extranjeros. En

un hotel casi siempre los hay. Por eso no hay tantas oportunidades de practicar el idioma. En un hotel, ya se sabe, el servicio es más completo. A mí, sin embargo, me parece muy mecánico. Cuando llega uno se inscribe en el registro. El cajero o contador le asigna una habitación. El « botones » le conduce al ascensor y luego a la habitación. Y para que no desmejore el servicio, es preciso repartir propinas entre los diferentes empleados. En una buena casa de huéspedes el ambiente es casi siempre de familia. Yo prefiero esto.

2. Mi amigo Diego Perales vive en un hotel. Hacía tiempo que no le veía, y temía que estuviese enfermo. Ayer cuando iba a mi oficina le encontré cerca del hotel. Con él estaba un empleado de su padre. Al principio Diego me miró fijamente, pero como si no me conociese. Esto me sorprendió. Entramos Diego y yo en el (*o* al) hotel para charlar un rato. Detrás de nosotros entró el empleado. Nos sentamos en una salita de donde podíamos ver el despacho del hotel. A los pocos minutos Diego me dijo:

— Quisiera dar un paseo en automóvil, pero Roberto no me deja solo ni un momento.

Al decir esto indicó al empleado que nos había seguido y que estaba de pie en la puerta de la salita. Me extrañó tanto esto como lo que había dicho Diego.

— Oye ¿ a qué viene ese hombre ? — le pregunté.

— Siento que te moleste, me dijo. Le diré que se marche, pero dudo que lo haga.

Diego se acercó al empleado y le dijo que se fuera de allí, que le esperase en la calle. Pero Roberto permaneció inmóvil. Entonces yo me acerqué y le pedí que nos dejara solos.

— No puedo, señor, — me dijo —. El papá de Diego quiere que le cuide. No está completamente restablecido.

— ¿ Pero Diego ha estado enfermo ? — pregunté.

— ¡ Ah ! ¿ Usted no sabe ? El mes pasado, por manejar su automóvil con mucha velocidad, chocó con otro. En el

choque recibió un golpe terrible en la cabeza. Fíjese en el chichón que tiene detrás de la oreja.

Entonces lo comprendí todo.

B. 1. ¿ Dónde está Madrid ? 2. ¿ Le gusta a usted vivir en un hotel ? 3. ¿ Quién estaba con Diego ? 4. ¿ Cómo miró Diego a su amigo ? 5. ¿ Quién entró detrás de los dos amigos ? 6. ¿ Dónde se sentaron ? 7. ¿ Qué se podía ver desde la salita ? 8. ¿ Dónde estaba el empleado ? 9. ¿ Qué le dijo Diego al empleado ? 10. ¿ Por qué no quería irse Roberto ? 11. ¿ Qué quería el papá de Diego ? 12. ¿ Cómo manejaba Diego su automóvil ? 13. ¿ Qué tenía Diego detrás de la oreja ?

C. 1. *Change the verbs from present to past time:* El tren debe llegar a las diez, y es posible que llegue a tiempo. Yo dudo que llegue a tiempo. Deseo que él escriba la carta. Y yo prohibo que la escriba. Yo no quiero escribir la carta; prefiero que él la escriba. Le aconsejo que la escriba en seguida. Quiere que paguemos la cuenta pero no podemos pagarla. Le digo que la pagaremos mañana cuando venga a casa. Temo que usted no lo haga antes que yo parta para España. Yo dudo que los niños hayan sido secuestrados. Es posible que se hayan extraviado y que vuelvan a casa mañana.

2. *Substitute for the dash the proper form of the verb in parenthesis:* (comprar) Hoy vendí el automóvil y siento muchísimo que usted no lo ——. (llegar) No pude comprarlo porque usted lo vendió antes que yo ——.[1] (vender) Le escribí a usted que no lo —— antes que yo llegara, pero lo —— ayer. (perdonar) Nos suplicó que le ——, pero nos negamos a ——le. Temía que nosotros no le ——. (fumar) Yo prohibí que tú —— tabaco ¿ no es verdad ? Sí, señor, usted prohibió que yo —— tabaco. Me gusta ——, pero no —— más. (estudiar) Nos aconsejó que —— más, y

[1] **Antes (de) que** commonly takes the subjunctive.

vamos a —— todos los días. Si —— el español, podremos ir a España. Sí, pero a mí no me gusta ——. (acompañar) ¿ Las señoras le permitieron a usted que las ——? Sí, señor, y anoche yo las —— al teatro. (perder) Nuestro padre no deseaba —— el tiempo y no deseaba que nosotros lo —— tampoco. (partir) Le pregunté si —— mañana, y me respondió que era posible que —— hoy.

D. 1. It is a pity that Diego was ill. 2. — He wasn't ill. He was driving his car very rapidly and collided with another car. 3. Have you seen the bump he has on his (**la**) forehead? 4. — Yes, I saw it, and now I understand why his father wished one of his employees to look-after Diego. 5. He feared that he was not fully recovered. 6. This morning I went to the hotel and chatted a while with Diego. 7. At first he looked-at me as if he didn't know me. 8. This surprised me, but I went-up to him and said to him: Hello, Diego! How goes it? (**¿ Qué tal?**) 9. Then he pointed at one of his father's employees who was standing by (**en**) the door. 10. He said to me in a low voice that he wished (that) the man would leave. 11. Tell him, — he said, — to go away from there and wait-for me in the street —. 12. I went up to the man and asked him to go away (*use* **salir**) and wait-for us outside, but he told me that he couldn't leave Diego until he was fully recovered. 13. I told Diego (that) I was very sorry (that) the man troubled him and I advised him to go home at once. 14. But Diego refused to do so, and when I left (= went out), Diego was seated on a sofa near the window and the man was standing by the door. 15. As soon as I reach (= arrive at) home, I shall telephone to his father. 16. I was surprised (= It surprised me) that Diego should live in a hotel. 17. He told me that he preferred a hotel to a boarding house. 18. He wasn't willing to live in his father's house. 19. I doubt that the father and the son agree [very] well. 20. Do you know Diego's father? 21. — Yes, I know him, and he is a distinguished attorney. 22. He is very fond-of Diego, but he treats him with great severity. 23. — Well (**Pues**), I am not surprised that he doesn't want to live in his father's house.

LESSON XV

Conditional Sentences

93. A present condition "contrary to fact" may be expressed in either one of the following ways:

Si tuviese, *or* **tuviera, dinero, lo compraría.**
Si tuviese, *or* **tuviera, dinero, lo comprara.**
} If I had money, I should buy it.

Note that the form in **–ra** may occur in the result clause (apodosis) as well as in the condition (protasis), while the form in **–se** occurs only in the condition, and the form in **–ría** occurs only in the result clause.

a. The condition may, of course, either precede or follow the result: **si tuviese tiempo, iría,** *if I had time, I should go,* or **iría si tuviese tiempo,** *I should go if I had time.*

b. The conjunction **si** is sometimes followed by a conditional indicative, and **si** then means *whether:* **no supe si vendría,** *I did not know whether he would come.*

94. A past condition contrary to fact may be expressed as follows:

Si hubiera (hubiese) tenido dinero, lo habría (hubiera) comprado. — If I had had money, I should have bought it.

a. In colloquial speech, the present indicative is often used in the result clause of a past condition contrary to fact: **si la culebra me hubiera picado, me mata,** *if the serpent had bitten me, it would have killed me.*

95. When the verb of the result clause (apodosis) is thrown into the subjunctive, the present and future indicative become the present subjunctive; the imperfect, preterite, and conditional indicative become the imperfect subjunctive; and the perfect and pluperfect indicative become the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive respectively.

Teme que yo gaste mucho si gano mucho. — He fears that I spend (*or* shall spend) much if I earn much.

Teme que yo gastara (gastase) mucho si ganase (ganara) mucho. — He fears that I should spend much if I earned much.

Teme que yo hubiera (hubiese) gastado mucho si hubiese (hubiera) ganado mucho.	He fears that I should have spent much if I had earned much.

Note that an indicative verb of the condition (protasis) is not attracted into the subjunctive.

96. Idiomatic Expressions

¡ojalá (que) viva mil años! oh, that he may, *or* I hope he will, live a thousand years!

¡ojalá (que) viviese, *or* viviera, mil años! oh, that he might, *or* I wish he would, live a thousand years!

quisiera estudiar el francés, I should like, *or* I should be glad, to study French.

quisiera que tú estudiases, *or* estudiaras, el francés, I should like you to, *or* I wish you would, study French.

yo debiera hacerlo, I ought to, *or* I should, do it.

¡quién supiera escribir! oh, if I (*or* if one) could only write!

97. Use of Infinitive

(1) *To* before an infinitive is either not expressed in Spanish, or it is usually expressed by **a** or **de**.

Quiero hablar con usted.	I wish to speak with you.
Espero llegar a tiempo.	I hope to arrive on time.
Aprende a escribir.	He is learning to write.
Estoy obligado a trabajar mucho.	I am obliged to work a great deal.
Trataré de hacerlo.	I shall try to do so.
Tengo vergüenza de pedirlo.	I am ashamed to ask it.

a. Many verbs (especially the "modal auxiliaries," **deber, querer,** etc.) take no preposition before a following infinitive; **a** is required after a verb of *beginning, teaching,* and *learning,* and after most verbs of motion, before a following infinitive; **de** is often used to connect a noun or adjective with a following infinitive, and is found occasionally between verbs (**tratar de ver, alegrarse de ir,** etc.).

b. But *to,* meaning *in order to,* is **para: como para vivir; no vivo para comer,** *I eat to live; I do not live to eat.*

c. The following are some of the commoner verbs that require a preposition before a following infinitive (for a full list, see § 294):

aprender (**a**) to learn (to)	**acordarse** (**de**) to remember (to)
atreverse (**a**) to dare (to)	**alegrarse** (**de**) to be glad (to)
decidirse (**a**) to decide (to)	**dejar** (**de**) to cease (to)
empezar (**a**) to begin (to)	**tratar** (**de**) to try (to)
enseñar (**a**) to teach (to)	**soñar** (**con**) to dream (of)
ir (**a**) to go (to)	**consentir** (**en**) to consent (to)
negarse (**a**) to refuse (to)	**insistir** (**en**) to insist (on)
venir (**a**) to come (to)	**pugnar** (**por**) to strive (to)

d. Note also the use of **que** in **no tengo nada que hacer,** *I haven't anything to do.*

(2) After a preposition, the English present participle [1] is to be translated usually by the Spanish infinitive.

Antes de comer.	Before eating.
Partió sin decir adiós.	He left without saying good-bye.
Estoy cansado de trabajar.	I am tired of working.
Al leer (yo) la carta.	Upon (my) reading the letter.

(3) Used as a noun, the infinitive usually takes the definite article.

El comer es indispensable.	To eat (*or* Eating) is indispensable.
El saber es útil.	Knowledge is useful.

98. Present Participle. — The present participle is invariable; that is, it may agree, without changing its form, with a masculine or feminine, a singular or plural, noun.

Hablando así las niñas . . .	The girls speaking thus . . .
Gana el pan cosiendo y bordando.	She earns her bread (by) sewing and embroidering.

a. By exception to 97 (2), **en** meaning *on* or *after* may be used with the present participle, but this is rare in modern colloquial Spanish: **en llegando,** *on (after) arriving.*

b. We have seen that **hablo** means *I speak, I do speak* (emphatic), or *I am speaking* (progressive); **hablaba** means *I was speaking* (progressive) or *I used to speak;* **hablaré** means *I shall speak* or *I shall be speak-*

[1] No attempt is here made to distinguish between the present participle and the gerund, either in English or in Spanish.

ing (progressive), etc. But progressive action may also be expressed in Spanish by **estar** and the present participle: **estoy hablando,** *I am speaking;* **estaba hablando,** *I was speaking;* **estaré hablando,** *I shall be speaking,* etc. The progressive form with **estar,** however, is used less often, and is more emphatic, than the English progressive form with *be.* It is rarely used with the present participles of **ser, estar, ir, venir,** and many other verbs. Instead of **estar,** the verbs **ir, venir, andar** are sometimes used to form a periphrastic progressive tense: **va obscureciendo,** *it is growing dark.*

99. The present participles of most radical-changing and irregular verbs are regular, but the following are irregular:

sentir: sintiendo [1]	**traer: trayendo** [2]
pedir: pidiendo [1]	**decir: diciendo**
dormir: durmiendo [1]	**ir: yendo**
huir: huyendo [2]	**poder: pudiendo**
oír: oyendo [2]	**venir: viniendo**

100. Past Participles used as adjectives are inflected like adjectives.

Mi amada patria.	My beloved country.
Las cartas están escritas.	The letters are written.

When used to form the perfect tenses, past participles are invariable.

Mi madre ha venido.	My mother has come.
Las manzanas que he comprado son buenas.	The apples that I have bought are good.

101. Past Participles. — (1) The following otherwise regular verbs have irregular past participles:

abrir (to) open: **abierto**	**imprimir** (to) print: **impreso**
cubrir (to) cover: **cubierto**	**prender** (to) arrest: **preso,**[3] **prendido**
escribir (to) write: **escrito**	**romper** (to) break: **roto** [3]

[1] The present participles of all radical-changing verbs of the third conjugation are formed like these.

[2] The irregularity here is merely orthographic, as **–iendo** preceded by a vowel regularly becomes **–yendo,** even in regular verbs. Note **creer, creyendo; leer, leyendo;** etc.

[3] In an intransitive sense, **rompido** is used. **Preso** and **roto** may be used as adjectives.

(2) The radical-changing verbs **solver, volver,** and their derivatives, and **morir,** have irregular past participles:

solver (to) loosen: **suelto** **volver** (to) return: **vuelto**
resolver (to) resolve: **resuelto** **revolver** (to) revolve: **revuelto**
morir (to) die: **muerto**

a. **Muerto,** used actively with **haber** or passively with **ser,** and referring to a person, may mean *killed:* **un ladrón le ha muerto,** *a thief has killed him,* **fué muerto por un ladrón,** *he was killed by a thief;* but, **ha muerto,** *he has died,* **está muerto,** *he is dead.*

(3) The past participles of most irregular verbs are regular, but the following are irregular:

decir: dicho **poner: puesto**
hacer: hecho **ver: visto**

(4) When the stem of a verb of the second or the third conjugation ends in a vowel, the **i** of **-ido** requires the accent mark:

caer: caído **oír: oído**
leer: leído **huir: huído**

EXERCISES

A. Entré en la salita para esperar a Rosa. Al principio reinaba un profundo silencio, pero luego me extrañó oír un murmullo que parecía salir de la habitación inmediata. En efecto pude oír: « ¡ Señor Rector, señor Rector ! » Y otras veces: « ¡ Que[1] me voy a morir ! » Me asusté e iba a alejarme de allí para enterar a mi amigo, el cajero del hotel, de lo que ocurría, cuando oí claramente dos voces. Ésta es la conversación que tuvo lugar.

— ¡ Qué triste estoy !

— « ¡ Qué triste estoy sin ti ! » Eso es de Campoamor.

— No, es mío. Me veo en un apuro terrible. Tengo que recitar esta noche su poesía famosa: « ¡ Quién supiera escribir ! »

[1] This introductory **que** may be disregarded if the sentence is translated.

— « Una congoja al empezar me viene . . . » ¿ No sabes?

— De tu congoja, nada. Y si supiera la poesía de Campoamor, no me vería en este apuro.

— Pues, debieras aprenderla. Hay tiempo. « Escribidme una carta, señor Cura. » Así empieza.

— Déjate de tonterías. Estoy haciendo todo lo posible por aprenderla. Yo sé como empieza, pero no como acaba. Y es verdad que tengo tiempo, pero no el libro. Se lo presté a María, y no me lo ha devuelto.

— Aquí entra aquello: « ¿ Qué es sin ti el mundo? Un valle de amargura. »

— Si tuviera dinero compraría otro ejemplar.

— No lo compres. Yo iba a prestarle mi ejemplar a mi primo; pero no se lo prestaré; te lo prestaré a ti.[1] Después de aprender la poesía, quisiera que me devolvieras el libro.

— No te lo devolveré antes de aprender toda la poesía. Pero ¿ dices que tu primo ha venido?

— Sí, vino ayer. No le conoces ¿ verdad?

— No, preséntame a él lo más pronto posible. Yo quisiera conocerle.

— Sí, en cuanto vuelva. Yo quisiera que tú le conocieras.

— Ojalá sea pronto.

— ¿ Sabes que su padre fué muerto por un ladrón?

— No sabía que su padre hubiera muerto.

— Sí, un ladrón le mató el año pasado. Mi tío era amado de todos.

B. ¿ Dónde reinaba un silencio profundo? ¿ De dónde parecía salir el murmullo? ¿ Qué decían en la otra habitación? ¿ Cuántas personas conversaban? ¿ Por quién fué muerto el tío del joven? ¿ Cuándo le mató? ¿ Quién es Campoamor? ¿ Ha leído usted la poesía, *¡ Quién supiera escribir !* ¿ Cómo empieza la poesía? ¿ Sabe usted alguna poesía española? ¿ Compraría usted un ejemplar de las

[1] Note, for emphasis and clarity, the double construction **te . . . a ti,** etc.

obras de Campoamor si tuviese dinero? ¿A quién se lo prestaría? ¿Me lo prestaría usted a mí? ¿Cuántos primos tiene usted? ¿No quiere usted presentarme a ellos?

C. 1. *Substitute for the dash the proper form of the verb in parenthesis:* (hablar) Las niñas están —— con su madre. Yo quisiera —— con ellas, y quisiera que usted —— con ellas también. Pero yo —— con ellas esta tarde y —— con ellas otra vez mañana. (poder) Yo lo haría si ——, pero no ——. (comprar) Yo quisiera ——lo pero no puedo. Si tuviera dinero, lo ——. Quisiera que tú lo ——. Pero, hombre, no quiero ——lo. No lo —— si pudiera. (escribir) ¿Está —— la carta? Sí, señor; fué —— por mi hermano, o al menos me dijo que la ——. Ojalá esté ——, pues es importante. Es preciso que nosotros le —— al señor González cada mes. Pero yo estoy cansado de —— tantas cartas. (gustar) Si me casase con usted sería necesario que usted me ——, y la verdad es que usted no me ——. Siento muchísimo que no le ——, pero no es mía la culpa. (ganar) ¿Juan ha —— mucho dinero? Yo no creo que —— mucho, pero si —— un millón lo gastaría en seguida. Yo soy diferente. Si —— mucho, gasto poco. (comer) Temo que usted —— demasiado. No, señor; yo —— muy poco, y no se olvide que el —— es indispensable. Sí, pero es necesario —— para vivir y no vivir para ——. Quisiera que usted —— menos. Si yo no tuviera buen apetito, —— menos. Sería provechoso si pasara dos o tres días sin —— nada. (decir) Cuando las señoritas Calles partieron ¿le —— a Vd. adiós? No, partieron sin ——me adiós. Me extrañó mucho que no me —— nada, pues somos buenas amigas.

D. 1. Today I entered the station to buy a ticket. 2. I was about to (going to) leave when I heard a countryman exclaim (= who was exclaiming): "If I could only read and write!" 3. I stopped to listen and I heard the following conversation.

4. — But can't (*use* **saber**) you read and write? 5. — No, sir;

I regret very much that my father did not teach me to read and write. 6. — Then, you ought to learn. If I were you, I should begin today. 7. — I should like to do so (**lo**), but I am too (**muy**) old and poor to (**para**) go to school. 8. If I had money, I should buy some books and (I should) study at home. 9. — Don't buy [any] books. I shall lend you two or three. 10. Do you know the schoolmaster? If you would go to his house, he would teach you. 11. — Yes, I know him. He is very likable, but I shouldn't like to trouble him without paying him for the lessons. 12. As soon as I return from Málaga, I shall speak with him and I shall ask him to teach me. 13. I shall try to learn to read and write. 14. But before beginning I shall ask (*use* **preguntar**) him how much he will charge me. 15. This (**Esto**) would not be necessary if I were rich, but I am very poor. 16. — I hope you will learn soon. 17. If you knew [how] to write, you could write to your daughter who is in Mexico. 18. — How sad I am without her! 19. I hope she will return soon to Spain. 20. Her husband was killed by a motor car that collided with the one that (**con el que**) he was driving. 21. — That (**Eso**) is terrible! I didn't know that the poor man had died. 22. — Yes, he died six months ago.

23. I could not wait [any] longer (**más**) and I left the station. 24. But not without saying to (**para**) myself: I am not surprised that the poor countryman is sad. 25. He cannot read or (**ni**) write, and his daughter has lost her (**el**) husband.

LESSON XVI

Indefinite Article

102. See § 26.

a. **Una** sometimes loses its **-a** before a noun beginning with stressed **a-** or **ha-**: **una alma** or **un alma.** The full form is more usual.

103. Omission of the Indefinite Article. — The indefinite article is used less often in Spanish than in English: it is usually omitted before a noun in the predicate used like an adjective to denote nationality, occupation, rank, etc.

Es americano.	He is an American.
Es sastre.	He is a tailor.
Es general.	He is a general.

It is also usually omitted,

a. Before a noun in apposition: **Sevilla, ciudad en Andalucía,** *Seville, a city in Andalusia.*

b. Before **otro,** *another;* **cierto,** *a certain;* **ciento,** *a hundred;* **mil,** *a thousand;* after **tal,** *such a,* etc.

c. Note also such expressions as the following: **dos pesos la botella,** *two dollars a bottle;* **tres veces al día** (or **por día**), *three times a day;* **mil pesos al año** (or **por año**), *a thousand dollars a* (or *per*) *year.*

Definite Article

See § 30.

104. Neuter Article *Lo.* — In addition to the forms of the definite article already given, there is another form, **lo,** which is required before the masculine form of an adjective, when the adjective is used substantively as the name of a color or as an abstract noun. This is generally called the neuter article, since it cannot be used with a masculine or a feminine noun.

Se ruborizó hasta lo blanco de los ojos.	He colored to the white of his eyes.
Lo infinito y lo eterno.	The infinite and the eternal.
Prefiero lo bueno a lo malo, lo bello a lo feo.	I prefer the good to the bad, the beautiful to the ugly.

a. Note also the following idiomatic expressions:

Sabemos lo buenas que son ellas.	We know how good they are.
Sabemos lo mucho que nos quiere.	We know how much he loves us.

105. Use of the Definite Article. — The definite article is used oftener in Spanish than in English. It is required in the following cases:

(1) Before an abstract noun, or one used in a general sense to denote all of the thing or class it names.

La ambición es peligrosa.	Ambition is dangerous.
El hierro es útil.	Iron is useful.
Ama las flores.	He loves flowers.

But if *some* or *any* is expressed or understood before the English noun, the article is omitted in Spanish.

No tiene ambición.	He hasn't (any) ambition.
Compra hierro.	He is buying (some) iron.
Compra flores.	He is buying flowers.

(2) Before a title, or a proper noun modified by a descriptive adjective or phrase.

el señor Morales	Mr. Morales	**la pequeña María**	little Mary
el general Martínez	General Martinez	**el Asia rusa**	Russian Asia
		la América del Sur	South America

But in direct address the article is omitted, and **señor, señora,** or **señorita** is usually prefixed to a title.

Buenos días, señor general Martínez.	Good day, General Martinez.

a. The article is not used before **Don** or **Doña,**[1] or **San(to), -a: Don Antonio habla,** *Anthony is speaking.*

b. The article is required before a noun used in apposition with a personal pronoun (expressed or understood): **nosotros los americanos creemos,** or **los americanos creemos,** *we Americans believe.*

(3) Before a word or expression of time that is modified.

Llegó el martes de la semana pasada.	He arrived (on) Tuesday of last week.
La semana próxima.	Next week.

(4) Before an adjective of nationality used to denote a language.

El inglés no es difícil.	English is not difficult.
¿Enseña usted el español?	Do you teach Spanish?

But immediately after **hablar,** *to speak* (~~sometimes after aprender, saber,~~ etc.), the article is usually omitted except

[1] **Don** and **Doña** are used only before the Christian or given name (**nombre de bautismo**), as **Doña María,** *Miss* (or *Mrs.*) *Mary.* One also meets with **Señora Doña María, Señora Doña María Martínez,** etc.

before **castellano.**[1] After **en**, *in*, the article is usually omitted.

Hablamos francés.	We speak French.
En alemán.	In German.

But:

¿ Hablas el castellano?	Do you speak Spanish?

(5) With some names of countries and cities. These include all geographic names modified by an adjective, such as **los Estados Unidos,**[2] *the United States*, **la Gran Bretaña,** *Great Britain,* and also some others including the following:

el Brasil Brazil	**la Argentina,** the Argentine
el Canadá Canada	**la China** China
el Ecuador Ecuador	**la Florida** Florida
el Japón Japan	**la Habana** Havana
el Paraguay Paraguay	**la Suiza** Switzerland
el Perú Peru	

(6) Usually before a noun denoting a temporary condition of the body, when the object of **tener,** *to have.*

Tengo las manos frías.	My hands are cold.
Tiene los ojos cansados.	His eyes are tired.

But:

Tiene pelo negro.	He has black hair.

(7) The masculine article sometimes modifies an infinitive or a subject clause.

El comer demasiado es malo.	It is bad to eat too much.
El que sean todas bonitas no puede ser mera casualidad.	It can not be mere chance that they are all pretty.

(8) The definite article is sometimes used instead of a possessive, as in

He perdido el sombrero.	I have lost my hat.

[1] Several languages are spoken in Spain: Castilian (**el castellano**), Catalan (**el catalán**), Galician (**el gallego**), etc.; but Castilian is the official language of Spain, and is therefore often called Spanish (**el español**), although in most Spanish American countries the name Castilian (**el castellano**) is considered more correct.

[2] Occasionally **Estados Unidos** is now used without the article, as in **en Estados Unidos,** *in the United States.*

106. Omission of the Definite Article. — The definite article is omitted in Spanish, although required in English.

(1) Usually before a noun in apposition.

Wáshington, capital de los Estados Unidos.	Washington, the capital of the United States.

a. But in a sentence such as **tengo una carta para María, la hija del Sr. Morales,** *I have a letter for Mary, the daughter of Mr. Morales,* the article is used to help specify which *Mary* is meant.

(2) Before a numeral modifying a title.

Carlos quinto	Charles the Fifth
Luis diez y seis	Louis the Sixteenth

107. Regular Verbs. — The First Conjugation. Study §§ 229–231, part of § 232, and § 233.

EXERCISES

A. 1. — ¡ Qué flores tan bonitas ! ¿ Para quién son ?

— Son para María, la hija del general Martínez. Ama las flores y en su jardín no hay muchas.

— ¿ Dónde está ella ?

— Allí está. Es la señorita que tiene pelo y ojos negros.

— Mi esposa conoce a María. No conocemos al general, pero sabemos que es chileno. Llegó el martes de la semana pasada. ¿ Habla bien el inglés ?[1]

— No; ha estudiado este idioma, pero no ha aprendido a hablarlo bien. Dice que es muy difícil. En verdad, no es más difícil que el español.

— El general viaja mucho ¿ no es verdad ?

— Sí. Ha vivido en Inglaterra y en Francia, pero no ha vivido en Alemania. Me dijo que visitó a Cuba, pero no la Habana. Ha viajado por toda la América del Sur.

[1] Here **inglés** does not immediately follow **hablar,** and hence the article is used.

— ¿ Qué idiomas hablan en la América del Sur?

— En el Brasil hablan portugués; en las otras repúblicas hablan español (el castellano).

— Yo deseo ir a la América del Sur. Mi tío tiene minas de cobre en Chile. El cobre es un mineral de mucho valor. El hierro es más útil, pero en Chile no hay mucho hierro.

2. El señor no tiene ambición. ¿ Cree Vd.[1] que la ambición sea peligrosa? — No, señor; la ambición es útil. Sin ambición uno no puede hacer nada. — ¿ Prefiere usted lo útil a lo bello? — No, señor, prefiero lo bello a lo útil. El hierro es útil. Las flores son bellas y las prefiero al hierro. — Está bien, pero nosotros los norteamericanos somos realistas y sabemos lo necesario que es el hierro. No se puede construir una casa con flores. — Es cierto lo que dice Vd., pero no me gustaría una casa sin flores. — A mí también me gustan las flores, pero si me ofrecieran una mina de cobre o un jardín con flores, aceptaría la mina.

B. 1. ¿ Quién es María? ¿ Conoce Vd. al general Martínez? ¿ Para quién son las flores? ¿ Quién tiene un jardín? ¿ Hay muchas flores en el jardín? ¿ Quién tiene ojos negros? ¿ Dónde está María? ¿ Quién llegó el martes? ¿ Qué idiomas ha estudiado Vd.? ¿ Cuál es más difícil, el inglés o el español? ¿ Quién viaja mucho? ¿ Quién tiene minas de cobre? ¿ Hay mucho hierro en Chile? ¿ Dónde hablan español? ¿ Dónde hablan inglés? ¿ Dónde hablan francés? ¿ Dónde hablan alemán? ¿ Dónde hablan portugués? ¿ Cuál prefiere Vd., lo útil o lo bello, . . . el hierro o las flores, . . . una mina de cobre o un jardín con flores?

C. 1. *Continue:* Amo lo bello. Yo enseñaba el inglés. Yo vendía flores. Me gustan las flores. Yo vivía en la Habana.

[1] The common abbreviations of **usted** and **ustedes** are **Vd.** and **Vds.** or **Ud.** and **Uds.**

2. *Supply the proper form of the definite article, if the article is needed:* Habla castellano, no habla — francés. castellano es fácil, pero alemán es difícil. Escribo cartas en español. Tengo manos frías. María ama flores. Ayer compré — flores. Conocemos a señor Morales. ¿ Enseña Vd. español? Preferiría bello a feo, bueno a malo. Soy de España; no soy de Brasil. He perdido sombrero. ambición es peligrosa. hierro es más útil que oro. señor Morales está en Inglaterra comprando hierro. señora de Morales está enferma. Vive en Canadá; no vive en Inglaterra. Amo paz y aborrezco guerra. paz y salud y no dinero constituyen felicidad de la familia. fuego prueba oro; desgracia prueba a hombre y a amigos. Tengo manos y pies fríos. En pasado (*neut.*) estudiaba poco; en presente (*neut.*) estudio mucho. bueno agrada; bello deleita. Todo mundo deja útil y busca vano.

D. 1. In (the) school I met yesterday a very pretty young woman (**joven**). 2. Her name is Mary Ortiz. 3. She is Spanish and has black hair and eyes. 4. She doesn't speak English well, but she speaks Spanish and Portuguese. 5. She arrived from Spain last week. 6. She wishes to study in this country. 7. When I went-into the classroom, she was reading a letter from her brother. 8. The letter was written in Spanish. 9. I know her brother John very well, because he used-to-work in my uncle's factory. 10. Now he is with his father. 11. They are rich. 12. They have copper mines in one of the Spanish American republics. 13. If I had a copper mine, I should be rich too. 14. I wish I had one. 15. My uncle received today a letter from John's father. 16. In the letter he says: "I should like to go to the United States if I could, but I am ill, and can not go. 17. John can not go either, because he is working in the mines. 18. But I wish his mother to go to see Mary. 19. She has not seen her for two years. 20. She wants to visit all our friends in the United States."

21. Mr. Morales says that Spanish is easier (= more easy) than English. 22. He says (that) he could learn to speak English if it were as (**tan**) easy as (**como**) Spanish. 23. He does not speak English well, but he reads it and writes it. 24. He wishes to learn English, French, and German. 25. They speak English in England, in Canada and in the United States. 26. They speak Spanish in Spain and in the Spanish American countries. 27. They speak French in France, and they speak German in Germany.

28. Do you believe that iron is more useful than gold? 29. — Iron is more useful, but gold is worth more. 30. If they offered me a pound of gold or a pound of iron, I should accept the gold. 31. I wish they would offer me a pound of gold. 32. I could buy a good (motor) car. 33. I should like to drive a new car this summer.

LESSON XVII

NOUNS

108. Gender. — Nouns ending in **–o** are usually masculine, and those ending in **–a** are usually feminine.

EXCEPTIONS. — *a.* The name of a male being is masculine, even if the noun ends in **–a.**

el cura the parish priest **el artista** the artist, *m.*

b. **Mano,** *hand,* is feminine, and **día,** *day,* is masculine.

c. **Mapa,** *map,* and some words of Greek origin ending in **–ma,** or **–ta,** like **poema,** *poem,* and **planeta,** *planet,* are masculine.[1]

109. Number. — A noun ending in a vowel adds **–s,** and a noun ending in a consonant adds **–es,** to form the plural.

EXCEPTIONS. — *a.* A noun that ends in a stressed vowel or diphthong adds **–es** to form the plural.

rubí ruby; **rubíes** rubies **rey** king; **reyes** kings

[1] Thus **el clima,** *climate;* **el idioma,** *language;* **el diploma,** *diploma;* **el programa,** *program;* **el telegrama,** *telegram;* **el tema,** *theme, written exercise;* **el cometa,** *comet* (but **la cometa,** *kite*); etc.

But **mamá,** *mamma,* **papá,** *papa,* and all nouns ending in stressed **–e,** add only **–s: papá, papás; café,** *coffee,* **cafés,** *coffees;* **pie,** *foot,* **pies,** *feet.*

b. Nouns ending in unstressed **–es** or **–is** have the same form in the plural as in the singular.

lunes Monday, Mondays **crisis** crisis, crises

c. Family names generally remain unchanged in the plural.

Martínez, los Martínez **García, los García**

110. The Plural Number. — (1) The masculine plural form of nouns may denote male and female beings.

los hermanos the brothers and sisters, *or* the brother and the sister, *or* the brothers

los padres the fathers and mothers, *or* the father and the mother (= the parents), *or* the fathers

a. The masculine plural of pronouns and adjectives may be used in the same way.

los viejos the old men and the old women, *or* the old man and the old woman, *or simply* the old men

ellos tienen miedo they are afraid (referring to men and women, or to a man and a woman, or to men alone)

(2) In treating collectively of a number of persons or things, a singular noun is generally used in Spanish to denote something that belongs to every member of a group if, in the case of each member, but one object of the kind is concerned.

Los niños se lavaron la cara y las manos.	The children washed their faces and hands.
Todos los discípulos levantaron la mano.	All the pupils raised their hands (i.e., each raised one of his two hands).

(3) Abstract nouns are frequently used in the plural in a concrete sense.

terneza tenderness **ternezas** tender words *or* deeds

111. Case. — (1) **Possessive Case (Genitive).** — Spanish nouns have only one form for the singular and one for the

plural: they have no ending that corresponds to the English *'s*. Possession is denoted by the preposition **de**, *of*.

el libro del hombre the man's book (lit., 'the book of the man')
la hermana de María Mary's sister (lit., 'the sister of Mary')

a. The English possessive case is sometimes elliptical for *the house, church,* or *shop of;* in Spanish the full construction occurs.

Está en casa de mi tío.	He is at my uncle's.
Voy a la iglesia de San Pablo.	I am going to Saint Paul's.
En la tienda de García.	At Garcia's.

(2) **Indirect Object (Dative).** — The indirect object is always expressed by **a** before the noun, without regard to its position.

María dió un libro a Pedro.	Mary gave Peter a book, *or* Mary gave a book to Peter.

a. In Spanish, verbs meaning to *take from* or *ask of* are followed by the dative of the person.

Pido un favor a mi madre.	I ask a favor of my mother.
Compré el caballo a mi primo.	I bought the horse of my cousin.

(3) **Direct Object (Accusative).** — The direct object does not, as a rule, require a preposition, but the preposition **a** is required before the direct object whenever it is a proper noun, or any noun or pronoun [1] that denotes a *specific* person, higher animal, or personified thing.

Pablo ama a Sofía.	Paul loves Sophia.
He visitado a Paris.	I have visited Paris.
¿ A quién llama ?	Whom is he calling?
Llama a su hijo.	He is calling his son.

Compare the following:

Hallé el libro.	I found the book.
Hallé al niño.	I found the child.
Busco un hombre (not specific) **que hable español.**	I am looking for a man who speaks Spanish.
Conozco a un hombre que habla español.	I know a man who speaks Spanish.

[1] Except the personal pronouns **me, te,** etc., and the relative **que**

a. The accusative **a** is usually omitted after **tener,** *to have:* **tengo un padre y una madre,** *I have a father and a mother.* Observe also the following:

querer to wish	**perder** to lose
querer a to like, love[1]	**perder a** to ruin

b. The accusative **a** is sometimes omitted when the verb governs an indirect object also: **llevo el niño a su papá,** *I am taking the child to his father.*

c. The preposition **a** is sometimes placed before the direct object merely to distinguish the latter from the subject: **a la guerra sigue la paz,** *peace follows war.*

112. Regular Verbs. — The Second and Third Conjugations. Study § 232.

EXERCISES

A. 1. Arturo, busca un hombre que hable español. 2. Deseo que traduzca una carta que recibí hoy de la Argentina. 3. — Pero, señor; no conozco a nadie que hable español. 4. — Pues, llama al señor Stone y veremos si conoce a alguien. 5. Señor Stone, ¿ conoce Vd. a alguien que sepa el español? 6. — Sí, señor; acaba de llegar un joven español, que se llama Roberto Navarro. 7. — Pues, dígale Vd. al señor Navarro que quisiera que me hiciera el favor de venir a verme mañana. 8. — Sí, señor; iré a verle esta noche y se lo diré. 9. Vive en casa de la señora Wilson, y trabaja en la tienda del señor Davis.

10. ¿ Sabe Vd. cuántos hijos tienen los señores de Rodríguez? 11. — El señor Rodríguez me ha dicho que tiene dos hijos, Juan y María. 12. — Y ¿ cuántos hermanos tiene Vd.? 13. — Tengo tres, Pablo, Carlos y Ana. 14. — Yo conozco a Carlos y quisiera tener el gusto de conocer a los otros dos.

15. ¿ Pidió Vd. algún favor al señor Obregón? 16. — No, señor; no le pedí ninguno. 17. No le conozco bastante bien para pedirle favores. 18. — ¿ Cree Vd. que el hijo del señor

[1] Referring to a person.

Obregón quiera a la hija del señor Gutiérrez? 19. — Yo no sé con certeza, pero dudo que la quiera.

20. Si tuviese dinero, compraría aquella casa de dos pisos. 21. Es muy grande y cómoda. 22. En el piso bajo están la sala, la biblioteca, el comedor, y la cocina. 23. En el piso alto (los altos) hay muchos dormitorios y un cuarto de baño. 24. El dueño es un señor inteligente y rico. 25. Ha viajado mucho. 26. Ha comprado muchas cosas muy costosas en otros países. 27. Pero no está bueno en esta ciudad. 28. Piensa volver a Sevilla. 29. No quiere llevar los muebles a aquella ciudad. 30. Tiene la intención de venderlos todos. 31. La biblioteca contiene libros en inglés, francés, y español. 32. En la sala hay cuadros magníficos.

B. ¿A quién busca Vd.? ¿Qué desea Vd. que haga? ¿Quién acaba de llegar? ¿Qué quisiera Vd. que hiciera el señor Stone? ¿Dónde vive el joven español? ¿Dónde trabaja él? ¿Conoce Vd. al señor Navarro? ¿Cuántos hijos tiene el padre de Vd.? ¿Cómo se llaman? ¿Cuántos primos tiene Vd.? ¿Cómo se llaman? ¿Quiere Vd. a todos sus primos?

C. 1. *Put in the blank space the preposition* **a** *or the preposition* **de,** *if either one is required:* Busco mi libro. Busco mi padre. Hallé el libro. No hallé mi padre. ¿Conoce Vd. un hombre que hable el castellano? Sí, señor; conozco un hombre que habla muy bien el castellano. Voy la iglesia San Pablo. Y yo vengo la tienda Martínez. Carlos dió Sofía una pluma oro. ¿Compró la pluma mi hermano? No, señor; la compró en la tienda González. ¿Dónde está el hermano Vd.? Está en casa mi primo. ¿Quiere Vd. pedir un favor mi tío? No, señor; no conozco bien su tío. ¿Quiere Vd. una manzana? ¿Quiere Vd. Teresa? Dicen que la paz sigue la guerra. Yo creo

que la guerra sigue la paz. Quisiera ver París.[1] Yo preferiría ver Madrid.

2. *Substitute one noun for the two in each sentence:* Yo vi al rey y a la reina. Su padre y su madre están aquí. Su hijo y su hija han venido. Busco a mi tío y a mi tía. ¿ Dónde están su primo y su prima? El niño y la niña están enfermos. ¿ Conoce Vd. al viejo y a la vieja? El profesor y la profesora nos enseñan.

3. *Substitute one personal pronoun for the two nouns in each sentence in* 2.

D. 1. My family is large (**numerosa**). 2. My grandparents, my father-and-mother, my brothers-and-sisters and I all live (1*st pers. pl.*) in the same (**una misma**) house. 3. I have three grandparents, the parents of my mother and my father's mother. 4. I have four brothers-and-sisters: two brothers (**hermanos varones**) and two sisters. 5. I have known your brother Henry for two years, but I have not had the pleasure of meeting (= knowing) Paul. 6. I should like to meet him. 7. How many uncles-and-aunts have you? 8. — I have only three, don Gonzalo, don Enrique and doña Mercedes.

9. When they voted in favor, how many raised their hands? 10. — I counted only five or six. 11. — Do you know how many raised their hands when they voted (**en**) against [it]? 12. — At least twenty. The motion was not carried.

13. Have the children returned from school? 14. — Yes, ma'am; they came an hour ago. 15. — Did they wash their faces and hands? 16. — Yes, ma'am; they are ready to eat and they say (that) they are very hungry.

17. Can you find a stenographer who knows Spanish? 18. — Yes, sir; I know one who speaks, reads, and writes Spanish like a Spaniard (*say* a Spanish woman). 19. — Please tell her to come [and] (to) see me tomorrow. 20. I should like [to have] her translate some letters that I received this morning from Mexico. 21. — Yes,

[1] The *Gramática de la lengua española*, published by the Royal Spanish Academy, uses **a** before place names in the accusative if they are not modified by the definite article, as in **he visto a Cádiz, atravesó el Ebro,** etc., but in colloquial Spanish one usually says **he visto Cádiz, deseo ver Madrid,** etc.

sir; I shall go to see her tomorrow. 22. I should go this afternoon if I could, but I am too (**muy**) busy. 23. — What is her name? 24. — Her name is Mercedes Navarro. 25. — Well (**Pues**), I am sorry to ask a favor of Miss Navarro, but I hope (that) she will do me the favor of translating these letters. 26. I could translate them if I knew Spanish, but I didn't study it when I was in school (**en el colegio**).

LESSON XVIII

ADJECTIVES

113. Inflection. — Feminine, see § 35. Neuter, see § 104. Plural, see § 37, and § 110, *a*.

114. Apocopation. — The following adjectives lose the final **–o** of the masculine singular when they precede their noun:

bueno good	**ninguno** no, none
malo bad	**primero** first
uno [1] one, an *or* a	**tercero** third
alguno some	**postrero** [2] last

un buen hombre a good man
mal café bad coffee

algún día some day
el primer tomo the first volume

a. If **bueno** and **malo** are separated from their noun, they retain the final **o**: **mi bueno y cariñoso padre,** *my good and affectionate father.*

115. Grande, used in the sense of *grand* or *great,* usually becomes **gran** before a singular noun of either gender.

Un gran presidente.	A great president.
Una gran cosa.	A grand affair.

a. Before a noun beginning with a vowel, or when the adjective is emphatic, the full form is sometimes used.

Un grande acto de caridad.	A great act of charity.
Un grande sacrificio.	A *great* sacrifice.

[1] The numeral **uno** and the indefinite article are the same word.
[2] **Postrero** is little used; *last* is usually **último** (but *last month,* for instance, is **el mes pasado**).

b. When **grande** means *large* or *big*, it follows its noun.

Un muchacho grande.	A big boy.
Una casa grande.	A large house.

116. Santo, *saint, holy,* usually becomes **san** before the masculine name of a saint. The full form remains before a name beginning with **To–** or **Do–.**

San Pablo Saint Paul	**Santo Tomás** Saint Thomas
San Pedro Saint Peter	But the name of the island is
Santo Domingo Saint Dominick	**San Tomás**

Otherwise the full form is used.

Santa Ana Saint Anne	**un hombre santo** a holy man

117. Ciento, *one hundred,* becomes **cien** before the noun it modifies, even if an adjective intervenes.

Cien soldados.	One hundred soldiers.
Cien hermosos caballos.	One hundred handsome horses.
Cien mil pesos.	One hundred thousand dollars.

But the full form **ciento** is required in forming numerical expressions above one hundred (except **cien mil, cien millones,** etc.).

Ciento diez.	One hundred and ten.
Ciento veinte y cinco.	One hundred and twenty-five.

118. Agreement

(1) If an adjective modifies several singular nouns the plural form of the adjective is used.

El padre y el hijo son buenos.	The father and the son are good.
La madre y la hija son buenas.	The mother and the daughter are good.

(2) If some of the nouns are masculine and some are feminine, the adjective is usually in the masculine plural.

El padre y la madre son buenos.	The father and the mother are good.
La plata y el oro americanos.	American silver and gold.

a. If the nouns denote inanimate things, and the noun nearest the adjective is feminine plural, the adjective takes the feminine plural form.

El escritorio y las sillas estaban rotas.	The desk and chairs were broken.
Su sombrero y sus botas son viejas.	His hat and boots are old.

But:

Mi corazón y mi alma son suyos.	My heart and my soul are his.

b. Sometimes a plural noun is modified by several singular adjectives. This occurs when each adjective modifies only one of the individuals denoted by the noun: **las lenguas inglesa y castellana,** *the English and Spanish languages.*

c. An adjective usually agrees in gender and number with the nearest noun if the nouns are disconnected: **muestra un valor, una capacidad, un talento extraordinario,** *he displays extraordinary courage, ability, talent.*

d. When an attributive adjective precedes its noun, it is repeated before each noun if the nouns denote *distinct* persons or things; if the nouns denote *collectively* a state or action, a group of persons or things, or designate the same person or thing, the adjective is not repeated, and agrees with the nearest noun.

La madre y la hija.	The mother and (the) daughter.
El cuchillo y el tenedor.	The knife and fork.
Una bella casa y un bello jardín.	A beautiful house and garden.
Su extremado talento y habilidad.	His unusual talent and skill.
Todos los maestros y discípulos.	All the teachers and pupils.
El pie y pierna de los animales se llaman « pata ».	The foot and lower part of the leg of animals are called « pata ».

e. In Spanish a predicate adjective is often used where an adverb is used in English: **partió alegre,** *he departed joyfully.*

119. Position of Descriptive Adjectives.[1] — In English a descriptive adjective used with a noun nearly always precedes it; in Spanish a descriptive adjective commonly follows its noun.

un muchacho fuerte a strong boy	**agua fría** cold water
una muchacha cubana a Cuban girl	**ojos azules** blue eyes

[1] Or "qualifying" adjectives.

120. Most Spanish descriptive adjectives, however, may precede their noun, if the quality named by the adjective is characteristic of the noun, or if the language is poetic or figurative.

la Santa Biblia the Holy Bible **la blanca nieve** the white snow
el ronco trueno the hoarse thunder

a. Many adjectives may usually be placed either before or after their noun, although an adjective is more literal and distinctive when it follows: **bueno,** *good;* **malo,** *bad;* **bonito** or **lindo,** *pretty;* **hermoso,** *beautiful* or *handsome;* **pequeño,** *small;* **viejo,** *old,* etc.

una pequeña niña, *or* **una niña pequeña** a little girl
un hermoso caballo, *or* **un caballo hermoso** a handsome horse

b. The position of the adjective is sometimes determined by euphony, or the necessity of avoiding ambiguity; and an adjective which ordinarily follows its noun may stand before a noun modified by an adjective phrase.

cuatro magníficos caballos blancos four splendid white horses
los escasos honorarios del gobierno the inadequate salaries of the government
un patriótico libro de lectura cubano a patriotic Cuban reader

c. A few adjectives have one meaning before, and another after, their noun.

un gran amigo a great friend
una manzana grande a large apple
el pobre hombre the poor man (an object of pity)
un hombre pobre a poor (poverty-stricken) man
mi cara madre my dear mother
una silla cara a dear (expensive) chair
cierta época a certain period
noticia cierta authentic news
diferentes personas different (= several) persons
vestidos diferentes different (= dissimilar) costumes
un nuevo libro another (*or* a different) book
un libro nuevo a new book (fresh from the press)
varios hombres several men
papeles varios miscellaneous papers, etc.

d. When the adjective precedes, it is usually repeated before each noun to which it refers.

Mi viejo padre y mi vieja madre. My old father and mother.

e. An English noun used as an adjective is usually expressed in Spanish by a noun preceded by **de** (or **para**).

un reloj de oro a gold watch
una estatua de mármol a marble statue
un vaso para vino a wineglass (**un vaso de vino** *is* a glass of wine)

121. Adjectives used Substantively. — In English, adjectives are sometimes used substantively; as, *the old and the young*. This construction is commoner in Spanish than in English. If a noun is understood, the adjective takes the gender and number of the noun it represents. *One*, or *ones*, after the English adjective, is usually not to be translated into Spanish.

El viejo.	The old man.
Los ricos y los pobres.	The rich and the poor.
Prefiero el caballo negro al blanco.	I prefer the black horse to the white one.

a. If the adjective is used substantively as the name of a color or as an abstract noun, it requires the article **lo**. See § 104.

122. Radical-Changing Verbs. — The First Class. Study §§ 243–250.

EXERCISES

A. 1. Entre varios papeles hallé hoy una carta que me escribió mi amigo Nicolás Castro el año pasado. Dice:

« Llegué el sábado a la escuela. Era el 24 de septiembre y el curso se había inaugurado. Por la mañana tuvimos clases. Yo asistí a dos, pero no a la primera.

Con un muchacho que hablaba español, fuí al comedor para almorzar. Yo no tenía hambre, pero todos teníamos que presentarnos. Había mucha animación en el comedor. Los muchachos charlaban, reían y de vez en cuando emitían a compás unos gritos que yo no entendía.

— ¿ Por qué hacen eso ? ¿ A quién quieren espantar ? — pregunté a mi compañero.

Me miró sorprendido un momento y dijo:

— ¿ No sabe Vd. ? Hay una partida de fútbol esta tarde.

— Nunca he visto una partida de fútbol, — contesté.

A las dos bajamos seis o siete calles [1] y en pocos minutos llegamos a la cancha donde había de verificarse el juego.[2] Había allí mucha gente: hombres, mujeres, muchachos y muchachas con banderas, algunos niños, vendedores de programas, dulces, bebidas y periódicos, y algunos acomodadores y funcionarios.

Después de algunos detalles preliminares que yo no comprendía, empezó la partida. Para mí aquello era una confusión. Un futbolista patea la pelota y otro la coge y corre con ella bajo el brazo, pero luego le echan al suelo y se amontonan sobre él. Éste la pasa, aquél la coge o la echa al suelo. Uno sale corriendo con ella y los otros le persiguen. De vez en cuando uno de los jugadores gritaba: 17, 12, 19, y entonces algunos corrían en una dirección y otros en otra. Para mí, era una confusión tremenda.

La partida duró dos horas.

¿ Quién ganó ? — pregunté a mi compañero.

— Nosotros, 18 contra 11.

— ¡ Vaya, me alegro ! — le contesté. »

2. ¿ Qué compró Vd. ? — Compré un reloj de plata. — ¿ Por qué no compró uno de oro ? — Porque los relojes de oro cuestan mucho. Un reloj de oro cuesta mucho más que uno de plata.

¿ Qué quiere el señor ? — Quiero una cucharita; no quiero una cuchara para sopa. Tráigame una cucharita en seguida. Tráigame también un vaso de agua. — ¿ Quiere el señor una taza de café ? — Sí; tráigame una taza de café con leche, y tráigame también un cuchillo y un tenedor.

B. 1. ¿ Cuándo llegó Nicolás a la escuela ? ¿ Para qué fueron al comedor ? ¿ Qué hacían los muchachos ? ¿ Qué emitían a compás ? ¿ Qué había aquella tarde ? ¿ Cuántas

[1] Translate *streets* or *blocks*. [2] *Where the game was to take place.*

calles bajaron? ¿A dónde llegaron? ¿Qué tenían los muchachos y las muchachas? ¿Qué vendían los vendedores? ¿Qué patea el futbolista? Cuando un jugador sale corriendo con la pelota, ¿qué hacen los otros? ¿Qué gritaba uno de los jugadores? Según Nicolás, ¿qué parecía la partida de fútbol? ¿Cuánto tiempo duró?

C. 1. *Continue:* He perdido el reloj de oro. Soy mejicano(–a). Partí alegre. Quiero una taza de café. Buscaba una taza para té. Compraré una estatua de mármol.

2. *Put the adjective in its proper position (and form) before or after the noun:* (hermoso) un caballo; (pequeño) una niña; (cansado) un hombre; (pobre) una mujer; (roto) una silla; (inglés) la lengua; (portorriqueño) hombres y mujeres; (inglés y español) las lenguas; (grande) una casa, un rey; (primero) la página, el capítulo; (ninguno) cosa, hombre; (santo) Ana, Pablo, la Biblia; (ciento) alumnos, alumnas.

3. *Apply, in the proper form and position, the adjectives corresponding to the nouns. Make as many combinations as possible:* **Un–a, el** *or* **la,** *or numerals may also be used.*

bueno	caballo
blanco	gobierno
español	hombre
grande	niña
magnífico	lengua
fuerte	nieve
mejicano	trueno
ronco	perro
cansado	mujer

D. 1. At school we had classes in the morning. 2. We did not have classes in the afternoon. 3. We played football if it did not rain. 4. During a football match there was much animation in the field. 5. The students talked and laughed and from time to time they gave a yell all together. 6. A Spanish friend asked me why they did that. 7. I answered him that it was the school yell (yell of the school). 8. He asked me if they gave the yell to frighten the

other players. 9. My Spanish friend said that it was the first football game that he had seen. 10. A big crowd attended all the football games. 11. One day a thousand men and women were present at the game. 12. There were also vendors of program(me)s and men who sold sweets (candies) and drinks. 13. My friend did not understand the game (**juego**). 14. When a player shouted 15, 22, 35, my friend looked at me in surprise (surprised) on hearing the numbers. 15. One player would-catch (*imp. ind.*) the ball and run with it. 16. Other players would-follow him and throw him down. 17. The game lasted three hours. 18 My friend asked me who won and I answered: We won, 14 to (against) 7. 19. If I had been stronger (more strong), I should have liked to play football. 20. My father wanted me to study instead of playing football. 21. He said (that) if I received (**salía con**) [a] good mark at the end of the term he would give me a motorcar.

LESSON XIX

123. Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs. — Spanish adjectives form their comparative by prefixing **más**, *more*, to the positive, and their superlative by prefixing the definite article to the comparative.

rico, más rico, el más rico **rica, más rica, la más rica** **ricos, más ricos, los más ricos** **ricas, más ricas, las más ricas**	rich, richer, richest

a. If a possessive adjective precedes the superlative, the article is not used: **su amigo más rico,** *his richest friend.*

b. The article or the possessive adjective precedes the noun when the superlative adjective follows it: **la flor más hermosa,** *the most beautiful flower.*

c. When several comparatives or superlatives modify the same word, **más** (or **el más, la más,** etc.) is placed before the first and omitted before the others: **el árbol más alto y viejo,** *the tallest and oldest tree.*

d. Correlative *the . . . the,* followed by comparatives, is expressed in Spanish by **cuanto . . . tanto,**[1] or by **mientras . . . —: cuanto más dinero gana, tanto más gasta,** *the more money he earns, the more he spends;*

[1] The **tanto** may sometimes be omitted, as in **cuanto más tiene, más quiere,** *the more he has, the more he wants.*

cuanto más viejo es el vino, tanto más vale, *the older the wine is, the more it is worth;* **mientras más tiene, más quiere,** *the more he has, the more he wants.*

e. The English preposition *in* after a superlative is usually expressed in Spanish by **de**: **el río más largo del mundo,** *the longest river in the world.*

f. The article is omitted before a superlative adjective in the predicate when its noun is compared with itself: **esta mujer sonríe cuando está más triste,** *this woman smiles when she is saddest.*

g. When the noun is in apposition, both the article and the superlative follow the noun: **Nueva York, ciudad la más opulenta de los Estados Unidos,** *New York, the wealthiest city in the United States.*

h. When there is no real comparison, *most* is usually expressed by **muy**, or the suffix **-ísimo**: **es muy útil,** or **utilísimo,** *it is most useful.*

124. (1) The adjectives **bueno** and **malo** are irregularly compared.

bueno, mejor, el mejor good, better, best
malo, peor, el peor bad, worse, worst

The regular comparative forms **más bueno** and **más malo** are sometimes used.

Más bueno que el pan.	Better than bread, as good as gold.
Más malo que Satanás.	Worse than Satan.

(2) **Grande** and **pequeño,** while usually compared regularly, have also the irregular comparative forms **mayor** and **menor.** When applied to persons, **mayor** means *older,* and **menor,** *younger.* **Más grande** and **más pequeño** are preferred for the literal and physical use.

Juan es más grande que Pedro.	John is larger than Peter.
Juan es mayor que Pedro.	John is older than Peter.

(3) **Mucho** and **poco** are compared irregularly, and in the superlative they are used only in the neuter singular and in the plural.

mucho, más, lo (los, las) más much (many), more, most
poco, menos, lo (los, las) menos little (few), less, least

Lo menos que he perdido.	The least that I have lost.
En vano buscan los más el bien que gozan los menos.	In vain do the many seek for the happiness which the few enjoy.
Las más noches, *or* **Las más de las noches.**	Most nights.

a. Most, used with a noun, is usually best expressed by **la mayor parte de: la mayor parte de mis amigos,** *most of my friends* (lit., 'the greater part of my friends').

125. Spanish adverbs form both their comparative and superlative by prefixing **más** to the positive. There is usually no difference in form between the comparative and the superlative.

despacio slowly — **más despacio** more (*or* most) slowly

a. The neuter article **lo** is often prefixed to a superlative adverb when it is followed by a word or clause expressing *possibility.*

Lo más pronto posible.	The soonest possible, *or* as soon as possible.
Lo más pronto que pudo.	As soon as he could.

126. The following adverbs are compared irregularly:

bien, mejor well, better *or* best
mal, peor badly, worse *or* worst
mucho, más much (a great deal), more *or* most
poco, menos little, less (fewer) *or* least (fewest)

a. **Más bien** means *rather:* **está cansado más bien que enfermo,** *he is tired rather than ill.*

127. *Than* is usually expressed in Spanish by **que.**

Él es más alto que usted.	He is taller than you.
Tiene más libros que dinero.	He has more books than money.

a. Before a numeral, *more than* and *less than,* meaning *a greater number than* and *a smaller number than,* are expressed by **más de** and **menos de: hay más de cinco,** *there are more than five;* **tiene menos de veinte años,** *he is less than twenty years old;* but **el caballo es más fuerte que cinco hombres,** *a horse is stronger than five men,* since **más** does not here mean *a greater number.*

b. **No . . . más que** usually means *only*. Compare:

No gastaron más de cien pesos.	They did not spend more than one hundred dollars.
No gastaron más que cien pesos.	They spent only one hundred dollars.

c. Before a clause (containing a verb), *than* is usually expressed by **de lo que**; but it is expressed by **del** (= **de** + **el**) **que**, and its declined forms, **de la que, de los que, de las que,** when the comparison is with a noun (expressed or understood) of the main clause.

Es más alto de lo que parece.	It is higher than (what) it seems.
Hace más calor de lo que Vd. cree.	It is warmer than (what) you think.
Tiene más libros de los que tenía.	He has more books than (those which) he had.

d. But, if the action of one verb is compared with that of another, *than* before a clause is **que**: **habla más que trabaja,** *he talks more than he works.*

128. **Tan . . . como** = as . . . as, *or* so . . . as

Tanto(-a) . . . como = as much . . . as, *or* so much . . . as

Tantos(-as) . . . como = as many . . . as, *or* so many . . . as

Tan blanco como la nieve.	As white as snow.
Tanto oro como plata.	As much gold as silver.
No tiene tanta plata como oro.	He hasn't so much silver as gold.
Tantas manzanas como peras.	As many apples as pears.

129. Radical-Changing Verbs. — The Second and Third Classes. Study §§ 251–256.

EXERCISES

Nueva York
28 de enero de 1929

A. Mi querido amigo:

Hace más de quince [1] días que estamos aquí y es poco lo que (*that which*) hemos visto de esta ciudad, la más opu-

[1] See **quince** in the Vocabulary.

lenta de los Estados Unidos. Salimos todos los días y visitamos los edificios más altos, los bazares más famosos y los hoteles más grandes. Cuanto más vemos, tanto más queremos ver. Como tú sabes, era lo mismo en Buenos Aires.

Nueva York tiene más habitantes que Buenos Aires, pero Buenos Aires no es menos hermosa. Es una ciudad hermosísima. Dentro de pocos años será una de las más hermosas y opulentas del mundo. Pero aunque tiene más habitantes de los que tenía hace cinco años, yo creo que nunca tendrá tantos como Nueva York.

La mayor parte de mis amigos que viven aquí han venido a visitarme. Ya había escrito a algunos de ellos anunciándoles mi viaje. Casi todos son antiguos compañeros de colegio. Juan y Carlos Ortiz vinieron ayer. ¿Te acuerdas de ellos? Tú los conociste en casa. Juan es mayor que Carlos, pero Carlos es más alto. Su hermana María es muy bonita. No tiene más que quince años pero es tan alta como tú.

Volveré a escribir pronto, pero no será de aquí. Esperamos partir para Chicago la semana próxima.

Tu afectísimo amigo,
Rafael

Pensamos comprar una casa más grande. La casa en que vivimos es bonita más bien que cómoda. El comedor es tan grande como la sala. En el piso alto (los altos) no hay tantos cuartos como en el piso bajo (los bajos). Los dormitorios son menos altos de lo que es saludable. La biblioteca es grandísima. El primer dueño tenía más libros de los que tenemos nosotros. Hay algunas flores bellísimas en el jardín. Es cierto que hay también más de cincuenta árboles. Pero la mayor parte de ellos son pequeños.

B. ¿Cuánto tiempo hace que Rafael está aquí? ¿Cuál es la ciudad más opulenta de los Estados Unidos? . . . de la Argentina? ¿Qué visita Rafael todos los días? ¿Cuál tiene más habitantes, Nueva York o Buenos Aires?

¿ Quiénes son los amigos de Rafael? ¿ Quiénes vinieron ayer? ¿ Cuántos años tiene María? ¿ Para qué ciudad esperan partir? ¿ Cuándo partirán?

¿ Qué pensamos comprar? ¿ Por qué? ¿ Qué hay en el jardín?

C. 1. *To be continued:* Yo soy más alto que Rafael. No soy tan rico como Vd. Tengo más libros de los que tenía el año pasado. Tengo más de ciento. Cuanto más gano, tanto más gasto. Mientras más estudio, más aprendo.

2. *Compare:* rico, buena, malos, grande, pequeñas, fácil, mucho, poco, útil, bien, mal, despacio.

3. *Substitute for the dash the proper translation of 'than':* Juan es mayor —— María. Es más alto —— yo creía. La vaca da más leche —— daba el año pasado. Esta casa costó más dinero —— aquélla. Gané menos —— veinte pesos. Pablo tiene diez años más —— yo. Tenemos menos criados —— teníamos cuando nos visitó Vd. El hierro es más útil —— el oro. Hace más frío —— Vd. cree. Tenemos más —— mil libros. El alemán es más difícil —— el español. Tengo más amigos —— dinero. Soy más pobre —— tú. Soy más pobre —— crees. Tengo menos —— cien pesos.

Santiago de Chile
June 25th, 1929

D. 1. My dear friend (*fem.*):

We have been in Santiago de Chile more than a week. Santiago has fewer inhabitants than Buenos Aires, but it is a very beautiful city. The climate is better than that (el) of Chicago. It is less cold in (the) winter and less warm in (the) summer. August is the coldest month of the year and January is the warmest month. It rains here more than I expected. Within a few years Santiago will be one of the wealthiest cities in the world. You ought to visit Chile.

2. We expect to leave for Buenos Aires next Monday. Buenos Aires is larger and wealthier than Santiago. Of all Spanish-speaking cities (**ciudades de habla española**) in the world, Buenos Aires

is the largest and the wealthiest. It has more inhabitants than Madrid or Barcelona. But Santiago is larger than I thought. It has fifty thousand more inhabitants than it had ten years ago. The inhabitants are nearly all white. There are few Indians in Santiago. I shall write again soon from Buenos Aires.

Your affectionate friend,

Emilia.

3. We should like to sell this house and buy a larger [one]. If Mr. Alonso would sell his house, we should buy it. We do not like this house because it is very small and it is not comfortable. The library is very-large; it is larger than the dining room, and this (éste) is larger than the drawing room. The house has fewer rooms than we need. In the garden there are the most beautiful flowers in the world, but most of the trees are small.

LESSON XX

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

130. The Spanish personal pronouns used as the subject or object of verbs are:

		Subject	Direct Object	Indirect Object
			Singular	
1.		**yo** I	**me** me	**me** to me
2.		**tú** you, thou	**te** you, thee	**te** to you, to thee
3.	*m.*	**él** he, it	**le** *or* **lo** him, it	**le** to him, to her, to it
	f.	**ella** she, it	**la** her, it	(**la**) (to her)
	n.	**ello** it	**lo** it	
			se himself, etc.	**se** to himself, etc.
			Plural	
1.		**nosotros** (**-as**) we	**nos** us	**nos** to us
2.		**vosotros** (**-as**) you, ye	**os** you	**os** to you
3.	*m.*	**ellos** } they	**los** } them	**les** to them
	f.	**ellas** }	**las** }	(**las**) (to them, *f.*)
			se themselves, etc.	**se** to themselves, etc.

a. In English a subject-pronoun is rarely omitted; in Spanish it is regularly omitted unless required for emphasis or clearness: **hablo,** *I am speaking;* **yo hablo,** ***I*** *am speaking.* The pronoun is sometimes required when the form of the verb would not make it clear what pronoun is understood; thus, **yo (él, ella) hablaba,** *I (he, she) was speaking.*

b. In English an object-pronoun regularly follows the verb; in Spanish it usually precedes.

Nos aman.	They love us.
Ella me teme.	She fears me.
Antonio te da un libro.	Anthony gives you a book.

If the sentence is negative, no immediately precedes the object-pronoun: **ella no me teme,** *she does not fear me.*

c. But sometimes the object-pronoun follows the verb, and is attached to it so that the verb and pronoun form one word. This occurs when the pronoun is the object of an infinitive, a present participle, or an affirmative imperative (including the affirmative subjunctive used with imperative force).

Temerle. (To) fear him.	**Llamándome.** Calling me.
Cómpralo. Buy it.	**Sentémonos.** Let us sit down.

But:

No lo compres. Do not buy it.	**No nos sentemos.** Let us not sit down.

d. When a present participle or an infinitive is used with an auxiliary verb, the object-pronoun may usually either precede the auxiliary or follow its main verb.

Me está aguardando, *or* **Está aguardándome.**[1]	He is waiting for me.
Quiero verla, *or* **La quiero ver.**[1]	I wish to see her.

e. If the sentence (or clause) begins with the verb, the object-pronoun may follow; but this rarely occurs in spoken Spanish, and it is avoided by most modern writers.

Ámame.	He loves me.
Amábame.	He used to love me.
Amóme.	He loved me, etc.

f. In English one may say, *give me the book,* or *give the book to me;* both expressions are to be translated into Spanish by **dame el libro,** if the *me* is not emphatic: cf. § 139, *a.*

[1] In each case the more common form is given first.

g. It should be noted that the English pronouns *him*, *her*, and *them* may be used as either direct or indirect object; and that, if used as direct object, they should be expressed in Spanish by one set of pronouns, while if used as indirect, they should be expressed by another set.

La teme.	He fears *her*.
Le da un libro.	He gives *her* a book.
Los ama.	He loves *them*.
Les da el libro.	He gives *them* the book.

The masculine singular **le**, however, is used as either direct or indirect object.

h. In order to avoid ambiguity by indicating gender, the feminine direct object-pronoun (accusative) is sometimes used instead of the indirect object-pronoun (dative): **él la** (or **las**) **quedó fiel hasta la muerte,** *he remained faithful to her* (or *them*, fem.) *till death.*

i. The masculine singular pronoun of the third person, as direct object, has two forms, **le** and **lo.** It is usually considered best to use **le** when referring to a person, and **lo** when referring to a thing; but some speakers and writers use only **le,** while others prefer **lo.**

131. *Tú* and *usted*. — English *you* may be expressed in Spanish by **tú,** *pl.* **vosotros** (**-as**), or by **usted,** *pl.* **ustedes. Usted** (*pl.* **ustedes**) is a contraction of **vuestra merced,** *your grace;* it is treated as a noun and requires the verb, object-pronouns, and possessives in the third person singular or plural. Thus, addressing a woman one would say:

¿ Cómo está usted? How are you? (lit., 'How is your grace'?)
Yo la vi esta mañana. I saw you this morning (lit., 'I saw her,' referring to the noun element in **usted**).
Vi también a su hermana. I saw your sister also (lit., 'I saw her sister').

It will be observed that **usted** has all the attributes of a noun except gender: it assumes the gender of the person addressed. **Usted** and **ustedes** may be abbreviated in writing to **Vd.** and **Vds.,** or to **Ud.** and **Uds.** (and rarely today to **V.** and **VV.**)

When *you* stands for the name of a near relative, an intimate friend, a small child, an animal, or an inanimate object, it is usually to be translated by **tú.** The word **tú** corresponds also to English *thou*, used in

poetic and sacred language. The plural of **tú** is **vosotros** (**-as**). In all other cases *you* should be expressed by **usted** (*pl.* **ustedes**). Thus it would be rude to address a stranger or mere acquaintance as **tú**; while, on the other hand, to address an intimate friend as **usted** might indicate scorn or anger.[1]

a. **Vosotros,** instead of **ustedes,** is sometimes used by orators in addressing an audience.

b. **Nos** and **vos** may occur, instead of **yo** and **tú,** in royal proclamations and official documents: **nos el rey mandamos . . .,** *I, the king, command.* **Vos** instead of **usted** occurs commonly in the older Spanish works.

132. ***Ello* and *Lo*.** — There is no pronoun in Spanish exactly corresponding to English *it*. All Spanish nouns are either masculine or feminine; hence, if *it* represents a noun, it is expressed in Spanish by a masculine or feminine pronoun, according to the gender of the noun represented. Thus, speaking of **el libro,** *it* would be **él, lo,** or **le**; while speaking of **la pluma,** *it* would be **ella, la,** or **le,** according as *it* is subject, direct object, or indirect object.

If *it* does not represent a noun, but a whole phrase, sentence, or idea, it may be expressed by the neuter **ello** [2] (subject-pronoun or object of a preposition) or **lo** (object-pronoun), as in **convengo en ello,** *I agree to it,* **no lo creo,** *I do not believe it.*

But *it,* when the subject of a verb, is usually not expressed in Spanish at all. Thus, speaking of **la casa,** one would say, **es muy alta,** *it is very high;* or speaking of something that happened, one would say, **no es importante,** *it is not important.* If *it* represents nothing definite, but is merely expletive, it can not be expressed in Spanish: **llueve,** *it is raining;* **nieva,** *it is snowing.*

[1] In some parts of the Spanish-speaking world **vosotros** and the corresponding form of the verb are no longer used in colloquial language. Thus, a Cuban or Mexican father would address one child as **tú,** but two or more as **ustedes.** And in some parts of South America the illiterate use **vos hablás** for **tú hablas, vos tenés** for **tú tienes** and **vos salís** for **tú sales.**

[2] Called "neuter" because it never refers to a noun and therefore is never masculine or feminine.

a. As a subject-pronoun **ello** occurs commonly only in the expression **ello es que,** *the fact is that.*

b. **Lo** is often used in the predicate to refer to a preceding noun or adjective: **¿ Es él huérfano ? — Sí, lo es.** *Is he an orphan? Yes; he is (one);* **sus ojos parecen negros sin serlo,** *his eyes appear black without being so.*

But if the preceding noun refers to a definite person, the personal pronoun agrees in gender and number with the noun: **¿ Eres tú la hija del señor García ? — Sí, la soy.** *Are you the daughter of Mr. García? — Yes; I am.*

133. Prepositional Forms of the Personal Pronouns. — When personal pronouns are governed by a preposition, the following forms are used:

		Singular	Plural
1*st Pers.*		**mí** me	**nosotros** (–as) us
2*d Pers.*		**ti** you, thee	**vosotros** (–as) you
3*d Pers.*	*m.*	**él** him, it	**ellos** (–as) them
	f.	**ella** her, it	
	n.	**ello** it	
		sí himself, etc.	**sí** themselves, etc.

Note that these are the same in form as the subject-pronouns, with the exception of **mí, ti,** and **sí.**

a. When **con,** *with,* governs **mí, ti,** or **sí,** the preposition and the pronoun unite to form one word, and the combination ends with the syllable **–go: conmigo,** *with me;* **contigo,** *with you;* and **consigo,** *with himself* (*herself*, etc.).[1]

b. **Usted**(**es**) is also used with prepositions.

Compré el caballo para ti (para usted).	I bought the horse for you.
Quiero hablar contigo (con usted).	I wish to speak with you.

134. Orthographic Changes that occur in the inflection of both regular and irregular verbs. Study §§ 235–241 and 248.

[1] In early Spanish, *with me, with thee, with himself* (etc.), were **migo, tigo, sigo** (from Latin, *mecum, tecum, secum*). Later, **con** was prefixed, so that the modern forms **conmigo, contigo, consigo,** express *with* twice. The old forms **connosco,** *with us,* and **convosco,** *with you,* are no longer used.

EXERCISES

A. Estaba hablando con un amigo argentino y él me dijo que los hispanoamericanos creen que los ingleses y los norteamericanos son muy egoístas. Lo había observado bien en su país y en los otros países de la América española que había visitado.

Le contesté: — No, yo creo que Vds. no nos comprenden. Yo creo que nosotros no somos egoístas.

— Ah, pues lo que Vd. acaba de decir lo prueba. Siempre están usando Vds. el *yo* y el *nosotros*.

— Pero eso se debe a la diferencia de los dos idiomas. Preguntemos a mi profesor de español.

Interrogado éste, dijo a los dos amigos, uno de Buenos Aires, el otro de Boston.

— Voy a darles una lección de gramática. Si vemos escrita la palabra **speak,** podemos decir que representa una acción, pero no podemos indicar nada más con certeza. Podríamos aplicarle cuatro sujetos diferentes. En inglés, pues, es preciso usar el sujeto con cada forma verbal, y al hablar en una lengua extranjera (los de habla inglesa) hacen lo mismo. En español, con formas diferentes para las varias personas, no es necesario usar el sujeto, pues la forma verbal lo indica. Hay una excepción. Con la tercera persona el sujeto puede ser *él, ella* o *usted* en el singular, *ellos, ellas* o *ustedes* en el plural. Cuando es necesario distinguir se usa el sujeto, y *usted* o *ustedes* se usa generalmente por ser de tratamiento cortés. En todas las personas podemos usar los pronombres para dar énfasis o para contrastar; por ejemplo: *yo estudio* mientras que *tú juegas*. Los pronombres complementarios no ocupan el mismo lugar que en inglés. Generalmente preceden. Ejemplos: *me parece, te olvidas, os dicen*. Siguen al infinitivo, gerundio o imperativo afirmativo, formando con éstos una sola palabra. Ejemplos: *premiarte, sonriéndose, amaos, pídeme, sentémonos*.

Aquí hizo pausa el profesor. Santiago Robles, de Buenos Aires, dijo entonces:

— Gracias, señor profesor. Ahora comprendo la impresión errónea debida al lenguaje. Al mismo tiempo he aprendido algo de mi propio idioma.

B. 1. ¿ Cómo se llaman los habitantes de los Estados Unidos? 2. ¿ Ha visitado Vd. algún país de la América española? 3. ¿ Dónde está Buenos Aires? 4. ¿ Hay muchas formas verbales en inglés? 5. ¿ Qué es preciso usar en inglés con cada forma verbal? 6. ¿ Qué hacen los ingleses cuando hablan español? 7. ¿ Por qué no es preciso usar siempre el sujeto en español? 8. ¿ Qué excepción importante hay? 9. ¿ Por qué debe usarse *usted* o *ustedes* más generalmente que otros pronombres? 10. ¿ Qué debemos usar con el verbo para dar énfasis o para contrastar? 11. ¿ Qué lugar ocupan los pronombres complementarios en inglés? 12. ¿ Qué lugar ocupan en español? 13. ¿ A qué formas siguen? 14. Dense algunos ejemplos. 15. ¿ Qué comprendió Santiago Robles?

C. 1. *In the following sentences, supply a subject-pronoun if it is required:* La aborrezco pero la quieres. ¿ Quiere vender su bicicleta? — Sí, señor; quiero venderla. Estudia pero no estudia. Creo que va a llover. El señor Martínez no pagó la cuenta y creo que no quiere pagarla. — Si no la paga, la pagaré. No están cansados pero sí estamos cansadísimos. Vaya a buscarlo y tráigamelo. No puedo ir a buscarlo; también estoy cansado.

2. *Substitute a personal pronoun for each noun:* ¿ Vió Vd. ayer a María? — No, señor; pero quiero ver a María hoy. Yo buscaba a Enrique y Carolina, y Enrique y Carolina me buscaban a mí. Dicen que están aguardando a la señora Muñoz, pero yo creo que no quieren ver a la señora. Yo debiera devolver el libro a Ana y María. Si quieres vender la casa, vende la casa; si no quieres vender la casa, no

vendas la casa. Si ustedes quieren comprar el automóvil, compren el automóvil; si no quieren comprar el automóvil, no compren el automóvil.

3. *Put the pronoun in parenthesis in its proper place:* (le) ¿ Quieres ver? (te) Está aguardando. (los, les) Queremos ver y hablar lo más pronto posible, pero no podemos encontrar. (la, le) Si pudiera encontrar, diría la verdad, pero no puedo encontrar y por consiguiente no puedo decir la verdad. Prefiero que no digas la verdad. Busca, pero no digas nada. (les) Si Vd. quiere prestar dinero, preste diez pesos; no preste más. — No quiero prestar nada. (lo) No debes ver; viendo, te enojarás tú también.

D. 1. Can you explain to me why the English and the North Americans are always using the pronouns *I* and *you?* 2. The Spaniards and the Spanish Americans rarely use **yo** and **nosotros.** 3. Do you believe (that) the English and the North Americans are conceited? 4. — No, sir; in the English and Spanish languages there is a notable difference in the use of the personal pronouns. 5. In English one says (**se dice**) *I speak, you speak, we speak,* without changing the form of the verb, and it is necessary to use the pronoun to distinguish the persons. 6. The Spaniards say **hablo, hablas, hablamos, habláis,** and it is not necessary to use the subject as the verbal form indicates it. 7. With the third person, however, there is an exception, and it is often necessary to use **él, ella** or **usted** in the singular and **ellos, ellas** or **ustedes** in the plural, since the verbal form does not indicate the subject.

8. With **hablo, hablas, hablamos** and **habláis** we use the pronouns only to give emphasis or to make-a-contrast. 9. Do you understand now why the English and the North Americans use the pronouns while the Spaniards and the Spanish Americans suppress them? — 10. Yes, sir; I understand now why the English and the North Americans are always using *I* and *we.* 11. They are not conceited; the use of the pronouns is due to the nature of the English language.

12. Paul, call (*fam.*) him; do not wait-for him [any] longer. 13. No, wait (*use* **esperar**) a moment; do not call him yet. 14. I

should like to explain it all to you before he comes. 15. If I did not explain it to you, you would not understand the motive (that) I have in calling him. 16. I want you to see him and I want him to see you, but I wish you would hear me first (**antes**).

LESSON XXI

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

135. ***Se* and *Sí*.** — The reflexive pronouns **se** and **sí** are masculine or feminine, singular or plural. **Se** is used as the direct or indirect object of a verb; **sí** as the object of a preposition. Whenever the subject of a verb is a noun or a pronoun of the third person, or **usted(es)**, and is represented as acting, either directly or indirectly, on itself, **se** is used as the object-pronoun and **sí** as the prepositional form.

Él se alaba.	He praises himself.
Usted se engaña.	You deceive yourself (are mistaken).
Antonio se compró un sombrero.	Anthony bought himself a hat.
Onofre habla siempre de sí.	Onofre is always talking about himself.
Sírvase Vd. decirme.	Please tell me.

a. Reflexive **se**, whether direct or indirect object, always precedes another object-pronoun: **se me figura**, *it seems to me.* (Here **se** is the direct, **me** the indirect, object.)

136. In the first and second persons there is no especial form of reflexive pronoun, but the object-pronouns may become reflexive. Thus, the indicative present tense of **engañarse**, *to deceive oneself, be mistaken*, is

me engaño I deceive myself	**nos engañamos** we deceive ourselves
te engañas you deceive yourself	**os engañáis** you deceive yourselves
se engaña he (she) deceives himself (herself)	**se engañan** they deceive themselves

a. If English *myself, ourselves, thyself*, etc., are emphatic, they are to be expressed in Spanish by the reflexive pronoun in the prepositional form, modified by **mismo** (**–a, –os, –as**).

Me engaño a mí mismo.	I deceive *myself*.
Usted se engaña a sí mismo.	You deceive *yourself*.
Onofre habla siempre de sí mismo.	Onofre is always talking about *himself*.

In these expressions **propio** may replace **mismo.**

Ella se ama a sí propia. — She loves *herself*.

b. Many verbs require the reflexive construction in Spanish, but not in English.

acostarse (to) go to bed (lit., 'to recline oneself')
levantarse (to) rise *or* get up (lit., 'to raise oneself')
sentarse (to) sit down, *or* be seated (lit., 'to seat oneself')
hacerse, *or* ponerse (to) become
acordarse (de) (to) remember
olvidarse (to) forget
alegrarse (de) (to) be glad (of)
atreverse (a) (to) dare
reírse (de) (to) laugh (at)

c. Some intransitive verbs may be used as reflexives, with change of meaning.

ir (to) go	**dormirse** (to) fall asleep
irse (to) go away	**morir** (to) die
dormir (to) sleep	**morirse** (to) be dying, etc.

d. The reflexive construction is often used in Spanish where the passive voice is required in English.

Se dice.	It is said.
Aquí se habla español.	Spanish is spoken here.

e. The direct reflexive substitute for the passive is usually to be avoided if there is a personal subject. Thus, **se admira el hombre** means *the man admires himself*, and not *the man is admired;* but one can say, **se admira al hombre,** *the man is admired* (*one admires the man*), **se le admira,** *he is admired*, **se les trata con distinción,** *they are treated with distinction*, **se te llama,** *some one is calling you*, etc. In this construction, the pronouns other than **se** are in the dative.

f. The Spanish passive voice, formed with **ser** and a passive (past) participle, is used less often than the English passive voice. In general,

the Spanish passive voice is avoided in the present and imperfect tenses, and it is used in other tenses only when the agent is expressed, as in **la casa será (fué) construída por un buen arquitecto,** *the house will be (was) built by a good architect.* But *the house is being built by a good architect* would be expressed in Spanish by the active voice: **un buen arquitecto está construyendo** (or **construye**) **la casa.** One does not say **la casa es construída,** etc. **La casa está construída,** *the house is built,* implies that the construction of the house is completed. One may say **la casa se calienta por vapor,** *the house is warmed by steam,* since **por vapor** expresses the manner rather than the agent. By exception, the Spanish passive voice is frequently used, even in the present, with certain verbs of feeling, as in **es amado (temido) de todos,** *he is loved (feared) by all.*

137. In the plural a reflexive verb may become *reciprocal;* that is, several persons or things may be represented as acting on one another. Usually no distinction of form is made in Spanish between reflexive and reciprocal verbs; thus, **nosotros nos engañamos** may mean *we deceive ourselves,* or *we deceive one another.* Often, however, the meaning determines whether the verb is reflexive or reciprocal, as in **la primera vez que se vieron y se hablaron,** *the first time they saw each other and spoke to each other.*

a. A reciprocal verb may be strengthened and made explicit by the use of **el uno al otro** (**la una a la otra, los unos a los otros, las unas a las otras,** etc.).

Os engañáis el uno al otro.	You deceive each other.
Se aman las unas a las otras.	They love one another.
Se burlan el uno del otro.	They make fun of each other.

The article may be omitted, as in **se aborrecen unos a otros,** *they hate one another.*

138. When a verb has two personal pronoun objects, the indirect precedes the direct object (except that reflexive **se** always precedes another pronoun).

me lo da he gives it to me	**os las da** he gives them to you
te la da he gives it to you	**dámelo** give it to me
nos los da he gives them to us	**dánoslos** give them to us

a. If both pronoun objects are in the third person, **se** is used as indirect object in the place of **le** or **les**. Thus, instead of either **le lo da**, or **les lo da**, one says **se lo da**. This **se** is derived from an old dative form of the personal pronoun of the third person,[1] and is in no way related to the reflexive pronoun **se**.

b. When the direct object is a pronoun of the first or the second person, the indirect object is usually separated from the verb and assumes the prepositional form after **a**, *to*.

Me presenta a ellos.	He presents me to them.
Te presenta a mí.	He presents you to me.
Nos presentan a usted.	They present us to you.
Preséntame a él.	Present me to him.

139. Each of the indirect object-pronouns **le, les,** and **se** (= **le** or **les**) has several meanings: hence, to avoid ambiguity, it is often necessary to use two pronouns to express the same idea, — an indirect object-pronoun and the corresponding prepositional form with **a**.

Le da el libro a él (a ella, a usted). He gives the book to him (to her, to you).

Les da la casa a ellos (a ellas, a ustedes). He gives the house to them, *masc.* (to them, *fem.;* to you, *pl.*).

Se lo da a él (a ella, a usted, a ellos, a ellas, a ustedes). He gives it to him (to her, to you, to them, *masc.;* to them, *fem.;* to you, *pl.*).

a. This double construction is also used with either direct or indirect object-pronouns of the first, the second, or the third person, to add *emphasis*. The pronouns **me, te, le, la, lo, nos, os, los, las, les,** and **se** can not be made emphatic by being stressed; *give it to me,* with the stress on *me,* can not be translated by **dámelo,** with the stress on **me,** but must be expressed by **dámelo a mí,** with the stress on **mí.**

Te lo da a ti.	He gives it to *you.*
Dánosla a nosotros.	Give it to *us.*
Me quiere educar a mí también.	He wishes to educate *me* too.

The prepositional pronoun may precede the verb (except an imperative), and it is then still more emphatic.

A mí me lo da.	He gives it to me.

[1] Written **ge** in old Spanish.

This usage is often extended to nouns: **a mi padre no le gusta,** *it doesn't please my father.*

140. The following facts should also be noted:

a. The ethical dative, or "dative of interest," is much commoner in Spanish than in English.

Me tomo la libertad.	I take the liberty.
Me lo temo.	I fear so.
No te lo mates.	Do not kill him.
La gata cogió un ratón y se lo comió.	The cat caught a mouse and ate it.

b. The forms **la** and **las** may be used with the force of an indefinite pronoun.[1]

Él me la habrá de pagar.	He will pay me for it.
Los pretendientes se las prometen siempre felices.	Suitors always promise themselves happiness.

141. Verbs with Inceptive Endings and *-uir* Verbs. — Study §§ 242 and 257.

EXERCISES

A. 1. — ¡ Hombre, cuánto me alegro de encontrarte aquí ! ¿ Vienes a menudo ?

— Sí, me gusta porque se habla español y se come bien.

— A mí también. Yo vengo más temprano por lo común, pero hoy me levanté tarde. Fuí al teatro anoche y luego a casa de unos amigos. Me acosté a la una.

— Mira, sentémonos en aquel rincón.

— Este encuentro es oportuno porque quiero que leas una carta que recibí anteayer. ¿ Qué quieres para el desayuno ?

— Lo de siempre. Fruta, huevos, café y tostada.

— Yo menos. No quiero fruta ni huevos. Pero tú sigues el refrán: donde fueres haz lo que vieres. Ésta es la carta. Léela.

[1] It is not clear whether this **la** derives from the Latin neuter plural **illa,** or is merely the Spanish **la, cosa** or a similar word being understood. If it derives from neuter **illa,** then **las** is a plural form made by analogy with other Spanish plurals.

2. « Mi querido amigo:

« Como sé que te interesas mucho por este pueblo, quiero enterarte de lo ocurrido en él recientemente.

« Elisa Valdés y Antonio Durán se casaron el mes pasado. Te acuerdas de Antonio ¿ no? A nosotros no nos gustaba mucho porque siempre hablaba de sí. Pero ha cambiado. Ya no se alaba a sí mismo y se le admira por su benevolencia. Se ha hecho rico y gasta bastante protegiendo a los pobres. Pero no siempre les da dinero. Los hace trabajar y ganarse la vida. Por ejemplo, uno ha tenido que construir, destruir y volver a construir un asiento en el zaguán de su casa varias veces en diferente sitio y forma.

« Juan Morales se fué antes de terminar su bachillerato. ¡ Pobre chico ! Se dice que la familia perdió todo su dinero durante la guerra. Por eso él casi siempre estaba triste. Probablemente se hallará ahora en un gran apuro. Yo me alegraré de que prospere y vuelva por acá. Él y yo nos queríamos mucho. »

3. — Juan y Antonio se odiaban el uno al otro ¿ no?

— No se odiaban precisamente, pero no eran amigos íntimos. Un día Juan le pidió la bicicleta a Antonio. Éste no quiso prestársela. Dijo que se la había prometido a su hermano. Se enojaron. Antonio tenía algunos libros que Juan le había prestado y se los devolvió en seguida.

— Ea, vamos a desayunarnos ahora. Acabaré de leer la carta luego. Mozo, sírvase decirme si ha estado aquí mi otro amigo, el rubio.

— Hoy no; estuvo [1] ayer al mediodía.

— Démonos prisa. Tengo que marcharme pronto.

B. 1. ¿ Se habla español en la clase? 2. ¿ Le gusta a Vd. hablar español? 3. ¿ A qué hora se levanta Vd.? 4. ¿ A qué hora se acostó Vd. anoche? 5. ¿ Toma Vd. huevos por la mañana? 6. ¿ Sabe Vd. algún refrán es-

[1] = estuvo aquí.

pañol? 7. ¿ Quiénes se casaron? 8. ¿ Por qué no les gustaba Antonio a los dos amigos? 9. ¿ Por qué se le admira ahora? 10. ¿ A quién protege? 11. ¿ Qué ha tenido que hacer un pobre? 12. ¿ Quién se fué del pueblo? 13. ¿ Cuándo perdió la familia el dinero? 14. ¿ Quiénes se querían mucho? 15. ¿ Quiénes se odiaban el uno al otro? 16. ¿ Qué le pidió Antonio a Juan? 17. ¿ Qué dijo Antonio? 18. ¿ Qué le había prestado Juan a Antonio?

C. 1. *Make the verb reflexive where possible:* Yo alabo; tú engañas; él aborrece; presentamos a la señora; quejamos; ¿ llaman Pedro y Pablo? olvidó; sentí; acostamos; vamos mañana; compré un nuevo sombrero; ¡ muero ! te llama; les trata con distinción; no permite fumar aquí; acuesto y levanto temprano; Pedro acuesta y levanta tarde; ¿ ya marchó tu primo? no, pero piensa marchar pronto a España; es probable que quede allí; hallamos sin ocupación; vende esta casa y alquila la otra; calienta esta casa con vapor; casó con ella; querían mucho; las dos niñas abrazaron y besaron; todo el mundo sabe que no aman; dice que odian; lo temo; compré algunos dulces y los comí.

2. *Add the correct form of* **mismo** *or* **el uno . . . el otro:** Me (*masc.*) engaño, me (*fem.*) engaño, te (*masc.*) engañas, te (*fem.*) engañas, él se engaña, ella se engaña, (nosotros) nos engañamos, (nosotras) nos engañamos, (vosotros) os engañáis, (vosotras) os engañáis, ellos se engañan, ellas se engañan; Antonio se alaba; Ana se aborrece; Julia y Clara se aborrecen; Enrique y Pedro se engañan; las dos amigas se amaban tiernamente; Pablo hablaba siempre de sí; Carlos y Onofre hablaban siempre; los franceses y los alemanes se burlaban; amaos; ayudaos; las dos niñas se parecen mucho; este hombre no piensa sino en sí y no habla sino de sí.

3. *Substitute a pronoun for the noun:* Ayer me presenté a la señora; nunca me presenté a don Pablo; ¡ cómo se parece ella a la tía ! Antonio prometió enviarme el paquete por

correo; no me envió el paquete; envíeme Vd. el paquete lo más pronto posible; ahora le toca a Juan; yo creo que le toca a María; ¿ quieres prestarle la bicicleta a Pablo? préstale a Pablo la bicicleta; no quiero prestarle nada a Pablo; el profesor enseñó el español a Sofía y Trinidad; nunca me enseñó el español; no quieren venderle la casa; ¿ por qué no le venden Vds. la casa ? véndanle Vds. la casa hoy mismo.

D. 1. My cousin (*fem.*) and Anthony used to be very fond of each other. 2. But now they hate each other. 3. She says that Anthony is always talking about himself. 4. Sometimes he laughs at her. 5. She doesn't dare say anything, but she rejoices when the teacher scolds him. 6. This happens frequently. 7. The other day he forgot to rise when a lady entered the classroom. 8. The teacher became angry. 9. He scolded him and told him to go home. 10. But he didn't go home. 11. He went to the theater. 12. Some one informed his father of what (**lo que**) had happened.

13. The waiter brought me a letter. 14. I gave it to John. 15. I didn't give it to his father. 16. John wanted me to read it to him. 17. But I didn't read it to him. 18. He read it himself. 19. I told him: Anthony wrote to you, not to me. 20. What did he say in the letter? 21. Anthony wanted money to buy a new bicycle. 22. But John didn't want to send it to him.

23. Do you know those two young ladies? 24. I know the light-complexioned [one]. 25. Will you present me to her? 26. With pleasure. 27. She will probably present us to her friend. 28. Shall we invite [1] them to have breakfast with us? 29. Where can we go? 30. There is only one restaurant in this town. 31. But they say that they serve good meals there. 32. It will not be difficult to get fruit, eggs, coffee and toast. 33. Perhaps (**Quizás**) the young ladies have [2] already had breakfast. 34. They probably get up earlier than we [do].

35. Is the letter written? 36. — Yes, it was written by Mr. Heredia. 37. — Is Mr. Heredia loved by all? 38. — No, he is feared by all. 39. — Is this house warmed by steam? 40. — No, it is warmed by hot water.

[1] Use pres. ind. [2] Use pres. subj.

LESSON XXII

POSSESSIVES

142. Possessive Adjectives

SINGULAR

1*st Pers.* **mío** (–a, –os, –as) *or* **mi** (**mis**) my
2*d Pers.* **tuyo** (–a, –os, –as) *or* **tu** (**tus**) your, thy
3*d Pers.* **suyo** (–a, –os, –as) *or* **su** (**sus**) his, her, its, your

PLURAL

1*st Pers.* **nuestro** (–a, –os, –as) our
2*d Pers.* **vuestro** (–a, –os, –as) your
3*d Pers.* **suyo** (–a, os, –as) *or* **su** (**sus**) their, your

a. Before nouns, the apocopated forms **mi, tu,** and **su** are used; and after nouns the full forms, **mío, tuyo,** and **suyo. Nuestro** and **vuestro** are used either before or after nouns.

b. **Mío** (**mi**) is the possessive corresponding to **yo, tuyo** (**tu**) corresponds to **tú, nuestro** to **nosotros** (–as), **vuestro** to **vosotros** (–as), and **suyo** (**su**) to **él, ella, ellos** (–as), **usted,** and **ustedes.**

143. Possessive adjectives regularly precede their noun, and agree in gender and number with the thing possessed, not with the possessor.

nuestro caballo our horse	**nuestra casa** our house
nuestros caballos our horses	**nuestras casas** our houses

a. In certain indefinite expressions, and sometimes when emphatic, the possessive follows its noun.

Cierto amigo mío.	A certain friend of mine.
Algunos discípulos nuestros.	Some pupils of ours.
Los vicios tuyos.	Your vices.
A fe mía.	Upon my word.
A pesar nuestro.	In spite of us (ourselves).
No es culpa mía.	It is not my fault.

b. In direct address, **mío** is generally used with an unmodified noun in the singular, and either **mi** or **mío** with a noun modified by an adjective.

amigo mío my friend
mi querido amigo, *or* **querido amigo mío** my dear friend

144. When the thing possessed forms part of the possessor, and is the object of a verb, the possessive adjective is generally replaced by an indirect object-pronoun and the definite article.

Me corté el dedo.	I cut my finger.
Te salvó la vida.	He saved your life.
Se quitó el sombrero.	He took off his hat.

The same usage obtains with nouns.

(Le) salvó la vida a su amigo.	He saved his friend's life.
(Le) habían perdonado la vida a un hombre.	They had pardoned (spared) a man's life.
Voy a romper(le) la cabeza a ese abogado.	I am going to break that lawyer's head.

a. When the possessor is the subject of the verb, and no ambiguity is possible, the pronoun is omitted and the definite article alone is used instead of a possessive adjective.

Perdí el sombrero.	I lost my hat.
La niña abrió los ojos y levantó la cabeza.	The girl opened her eyes and raised her head.
Tengo los pies mojados y fríos.	My feet are wet and cold.

145. Possessive Pronouns

SINGULAR

1*st Pers.* **el mío (la mía, los míos, las mías)** mine
2*d Pers.* **el tuyo (la tuya, los tuyos, las tuyas)** yours, thine
3*d Pers.* **el suyo (la suya, los suyos, las suyas)** his, hers, its, *or* yours

PLURAL

1*st Pers.* **el nuestro (la nuestra, los nuestros, las nuestras)** ours
2*d Pers.* **el vuestro (la vuestra, los vuestros, las vuestras)** yours
3*d Pers.* **el suyo (la suya, los suyos, las suyas)** theirs *or* yours

Note that the Spanish possessive pronouns usually require the definite article, while the English do not.

a. Possessive pronouns, like possessive adjectives, agree in gender and number with the things possessed.

Mi casa es más grande que la tuya, pero prefiero la tuya a la mía.	My house is larger than yours, but I prefer yours to mine.

b. **Los míos** often means *my people;* **los tuyos,** *your people,* etc. **Lo mío** means *mine, what is mine;* **lo tuyo,** *yours, what is yours,* etc.

146. **Suyo** and **su** have several meanings; hence, in order to avoid ambiguity, it is often necessary to use **de** and the proper personal pronoun instead of **suyo** and **su.**

(1) Instead of **tengo su libro** one would then say:

tengo el libro de él	I have *his* book [1]
tengo el libro de ella	I have *her* book
tengo el libro de usted	I have *your* book
tengo el libro de ellos	I have *their* (*masc.*) book
tengo el libro de ellas	I have *their* (*fem.*) book
tengo el libro de ustedes	I have *your* (*pl.*) book

(2) And instead of **tengo el suyo** one would say:

tengo el de él	I have *his*
tengo el de ella	I have *hers*
tengo el de usted	I have *yours*
tengo el de ellos	I have *theirs* (*masc.*)
tengo el de ellas	I have *theirs* (*fem.*)
tengo el de ustedes	I have *yours* (*pl.*)

a. The same construction is used with the possessive case of nouns.

Tengo el libro de Miguel.	I have Michael's book.
Tengo el de Miguel.	I have Michael's.

b. The definite article is usually omitted before a possessive pronoun (or noun) in predicate.

Esta pluma es mía.	This pen is mine.
Esa pluma es de usted.	That pen is yours.
Aquella pluma es de Miguel.	That pen (over there) is Michael's.

But the article is used to make an emphatic distinction.

Esta pluma es la mía (la de usted, la de Miguel).	*This* pen (not the other) is the one that belongs to *me* (to *you*, to *Michael*).

[1] One may also say **tengo su libro de él (ella, ellos, ellas, usted, ustedes).**

147. Irregular Verbs. — **Ser** and **Estar**, (*to*) *be*, and **Haber** and **Tener**, (*to*) *have*. Study §§ 258, 260, 259, and 261.

148. Idiomatic Expressions

tiene razón, he is right.
no tiene razón, he is wrong.
tengo ganas de visitar a Chile, I am anxious to visit Chile.
¡ tenga usted cuidado ! look out ! take care !
no tenga usted cuidado, don't worry.
no tiene remedio, there's no help for it.
no tiene nada de particular, there's nothing strange about it.
tenga usted la bondad (**de**), please.
tengo que hacerlo, I have to do it.
tengo escrita la carta, I have the letter already written.
no lo hay, there isn't any.
hay que tener cuidado, one must take care.
¿ qué he de hacer ? what am I to do ?
ha de ser muy pobre, he must be very poor.
soy de Madrid, I am a native of Madrid.
esta finca es del Señor G., this plantation belongs to Mr. G.
es de notar, it should be noted.
estoy en (*or* **de**) **pie,** I stand.
estoy parado, I stand still.
estoy para partir, I am about to leave.
estoy por partir, I am inclined to leave.

EXERCISES

A. 1. — ¿ Adónde quiere Vd. llevarme ?

— A casa de Pedro.

— Yo creí que íbamos a la de Vd.

— Como le parezca. Me figuré que le gustaría ver la de él. Vd. sabe que acaban de construirla. Es muy bonita.

— Bueno. ¿ Vamos en mi automóvil o en el suyo ?

— En el mío. Ahí está. ¿ Sabe Vd. que Pedro vendió el suyo ?

— No lo sabía. ¿ Por qué ?

— Ya era algo viejo. Piensa comprar otro.

— ¿ Le costó mucho a Vd. este automóvil ?

— A mí no. Yo pagué trescientos pesos. Papá pagó el resto: unos quinientos pesos.

2. Cuando nos acerquemos quiero que Vd. saque una

fotografía de la casa. Mire, ya se puede ver el techo. La casa tiene tres pisos, pero no parece tan alta como la nuestra. ¿ No le gusta la fachada ? Es muy bonita. Las persianas la embellecen mucho. Tiene muchas piezas. En el piso bajo, como verá Vd., además de la sala, el comedor y la cocina con su despensa, hay un gabinete que sirve de despacho y biblioteca. En el piso principal están el cuarto de baño y los dormitorios, éstos muy bien amueblados. El de Pedro no es muy grande, pero está bien arreglado. La cama, el tocador, la mesita y las sillas son de caoba muy fina de Cuba. Ea, ya estamos. Allí veo a Pedro que nos hace señas como un semáforo.

3. — Si Vds. hubieran llegado antes — nos decía Pedro muy agitado — habrían presenciado un incidente dramático. Estaba yo hablando con un vecino nuestro cuando oí gritos de socorro. Temiendo una desgracia y deseando llegar a tiempo, dejé a mi vecino y eché a correr hacia el lago. Aunque en la carrera perdí el sombrero, no paré. En un santiamén llegué a la orilla, pero tarde. Otro me había arrebatado la gloria.

Un niñito estaba jugando con un vaporcito, se inclinó demasiado y cayó al agua. La madre empezó a gritar y un hombre que estaba cerca se metió al lago y sacó al niño. Esto fué todo.

El niño había tragado un poco de agua, pero no sufrió mucho. Pronto abrió los ojos y dijo: « ¿ Dónde está el vapor ? » Esto hizo sonreír a la madre. Entonces ella se volvió hacia el hombre que le había salvado al niño y le dió las gracias. También le invitó a la casa.

— Ahora no puede ser, señora — dijo él — porque tengo los pies mojados. Pero me gustará venir pronto porque su esposo y yo somos antiguos amigos. El me salvó la vida a mí una vez.

B. 1. ¿ Adónde van los dos amigos ? 2. ¿ Tiene Vd. auto-

móvil? 3. ¿ Cuánto cuesta un automóvil? 4. ¿ Le gusta a Vd. sacar fotografías? 5. ¿ Cuántos pisos tiene la casa de Vd.? 6. ¿ Tiene persianas? 7. ¿ Cuántas piezas tiene la casa? 8. ¿ Dónde están los dormitorios? 9. ¿ Qué muebles tiene Vd. en su dormitorio? 10. ¿ Con quién hablaba Pedro? 11–12. ¿ Qué temía (¿ Qué perdió) Pedro? 13. ¿ Quién cayó al agua? 14. ¿ Quién empezó a gritar? 15. ¿ Quién sacó al niño del lago? 16. ¿ Qué dijo el niño cuando abrió los ojos? 17. ¿ Por qué no podía el hombre ir a la casa?

C. 1. *Translate:* Whose book is this? — It is mine. — Which of the books is yours? — This book is mine. Mine is red. You have my book and I have yours. — No, sir; you have your book and I have mine. My friend, I believe (that) you have my book. A certain friend of mine told me so (**lo**). I am going to break his head. Did he read her letter? — No, she read his letter. Do you prefer your house to mine? — Yes, I prefer mine to yours. Which house [1] is yours? Mine is the white [one] that we see from here (**desde aquí**). Did you cut your finger? — Yes, I cut my finger yesterday. — Did you lose your hat? — Yes, I lost my hat this morning. I opened my eyes and raised my head. My hands were cold. I closed my eyes and went to sleep.

2. *Substitute for the dash the proper form of the verb in parenthesis:* (escribir) Le di papel para que —— la carta. Le pedí que la —— en seguida. Prometió ——la. Pero él no la ——. Quisiera que él la —— hoy. Deseo que él la —— hoy mismo. Si tuviera pluma y tinta, yo mismo la ——. Quisiera ——la ahora mismo. Pero es mejor que él la ——. ¡ Ojalá que la —— pronto !

(Venir) Cuando —— a verme, le recibiré cordialmente. Espero que —— pronto. Pero temo que no —— hoy. Si —— hoy, le recibiría cordialmente. Dijo que —— hoy. ¡ Ojalá que —— ! Con tal que —— pronto, le perdonaré.

[1] **¿ Qué casa . . . ? or ¿ Cuál de las casas . . . ?**

Me quedaré aquí hasta que ——. Si —— pronto, me alegraré.

(Vender) No —— Vd. el automóvil. Si lo ——, me enfadaría. Le suplico que no lo ——. Yo quisiera que Vd. no lo —— nunca. Espere Vd. algunos días antes que lo ——. ¿ Ya lo —— Vd.? Sí, ya lo ——. Siento muchísimo que lo —— Vd. Si Vd. me lo hubiera ——, le habría pagado más.

D. 1. A friend of mine bought (himself) an automobile. 2. It cost him five hundred dollars. 3. But it was not new. 4. One day we were riding in the country when a boy suddenly appeared in the road. 5. My friend tried to stop the car. 6. But the brakes were defective. 7. In spite of himself he ran over the boy. 8. However, the latter was not badly hurt. 9. My friend was very angry. 10. He said to me: "I am going to see the man who sold me this car, and I am going to break his head." 11. A man who saw the accident said to us: "It was not your fault. 12. The boy didn't see the automobile."

13. The boy was not suffering much. 14. We took him to his house. 15. It was a small house, with a low roof. 16. And the rooms were well furnished. 17. His mother opened the door [for] us. 18. She began to cry when she saw the boy. 19. But he said to her: "It was my fault, mother (**mamá**), but I am not seriously hurt." 20. We carried the boy to his bedroom. 21. We took his clothes off, and put him to bed. 22. Then I went out to look for a physician. 23. There was not [any] telephone in the house. 24. My friend remained in the house. 25. When I returned with the physician, the boy was sitting[1] on the bed chatting with his mother and my friend.

26. The physician was [a] friend of ours. 27. I asked him: "Will the boy have to stay in bed long?" 28. "No," he said, "I am glad to tell you that-he-will-not.[2] 29. Provided he is careful, he'll be out the day after tomorrow. 30. Your efforts saved his life. 31. Are you going back now? 32. Come in my car. 33. You can leave yours here. 34. A mechanic can come and (**a**) adjust the brakes."

[1] **estaba sentado.** [2] **que no.**

LESSON XXIII

DEMONSTRATIVES

149. Demonstrative Adjectives

este (**–a, –os, –as**) this
ese (**–a, –os, –as**) that
aquel (**aquella, –os, –as**) that

a. A demonstrative adjective regularly precedes its noun: **esta mujer,** *this woman.*

b. The demonstrative adjectives are usually repeated before each noun to which they refer: **este hombre y esta mujer,** *this man and (this) woman.*

150. **Este** denotes what is near the speaker; **ese,** what is near the person addressed; and **aquel,** what is remote from both. In reference to time, **este** denotes present time; **ese,** a near period; and **aquel,** remote time.

esta pluma que yo tengo this pen which I have
esa pluma que tú tienes that pen which you have
aquella pluma que él tiene that pen which he has
esta semana this week
ese mes that month
aquel año that (remote) year

151. Demonstrative Pronouns

éste (**–a, –os, –as**) this (one)
ése (**–a, –os, –as**) that (one)
aquél (**aquélla, –os, –as**) that (one)
esto this
eso that
aquello that

The masculine and feminine forms take the accent; the neuter (**esto, eso, aquello**) do not. The neuter pronouns do not represent a noun, but a whole phrase, sentence, or idea (compare with **ello**).

Aquella casa es más alta que ésta. That house is taller than this one.
No me gustan estas manzanas; prefiero aquéllas. I do not like these apples; I prefer those (over there).

Ésos son míos.	Those (near you) are mine.
¿ Crees esto?	Do you believe this (which I have just told)?
No comprendo eso.	I do not understand that (which you have just told me).
Aquello parece imposible.	That (affair of which we are told) seems impossible.

a. **Éste** sometimes means *the latter*, and **aquél** *the former*.

b. The English pronoun *that* (not denoting a specific object) is **esto**, when it denotes what has to do with the speaker: **¿ crees esto?** *do you believe that (which I have just told you)?* An unemphatic *that* is often not to be expressed in Spanish: **será magnífico,** *that will be fine.*

c. In correspondence, **en (de, a) ésta** means *in (from, to) the writer's town*, and **en (de, a) ésa** means *in (from, to) the correspondent's town*, **ciudad,** *town*, or **plaza,**[1] *market*, being understood: **salí ayer de ésa y llegué hoy a ésta,** *I left your town yesterday, and arrived here today.*

152. Before a relative clause, and before a prepositional phrase, **el (la, lo, las, los)** is generally used instead of a demonstrative or personal pronoun.[2]

El que desea mucho siempre es pobre.	He who desires much, is always poor.
Esta muchacha es la que usted buscaba.	This girl is the one (that) you were looking for.
Aquellos caballos son los que vimos ayer.	Those horses are the ones (that) we saw yesterday.
Lo que dice es verdad.	What (*or* that which) he says is true.
El de la barba.	The one with the beard.
La pluma de acero y la de oro.	The steel pen and the gold one (lit., 'The pen of steel and that of gold').
El perro de usted y el de su amigo.	Your dog and that of your friend (Your dog and your friend's).
Lo de ayer.	The affair of yesterday.

[1] In Mexico, **plaza** often means *village*, or *small town*.

[2] When thus used, **el** is sometimes called a pronoun, but it seems best to call it an adjective when it limits the application of an adjective, a phrase, or a clause, used substantively: as in **el blanco,** *the white one;* **el de la capa verde,** *the one with the green cloak;* **el que vino ayer,** *the one that came yesterday.* Note the same use of the adjective **aquel,** given below in *a*.

a. The demonstrative adjective **aquel** may be used instead of **el** (**la**, etc.). This occurs often when the following relative is the object of a preposition.

Aquella a quien he escrito la carta.	The one to whom I have written the letter.
Aquel de la capa verde.	That one with the green cloak.
Aquello de ayer.	That affair of yesterday.

153. Irregular Verbs

dar (to) give	**oír** (to) hear
saber (to) know	**ver** (to) see

Study §§ 263, 267, 276, and 280.

154. Saber. (*To*) *know*, meaning (*to*) *have knowledge of*, (*to*) *be aware of*, is **saber** (**saber** does not take a personal object); meaning (*to*) *be acquainted with*, it is **conocer.**

¿ Sabes que es verdad?	Do you know that it is true?
¿ Conoces a aquel joven?	Do you know that young man?

a. **Saber** also means (*to*) *know how*,[1] (*to*) *learn* (in the sense of (*to*) *get knowledge of*); **saber a** means (*to*) *taste of*, (*to*) *savor of*.

No sabe nadar.	He doesn't know how to swim.
Supe que no pudiste venir.	I learned that you couldn't come.
Sabe a pescado.	It tastes of fish.

b. Can, meaning *know how*, is **saber**: *can he read and write?* **¿ sabe leer y escribir?**

155. Idiomatic Expressions

dar voces, (to) call out, (to) shout.
dar los buenos días, (to) wish good day.
ella le dió el sí, she agreed to marry him.
dar a saber (a conocer), (to) make known.
¿ ya diste de comer a los caballos? have you already fed the horses?
dar un paseo, (to) take a walk.
dió en el blanco, he hit the mark.
la ventana da a la calle, the window faces the street.
me doy por vencido, I give it up.

[1] *To know how* is **saber como**, when the main and the dependent verbs have different subjects, as in **yo sé como viven**, *I know how they live.* And also when the dependent clause is an indirect question, as in **no sé cómo puedo hacerlo**, *I do not know how I can do it.*

luego darán las doce, it will soon strike twelve.
me dió la fiebre amarilla, I caught the yellow fever.
no sabe nada, he doesn't know anything.
hacer saber, (to) make known.
no sé qué contestar, I do not know what to answer.
¡ oye ! *or* **¡ oiga !** listen! hear! I declare!
oigo subir a alguno, I hear some one coming up.
oyó gemir a los pobres cautivos, she heard the poor captives groan.
me oí llamar por alguno, I heard some one call me; I heard myself called by name.
vi caer a mis compañeros, I saw my companions fall.
no tengo nada que ver con eso, I haven't anything to do with that.

EXERCISES

A. Querida amiga mía:

Llegué a ésta el martes pasado. Pero ya puedo decirte mucho de lo que hay por aquí, en particular de las tiendas. Éstas son las mejores que he visto. Voy a describirte un paseo que di por ellas ayer con Lolita.

Primero fuimos a una guantería. Vi unos guantes de gamuza muy finos y los compré. Dejé los de cabritilla que llevaba para que me los limpiasen.

En una zapatería un dependiente muy atento se nos acercó y nos preguntó: — ¿ En qué puedo servirles, señoritas ? — Quiero ver esos zapatos de charol que están en el escaparate, los de tacón bajo, — dijo Lolita. — En un momento se los muestro, — contestó el dependiente. Sé que les gustarán. — Pero los que sacó el dependiente no eran los que quería Lolita y ella no los compró.

Lo que más me gusta es el bazar principal. Estábamos en él, cuando oímos gritar: — ¡ Oiga ! ¡ oiga ! — Era un dependiente que daba voces. Una mujer salía sin pagar lo que había comprado. — Esto yo no lo compré aquí — oí decir a la pobre mujer. — Yo no tengo nada que ver con eso, — respondió el dependiente. — Pues ahí está lo que me pidió por las medias. — Sí, pero falta un dólar. — Ah, lo siento, —

dijo la mujer y le dió al dependiente un billete. Lolita se acercó a ella y le dió los buenos días. Era una antigua criada suya.

Después de hacer algunas compras subimos al restaurante. Éste da al parque público. Nos sentamos junto a la ventana. Podíamos ver y oír hablar a la gente que pasaba por el parque. Al lado nuestro estaba sentada una señora con dos niños. Daba de comer a uno de éstos. El otro decía: — No me gusta eso. Sabe a jabón. Yo creo que aquí no saben guisar. — La madre se enfadó y le regañó. Pronto acabamos de comer y bajamos. Habían dado ya las dos. Salimos del bazar y nos dirigimos a un cine.[1]

Hazles saber a mis amigos que volveré la semana que viene.

Ya sabes que te quiere mucho tu amiga,

Adela.

B. 1. ¿ Quién escribe la carta? 2. ¿ Qué se describe en la carta? 3. ¿ Adónde fueron primero? 4. ¿ Para qué dejó los guantes de cabritilla? 5. ¿ Qué se vende en una zapatería? 6. ¿ Quién se les acercó en la zapatería? 7. ¿ Qué preguntó el dependiente? 8. ¿ Qué clase de zapatos quería Lolita? 9. ¿ Qué le gusta más a Adela? 10. ¿ Quién daba voces? 11. ¿ Qué dijo la pobre mujer? 12. ¿ Qué había comprado la pobre mujer? 13. ¿ Quién era ella? 14. ¿ Adónde subieron las dos amigas? 15. ¿ Dónde se sentaron? 16. ¿ Qué podían ver? 17. ¿ Qué decía uno de los niños? 18. ¿ Adónde fueron después de salir del restaurante?

C. 1. *Translate:* Is this my hat? No, that hat is mine, and this is yours. Whose is that hat [over there]? That hat is John's. Is this hat larger than that [one]? No, that hat is larger than this [one]. I do not understand that. Is this girl the [one] that I saw yesterday? — Yes, she is the [one] that you saw at Mrs. Herrera's.

[1] **Teatro cinematógrafo.** In some countries it is also called colloquially a **cinema.**

2. *Substitute a demonstrative for the dash:* —— lápiz que yo tengo. —— pluma que tú tienes. —— casa en que ellos viven. —— año en Italia fué terrible. Prefiero —— clima a aquél. Yo no; prefiero —— clima a éste. Salimos ayer de —— y llegamos hoy a ——. ¿ Cree Vd. ——? No comprendo ——. No me gustan estas peras; prefiero ——. —— peras son más maduras que ——.

3. *Substitute a personal pronoun for the noun object:* Aprenda Vd. la lección. ¿ Aprendió Vd. la lección? ¿ Quién le enseñó la lección? Enséñele Vd. la lección. ¿ No quiere Vd. aprender la lección? ¿ No quiere Vd. enseñarle la lección? Sí, le enseñaré la lección. Tráigame Vd. el papel. Sírvase Vd. traerme el papel. Le traeré a Vd. el papel con mucho gusto. Ya le traje a Vd. el papel. Ahora tráiganos la tinta. Si no nos trae la tinta, no podremos escribir. Les traeré a Vds. la tinta en un momento. Voy a traerles la tinta inmediatamente.

D. 1. Do you know those two men? 2. The ones that are sitting at the small table? 3. Yes, I know them. 4. They are friends of mine. 5. I mean[1] the ones who have just come in. 6. They are near the woman to whom I was telling the affair of yesterday. 7. I know the one who is nearer the window. 8. He is [a] friend of my cousin Adele. 9. The poor man! He is very fond of her. 10. Last year she agreed to (**en**) marry him. 11. But they didn't marry. 12. He then took (= made) a trip through Europe and Asia. 13. In China he caught the typhoid fever. 14. But he soon recovered. 15. He returned when he learned (**supo**) that she was very ill. 16. I think they will marry soon.

17. I am not acquainted with the one with the beard. 18. I have seen him before, but I have not been introduced (presented) to him. 19. I know that he is very rich. 20. He owns one of the largest shops in this town. 21. He also owns many houses. 22. I think that this is one of his buildings. 23. He came to this country when he was young and poor. 24. They say that he doesn't know

[1] *Use* **querer decir.**

[how] to read or (**ni**) write. 25. Do you believe that? 26. I don't know what to answer. 27. I don't understand how he can manage his property if he can not read or write.

LESSON XXIV

RELATIVES

156. Relative Pronouns and Adjectives

que who, which, that	**quien** who
el cual *or* **el que** who, which	**cuanto** all that

a. A relative pronoun agrees in gender and number with its antecedent.

b. A relative pronoun is sometimes omitted in English, but never in Spanish: *the man I saw = the man that (whom) I saw,* **el hombre que vi.**

c. An English relative clause sometimes ends with a preposition; in Spanish the preposition must precede the pronoun it governs: *the house that we live in = the house in which we live,* **la casa en que vivimos.**

157. **Que,** *who, which, that,* is invariable, and as subject or object of a verb it may refer to persons or things; it is the most common of the Spanish relative pronouns.

La muchacha que cose.	The girl that is sewing.
El indio que [1] mataron.	The Indian whom they killed.
Los libros que están sobre la mesa.	The books that are on the table.
La facilidad con que escribe.	The ease with which he writes.
La viuda, que amaba tiernamente a su marido, le olvidó en breve.	The widow, who dearly loved her husband, soon forgot him.

a. After a preposition, **que** refers to things, and **quien** (**quienes**) to persons.

La casa en que vivo.	The house in which I live.
El hombre a quien escribí.	The man to whom I wrote.

158. **el cual** (**la cual, los cuales, las cuales, lo cual**) } who, which
el que (**la que, los que, las que, lo que**) }

[1] Note the omission of **a**, although **que** refers to a specific person.

The masculine and feminine forms refer to persons or things; the neuter forms refer only to a whole phrase, sentence, or idea.

Instead of **que**, either **el cual** (**la cual**, etc.) or **el que** (**la que**, etc.) is regularly used in cases of ambiguity or emphasis.

He escrito a la hija del señor Martínez, la cual está enferma. I have written to Mr. Martinez' daughter, who is ill.

Hallé en el bolsillo cincuenta pesos en moneda de oro y plata, los cuales (**los que**) **di a mi padre.** I found in the purse fifty dollars in gold and silver coin, which I gave to my father.

El profesor me escribe que te comportas bien, lo cual (**lo que**) **me agrada muchísimo.** Your master (teacher) writes me that you behave well, which pleases me greatly.

a. Moreover, **el cual** or **el que** is generally used when the relative is governed by **por** or **sin**,[1] or by a preposition of two or more syllables. After a compound preposition, **el cual** is preferable to **el que.**

Las razones por las cuales (**las que**) **se decidió.** The reasons on account of which he decided.

La ciudad hacia la cual (**la que**) **marchaba el ejército.** The city toward which the army was marching.

El edificio en frente del cual me estaba esperando mi amigo. The building in front of which my friend was awaiting me.

b. **Lo cual** or **lo que** is regularly used as the neuter relative; **que** is rarely neuter: **le presté todos mis libros, lo cual** (**lo que**) **le dió mucho placer,** *I lent him all my books, which pleased him greatly.* For the use of **lo que**, meaning *that which, what*, see Demonstrative Pronouns, § 152.

c. There is usually little choice between **el cual** and **el que,** except that **el cual** is used the oftener in literary language.

Remark. — It should be noted that **el que** has two meanings, *who* (as explained above) or *he who* (as explained in § 152). In the first case, the article modifies only the relative pronoun; in the second case it modifies the entire relative clause.

159. Quien (**quienes**), *who*, in modern Spanish refers only to persons or personified things.

[1] In referring to persons, **quien** may be used with **por** and **sin.**

(1) After a preposition,[1] **quien** is used instead of **que**, in referring to persons; as in **el amigo de quien hablamos** *the friend of whom we are speaking.*

(2) When **quien** is the subject or the direct object of a verb, it either introduces a clause which is not restrictive of the antecedent, or it includes its antecedent.

Vi a tu señor padre, quien me lo contó todo.	I saw your father, who told me all.
Me lo contó todo tu señor padre, a quien vi poco ha.	Your father, whom I saw a short while ago, told me all.
Quien te adula te agravia.	He who flatters you, insults you.
No tengo a quien dirigirme.	I have not any one to whom to apply.

Cf. **vi al hombre que te lo contó todo,** *I saw the man who* (restrictive) *told you all.*

a. **Quien** sometimes serves to indicate the number of its antecedent, or the fact that the antecedent is a person.

Me topé con el abuelo de estos niños, quien los buscaba en todas partes. I ran across the grandfather of these children, who was looking for them everywhere.

Ayer vi al dueño de la casa, quien está en esta ciudad. Yesterday I saw the owner of the house, who is in this city.

b. **Quien** is equivalent to either one of the two **el que**'s (see §§ 152 and 158).

Quien (El que) calla otorga.	He who is silent gives consent.
Llamé a un mozo, a quien (al que) entregué la carta.	I called a waiter, to whom I gave the letter.

But in colloquial language, **quien** is rarely used as the subject or the direct object of a verb, save in a few proverbial expressions; in its stead **el cual** or **el que** is used.

c. Correlative **quienes . . . quienes** means *some . . . some:* **quienes lloraban, quienes gemían,** *some were weeping and some were groaning.*

160. Cuanto (**-a, -os, -as**), *how much, how many, all that,* is used as pronoun or adjective.

[1] After a compound preposition, **el cual** is preferable to **quien.**

Le ofrecí cuanto dinero tenía.	I offered him all the money that I had.
Cuantos entraron en el buque perecieron.	All that entered the ship perished.

161. Cuyo (**–a, –os, –as**), *whose, of whom, of which,* is a relative possessive adjective. It agrees in gender and number with the thing possessed, and it may refer to persons or things.

La señora cuyas amigas han llegado.	The lady whose friends have arrived.
Un lugar de cuyo nombre no me acuerdo.	A place the name of which I do not remember.

162. The adverb **donde,** *where,* is often used as equivalent to a preposition plus a relative, and sometimes with the preposition expressed, as in **la casa donde** (**en donde**) **vivo,** *the house in which I live.*

163. Irregular Verbs. — **Ir,** (*to*) *go,* and **Venir,** (*to*) *come.* Study §§ 269 and 270.

a. Go and (followed by a verb) is **ir a**; *come and* is **venir a.**

Vaya usted a decírselo.	Go and tell him.
Venga a verlo.	Come and see it.

164. Idiomatic Expressions

va a llover, it is going to rain.
vamos a ver, let us see.
la noche va obscureciendo, the night keeps (is) growing darker.
ir a pie, (to) go afoot, (to) walk.
ir en coche, (to) drive (in a carriage).
ir a caballo, (to) ride horseback.
la niña iba creciendo, the little girl kept growing.
iba montado en una mula, he was riding a mule.
la semana que viene, next week.

EXERCISES

A. Ése es el caballero cuya casa acabo de comprar. Es el señor que vió Vd. ayer en casa de mi primo. ¿ Sabe Vd. las razones por las cuales se ha decidido a marcharse de este

pueblo? Creo que es por su hija menor, la cual está muy enferma. Ha vendido cuantas casas tenía aquí. La casa en que vive ahora no es suya. Piensa ir a California en automóvil. Por supuesto, no podrá ir a pie. — No, es[1] demasiado lejos, pero podría ir en tren. — Ahí viene mi primo, quien me lo ha contado todo.

El hombre que vieron ustedes conmigo es Federico Carson, médico. Dice que la enfermedad de que sufre la hija del Sr. Reyes es grave. El pobre padre está tan desesperado que ha ofrecido al médico cuanto dinero tiene si la cura. El Dr. Carson ama a la joven, lo cual explica su interés. Pronto partirán el padre y la hija para un buen sitio que les he recomendado. No teniendo a quien dirigirse, me consultaron a mí. Yo escribí a un amigo que ha viajado mucho por California. Él contestó en seguida con muchos detalles, lo cual les agradó mucho.

Iba ya obscureciendo cuando los viajeros se acercaban al pueblo. — ¿Cuándo llegamos por fin, papá? — No sé, hija mía; Juan es quien podrá decirnos. — Yo tampoco sé con certeza, dijo Juan, pero tal vez aquellas luces son las del pueblo hacia el cual nos dirigimos. — Oh, parece que va a llover. — No tengas miedo. Mientras vaya el sol aquí con nosotros ni obscurece ni llueve de veras. — ¿Se supone que el sol soy yo? — ¿Quién si no tú, hija mía? — Oye, papá, ya sabes que a veces, como dice el refrán, quien te adula te agravia. — Hija, cuidado que no te equivoques y digas «agrava». Ea, creo que vamos llegando a nuestro destino. Sí, allí está el hotel.

B. 1. ¿En qué casa vive usted? 2. ¿Quién se ha decidido a marcharse? 3. ¿Quién está enfermo? 4. ¿Adónde piensan ir el señor y su hija? 5. ¿Cómo piensan ir? 6. ¿Ha estado Vd. en California? 7. ¿Cómo se llama el médico?

[1] **Es,** and not **está,** is used in **es lejos,** *it is far away,* **es cerca,** *it is near by,* etc., as these expressions refer to position in the abstract and not to definite position.

8. ¿ Qué ha ofrecido el padre? 9. ¿ Por qué se interesa el médico? 10. ¿ Para dónde partirán? 11. ¿ A quién escribió Vd.? 12. ¿ Cuándo se acercaban al pueblo el padre y su hija? 13. ¿ Qué no sabían el padre ni Juan? 14. ¿ Quién cree que va a llover? 15. ¿ Qué refrán cita la joven?

C. 1. *Substitute a relative pronoun for the dash:* El hombre —— vino hoy. El hombre —— encontré esta mañana. La mujer —— entró en la casa. La mujer —— vi ayer. El caballero a —— conocí en Madrid. La señora a —— escribimos esta tarde. La ciudad hacia —— marchó el ejército. La mesa detrás de —— estaba sentado el profesor. Escribí a la hija del señor González —— está muy enferma. Éstas son las razones por —— nos decidimos a vender la casa. Me escriben que tú eres aplicado, —— me agrada sumamente. La señora —— llegó ayer. La señora a —— hablábamos. El libro de —— hablábamos. La casa —— compró Vd. ¿ Conoce Vd. al autor de esta obra, —— es gran poeta en mi opinión? Esta niña es —— me lo dijo todo. Estos muchachos son —— se lo llevaron sin decir nada. Dígame Vd. —— quiere. Me dijo la verdad —— (*neut.*) me extrañó. Les ofrecí —— dinero tenía. Un lugar de —— nombre no me acuerdo. El caballero —— amigos han venido. —— entraron en el buque perecieron. —— calla otorga. Llamé a un mozo a —— entregué el paquete. El profesor —— me enseñó el español. Mi madre a —— amo tiernamente. No tengo a —— pedir dinero. Gasté todo el dinero —— poseía. Me sorprende la facilidad con —— Vd. gasta dinero. —— lo gasta todo, nada tiene. Te ofrezco —— dinero tengo. ¿ Dónde están los libros —— Vd. compró? No carece de razón —— dice Vd. Cuando el buque se fué a fondo, —— gritaban, —— lloraban.

D. 1. Let us see; where is the boy who wrote this theme? 2. I should like to know to whom it belongs. 3. It has no name. 4. I think it was my cousin Thomas who wrote it. 5. Why hasn't

he come to get it? 6. It has been on the table since the day before yesterday. 7. He hasn't been able to come to school for several days. 8. He went to visit his grandfather, whose house burned last month. 9. Where does the grandfather live now? 10. I don't know; he is rich, and has several houses. 11. The one that burned was in the country. 12. He lost all (that) there was in it.

13. I am going to read to you part of the theme that he wrote. 14. The theme describes the fire, which apparently was spectacular. 15. The ease with which this boy writes is admirable. 16. "The room in which we are is large, and is well lighted. 17. Everything that there is in it shows the opulence of those who live in the house. 18. The furniture, which is of very fine wood, is tastefully arranged. 19. There is a fire, near which is seated an old man. 20. Stretched out at his feet on the soft carpet is a dog. 21. The old man has been reading a book which is on a table before him. 22. He has been dozing, and now he awakes, and puts on his glasses, without which, it seems, he can not read. 23. Suddenly the dog, which is not sleeping, lifts his head, and sniffs. 24. Then he rises and runs towards the door. 25. A noise is heard, and then the cry, Fire!" 26. [There] follows the description of the excitement, and of the efforts to (**para**) extinguish the fire.

LESSON XXV

INTERROGATIVES

165. Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives

qué what	**cuál** which
quién who	**cuánto** (–a) how much

The interrogatives take the accent in both direct and indirect questions.

166. **Qué,** *what,* may be used as pronoun or adjective. As a pronoun, it refers to things, and is neuter.

¿ Qué es eso?	What is that?
¿ Qué dijo?	What did he say?

¿ Qué hora es?	What time is it?
¿ Qué hombre es éste?	What man is this?
Pregunta qué pasajeros han llegado.	He asks what passengers have arrived.

a. In exclamations, **qué** is *what* (*a*) before an attributive, and *how* before a predicate adjective: **¡ qué linda luna !** *what a pretty moon!* **¡ qué pálido estás !** *how pale you are!* To add emphasis, **tan,** *so,* or **más,** *more,* may be placed before the attributive adjective, which then follows its noun: **¡ qué día tan hermoso (más hermoso) !** *what a beautiful day!*

167. Quién (quiénes), *who,* is used only as a pronoun, and refers only to persons. Interrogative *whose* is usually **de quién.**

¿ Quién llama?	Who is knocking?
Pregunta quiénes eran las señoras.	He asks who the ladies were.
¿ De quién es aquella hermosa casa?	Whose is that beautiful house?
¿ De quién es este caballo?	Whose horse is this? (lit., 'Of whom is this horse?')

168. Cuál (cuáles), *which,* is chiefly used as a pronoun; it may refer to persons or things.

¿ Cuál de las plumas quiere usted?	Which pen (lit., 'Which of the pens') do you wish?
¿ A cuáles de mis amigos ha visto Vd. hoy?	Which of my friends have you seen today?

a. **Cuál** is rarely used adjectively, as in **¿ cuál casa prefieres?** *which house do you prefer?* **¿ Qué casa prefieres?** and **¿ cuál de las casas prefieres?** are the more common constructions.

b. When *what* stands in the predicate, it is usually to be expressed by **cuál: ¿ cuál es la fecha de la carta?** *what is the date of the letter?* **¿ cuál es la ciudad capital de los Estados Unidos?** *what is the capital city of the United States?* **Qué** is used if a definition is wanted: **¿ qué es la filosofía griega?** *what is Greek philosophy?*

169. The interrogative possessive **cúyo,** *whose,* is little used; it refers only to persons, and is, as a rule, used only in the predicate. Interrogative *whose* is generally **de quién.**

¿ **Cúya** (*better*, **¿De quién**) **es esta casa?**	Whose house is this?
¿ **Cúyo** (*better*, **¿De quién**) **es aquel caballo?**	Whose horse is that?

Remark. — One does not say: **¿ cúya casa habita usted?** *whose house do you occupy?* but **¿ De quién es la casa que usted habita?**

170. Cuánto (–a) is *how much;* **cuántos** (–as), *how many.* **Cuánto** (–a, –os, –as) may be used as adjective or pronoun.

¿ **Cuántos hay?**	How many are there?
¿ **Cuánto dinero necesita Vd.?**	How much money do you need?
¿ **Cuántas vacas vendiste?**	How many cows did you sell?

171. Negation. — The pronouns **nadie,** *no one,* **nada,** *nothing,* **ninguno,** *none,* and the adverbs **ni . . . ni,** *neither . . . nor,* **nunca** and **jamás,** *never,*[1] and **tampoco,** *not either,* require the verb to be made negative when they follow the verb. They are negative in themselves if they precede the verb or if no verb is expressed.[2]

No temo nada, *or* **nada temo.**	I fear nothing (I do not fear anything).
No tengo ni pluma ni papel, *or* **Ni pluma ni papel tengo.**	I have neither pen nor paper (I haven't either pen or paper).
No le vi nunca, *or* **Nunca le vi.**	I never saw him.
Nadie se acordaba de él, ni él se acordaba de nadie.	No one remembered him, nor did he remember any one.
Su hijo no es ni será nunca nadie.	Her son is not nor ever will be anything.
No quiero aquel caballo tampoco, *or* **Tampoco quiero aquel caballo.**	I do not wish that horse either.
¿ **Quién viene? — Nadie.**	Who is coming? — No one.
¿ **Qué dice Vd.? — Nada.**	What are you saying?—Nothing.

a. Similarly, certain expressions such as **en mi vida** become negative when they precede the verb: **no he hecho tal cosa en mi vida,** or **en mi vida he hecho tal cosa,** *never in my life have I done such a thing.*

[1] *Never* is commonly expressed by **nunca. Jamás** after a positive verb is positive: ¿ **ha visitado Vd. jamás a Méjico?** *have you ever visited Mexico?*

[2] In colloquial language, the negative (except **no**) usually follows the verb, *e.g.*, **no tengo nada** is more common than **nada tengo,** *I have nothing,* or *I haven't anything.*

b. As a rule, negative pronouns and adverbs are used instead of affirmative ones if the sentence is in any way negative, or expects a negative answer, or if the pronoun or adverb follows a comparative.

Es inútil decir nada.	It is useless to say anything.
Sin olvidarte nunca.	Without ever forgetting you.
¿ Hay nada más sublime ?	Is there anything more sublime ?
El viejo parece más feliz que nunca.	The old man seems happier than ever.

c. In a negative sentence, **alguno** may be used instead of **ninguno**, in which case **alguno** follows its noun and is somewhat emphatic: **no tiene enemigo alguno,** *he has no enemy whatever.*

172. Irregular Verbs. — **Hacer,** (*to*) *make*, (*to*) *do*, and **Decir,** (*to*) *say*, (*to*) *tell*. Study §§ 268 and 279.

173. Idiomatic Expressions

hágame usted el favor de cerrar la puerta, please shut the door.
el huracán hizo temblar la casa, the hurricane made the house tremble.
hizo (mandó) hacer un traje, he had a suit of clothes made.
haz entrar al hombre, have the man come in.
no hagas caso de eso, never mind that.
haré por verle mañana, I shall try to see him tomorrow.
¿ te hace falta dinero ? do you need money?
hace de portero, he is acting as doorman.
hace frío (calor), it is cold (warm).
hace un mes (dos meses), a month (two months) ago.
hago construir una casa, I am having a house built.
se hizo amar por todo el mundo, he made himself loved by everybody.
se hace el tonto, he plays the fool.
se dice que, *or* **dicen que,** it is said that, people say that.

EXERCISES

A. 1. — ¿ Qué calle es ésta ? No he visto nunca otra tan bonita. ¡ Cuántas residencias !

— Ésta es la calle Mayor. Por aquí se va al hotel. ¿ Ha visto Vd. ninguna más ancha ?

— Ninguna. ¿ Cuál es más larga, ésta o la calle donde Vds. viven ?

— Ésta es más larga y más importante.

— ¡ Qué casa más hermosa ! ¿ De quién es ?

— Del señor catedrático cuyas clases visitamos ayer.

— ¿ Cuál ? Yo conocí a dos de ellos.

— El señor Martínez. El que explica la literatura española.

— Pero ¿ cómo es que vive en una casa tan opulenta ?

— Su familia es rica. Aquélla es también muy hermosa. ¿ Cuál prefiere Vd. ?

— Prefiero la del señor Martínez. ¿ Cuánto costará ?

— ¡ Quién sabe !

— Parece que va a llover. Y no tenemos ni paraguas ni impermeables. Démonos prisa. ¿ Cómo quiere Vd. ir, en tranvía o en taxímetro ?

2. — ¿ Quién llama ?

— Es el señor que vino ayer. ¡ Qué pálido está ! ¿ Qué le digo ?

— Hágale entrar en otro despacho y hágame el favor de cerrar esa puerta. Hoy no quiero recibir a nadie. Se dice que ese hombre ha perdido cuanto dinero tenía. Pero él no quiere decir nada a nadie. Pregúntele si le hace falta dinero. O si quiere volver, haré por verle mañana. Hace dos meses le dije que no comprase acciones en cierta compañía, pero no me hizo caso. ¿ Qué hora es ?

— Son las cuatro. Si Vd. piensa salir, abríguese bien. Hace mucho frío. ¿ Cuánto dinero puedo ofrecerle a ese hombre ?

— Lo que necesite, si no es mucho. Ya sabe Vd. que estoy haciendo construir dos casas. Y estoy más apurado que nunca. Pero no le diga a él nada de esto.

B. 1. ¿ En qué calle está este edificio ? 2. ¿ Cuál es la calle más larga de esta ciudad (este pueblo) ? 3. ¿ De quién

es la casa donde Vd. vive? 4. ¿ Por dónde se va al hotel? 5. ¿ A cuántos catedráticos conoce Vd.? 6. ¿ Conoce Vd. al que explica la literatura española? 7. ¿ Cómo se llama el catedrático de la literatura española? 8. ¿ Cree Vd. que llueva hoy? 9. ¿ Qué prefiere Vd., un paraguas o un impermeable? 10. ¿ Quién ha perdido dinero? 11. ¿ Cuánto dinero ha perdido? 12. ¿ Le gusta a Vd. viajar en tranvía? 13. ¿ Qué hora es? 14. ¿ Hace frío o calor hoy? 15. ¿ Quién hizo construir esta casa?

C. 1. *Translate:* What a pretty girl! But how pale she is! Whose daughter is she? Who is the other girl? Which is the prettier? What time is it? Do you know when (= at what hour) the train arrives? Which train do you wish to take? What is the date of the letter? What is the capital of Spain? What is the philosophy of Kant? How much money do you want? How many books do you wish to buy?

2. *Translate:* I should like to write a letter, but I have neither pen nor paper. I haven't [any] paper either. Mary is never happy. She seems sadder than ever. I have no friend in Paris. I do not know any one there. I never saw Mr. Herrera. Have you ever visited Rome? I have never seen Rome. Nor (= not either) have I seen London.

3. *Substitute a personal pronoun for the noun object:* ¿ Quieres prestarme el libro? Préstame el libro. — No te presto el libro. — Pues, si no me prestas el libro, puedo comprar uno. Pedimos la lista (de platos). Dijimos: tráiganos la lista. El mozo nos trajo la lista. ¿ Quieren los señores sopa? — Sí, tráiganos sopa. — ¿ Quieren los señores pescado? — Sí, tráiganos pescado. Le dimos la propina. Ella quería que yo leyera la carta. Me dijo: lea Vd. la carta. Pero no leí la carta.

D. 1. What did the man with (de) the eyeglasses wish? 2. Did you see how pale he was? 3. I thought he was ill. 4. He was asking what new guests we have. 5. I showed him the register.

6. He read the names, but didn't say anything. 7. Then I asked him whom he was looking for. 8. He said that he was looking for Mr. Martinez, who was to arrive today. 9. He had received a letter from him, asking him to come to see him here. 10. Then I asked him: What is the date of the letter? 11. He showed it to me. 12. It was dated the twentieth of last month. 13. Mr. Martinez came here that day, but went away two or three days later.

14. I know who Mr. Martinez is (*say* who is Mr. Martinez). 15. He used to live in this town. 16. Nobody knows why he left. 17. He is a fine man. 18. He made himself loved by everybody here. 19. He had no enemies (*say* He did not have enemies). 20. He had a great deal of money, and gave freely to the needy. 21. He had a magnificent house built for his family. 22. How beautiful his wife was! 23. But one day he left without saying anything to anybody. 24. Now no one remembers him.

25. What was the reason for his departure? 26. No one seems to know. 27. Some say that he lost all the money that he had. 28. He bought many shares in a certain company. 29. The worst is that he advised his friends to [1] buy all the shares that they could buy. 30. They also lost much money. 31. There is nothing more unfortunate for an honorable man.

LESSON XXVI

INDEFINITE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS

174. **Alguien,** *some one, somebody, any one, anybody,* **algo,** *something, anything,* are pronouns and invariable. **Alguien** refers only to persons; **algo** is neuter.

Alguien llama a la puerta.	Some one is knocking at the door.
¿ Hallaste algo?	Did you find something (anything)?

a. Not . . . any one, not . . . anybody, is **no . . . nadie;** *not . . . anything* is **no . . . nada.** See "Negation," § 171. **Alguien** and **algo** are never combined with negatives.

[1] Use **que** with the subjunctive.

175. **Alguno** (**–a, –os, –as**), *some, any, a few,* is used as adjective or pronoun.

Algún[1] **día.**	Some day.
Algunos de los amigos de usted.	Some of your friends.
Tiene algunos libros muy raros.	He has a few very rare books.

a. Not . . . any is usually **no . . . ninguno** or **no . . . alguno** (after noun).

b. In partitive expressions, unemphatic *some* and *any,* used as adjectives, are generally not to be expressed in Spanish.

Tengo pan, pero no tengo mantequilla.	I have some bread, but I haven't any butter.
Quiero comprar manzanas y naranjas.	I wish to buy some apples and oranges.

In answer to a question, *some* or *any* is then expressed by a personal pronoun object, or the noun is repeated.

¿ **No tiene Vd. peras?** Haven't you any pears? **Hoy no las tengo.** I haven't any today.

¿ **Tiene Vd. vino?** Have you any wine? **No tengo vino** (*or* **vino no tengo**). I haven't any.

¿ **Hay uvas?** Are there any grapes? **Sí, las hay.** Yes, there are some.

¿ **Hay pan?** Is there any bread? **No lo hay** (*or* **no hay pan**). There isn't any.

c. In the plural, *some* is occasionally expressed by **unos, –as,** especially in numerical expressions.

Tengo unos quinientos pesos.	I have some five hundred dollars.

176. **Nadie,** *no one, nobody, not any one, not anybody,* **nada,** *nothing, not anything,* are pronouns and invariable. **Nadie** refers only to persons; **nada** is neuter. See "Negation," § 171.

Nadie ha venido hoy.	No one has come today.
Nada veo.	I do not see anything.

177. **Ninguno** (**–a, –os, –as**), *none, no, not any,* is used as adjective or pronoun.

[1] See "Apocopation of Adjectives," § 114.

Ninguna casa.	No (not any) house.
Ninguno de los niños.	None of the children.

a. English *no, not any,* is often expressed by **no,** *not,* before the verb.

No tengo tiempo.	I have no (not any) time.
No tiene enemigos.	He has no (not any) enemies.

178. **Mucho** (**–a**),[1] *much,* **muchos** (**–as**), *many,* are used as adjective or pronoun.

Mucho tiempo.	Much (a great deal of) time.
Muchos años.	Many years.
Muchos han partido.	Many have left.

a. Very much is **muchísimo** (rather than **muy mucho**).

179. **Poco** (**–a**),[1] *little* (meaning *but little*), **pocos** (**–as**), *few,* are used as adjective or pronoun.

Tengo poco dinero.	I have little money.
Pocos han venido.	Few have come.

a. **Un poco de** is *a little:* **tengo un poco de vino,** *I have a little wine;* cf. **tengo poco vino y mucha leche,** *I have a little* (i.e., *only a little*) *wine and much milk.*

180. **Tanto** (**–a, –os, –as**), *as* (*so*) *much, as* (*so*) *many.*

Hay tantos hombres como mujeres.	There are as many men as women.

181. **Todo** (**–a, –os, –as**), *all, every,* is used as adjective or pronoun.

todo aquel día all that day	**todos los hombres** all the men[2]
toda mujer every woman	**todas las noches** every night
todo el mundo everybody	**todos lo dicen** all say so

a. All, meaning *the whole,* is **todo** (**–a**) **el** (**la**): **toda la semana,** *all week.*

b. The neuter pronoun **todo** means *all, everything:* **todo es vanidad en este mundo,** *all is vanity in this world.* As the object of a verb, neuter **todo** is usually accompanied by **lo**: **me lo dijo todo,** *he told me all.*

[1] For the comparatives of **mucho** and **poco,** see § 124 (3).

[2] **Todos los hombres** is *all men* (generally speaking) if the noun denotes all of its kind.

182. **Mismo** (–a, –os, –as),[1] *same, very, self, himself* (*herself*, etc.), is used as an adjective.

El mismo día.	The same day.
El exceso mismo de mi felicidad me matará.	The very excess of my happiness will kill me.
Él mismo me lo dijo.	He told me so himself.
Creo que es usted la misma virtud.	I believe that you are virtue itself.

In the sense of *self*, it often follows the noun or pronoun.

a. **El mismo** (**la misma, los mismos, las mismas, lo mismo**), *the same*, is used as pronoun.

183. **Ambos** (–as), **los dos** (**las dos**), *both* (*of*), are used as adjectives or pronouns.

Tengo las dos (ambas) manos heladas.	Both of my hands are frozen.
Nos ama a los dos.	He loves us both.

184. **Cada**, *each*, is used as adjective, and **cada uno** (–a) or **cada cual**, *each* (*one*), as pronoun (**cada** is invariable).

Cada vez.	Each time.
Di un peso a cada uno (cada cual).	I gave each one a dollar.

185. **Otro** (–a, –os, –as), *other, another*, is used as adjective or pronoun; it does not admit the indefinite article.

El otro día.	The other day.
Quiero otro caballo.	I want another horse.
Otra semana.	Another week.
No tengo otros.	I have no others (I haven't any others).

Note the position of **otro** in **otros muchos**, *many others*, **otros tres**, *three others*, etc.

186. **Uno** (–a) **y otro** (–a), *both* (in the sense of *each*), **uno** (–a) **u otro** (–a), *either* (*one*), **ni uno** (–a) **ni otro** (–a), *neither* (*one*), *not either* (*one*), **el uno . . . el otro** (**la una . . . la otra**), *each other*, **los unos . . . los otros** (**las unas . . . las otras**), *one another*, are used as adjectives or pronouns.

[1] For **mismo** and **propio** in reflexive constructions, see § 136 *a*.

Personas de uno y otro sexo.	Persons of both sexes.
Aceptaré uno u otro.	I will accept either (one).
No quiero ni uno ni otro.	I wish neither (one), *or* I do not wish either (one).
Se burlan el uno del otro.[1]	They make sport of each other.

187. **Tal** (**tales**), *such, such a*, is used as adjective or pronoun; it is never followed by the indefinite article.

tales hombres such men **tal muchacho** such a boy

a. **Un tal** is *one, a certain;* **el tal** is *the said:* **me lo contó un tal Manzanares,** *one (a certain) Manzanares told me;* **el tal Gómez era un pícaro,** *the said Gomez was a rascal.*

188. **Cosa,** *thing*, is used in the formation of many compound indefinite pronouns, which occur frequently in colloquial language.

alguna cosa something, anything
ninguna cosa *or* **cosa alguna** nothing, not anything
la misma cosa the same thing
otra cosa something else, anything else
tal cosa such a thing, etc.[2]

189. **Quienquiera** (**quienesquiera**), *whoever, who(m)soever;* **cualquiera** (**cualesquiera**), *any (one) at all, whatever.*

Quienquiera que sea.	Whoever it may be.
Para eso cualquiera es bueno.	For that any one (at all) is good (enough).
Cualquier hombre es bueno para eso.	Any man is good enough for that.

a. Note that **cualquiera** may lose the final **–a** when it precedes the noun it modifies.

b. **Un cualquiera** has depreciative force: *an ordinary* or *common man.*

190. **Irregular Verbs.** — **Querer,** (*to*) *wish*, and **Poder,** (*to*) *be able* (*can*). Study §§ 264 and 265.

[1] For **uno a otro,** etc., in reciprocal constructions, see § 137.
[2] Also in interrogative **qué cosa,** *what thing.*

191. Idiomatic Expressions

el niño puede caerse, the child may fall.
no puedo más, I can't do any more, I am played out.
no pudo menos de sonreírse, he couldn't help smiling.
puede que, it is possible that.
él puede más que yo, he is stronger than I.
¿ quiere usted venir conmigo? will you come with me?
la quiere mucho, he is very fond of her.
¿ qué quiere decir esto? what does this mean?

EXERCISES

A. No quiero que nadie entre en mi biblioteca por algunos días. Tengo algunos papeles sobre el escritorio que son muy importantes. Es un trabajo que debe producirme unos mil quinientos pesos. Ayer alguien me revolvió los papeles. No pude menos de enfadarme. No hay cosa que me disguste más. Yo mismo me ocuparé de limpiar. Dentro de pocos días acabaré ese trabajo.

Voy a explicar lo que estoy haciendo. Hace mucho tiempo que un señor muy rico hizo un viaje a Chile y el Perú. Compró unos libros y manuscritos muy raros. Los tenía en su biblioteca sin hacer nada de ellos. El año pasado un tal Morales, profesor de algún colegio, le indicó la importancia de los dos manuscritos. Entonces me llamó a su casa y me pidió que los tradujera. Ambos son largos y difíciles. Pero ya voy acabando. Ahora tengo poco dinero y me alegraré de cobrar.

Uno de los manuscritos describe viajes y exploraciones de los conquistadores españoles; el otro las costumbres de los indios. ¿ Quiere usted venir conmigo a verlos? Le gustará leer algunas de las leyes y costumbres curiosas de los indios. Pase usted. ¿ Qué tal le parece la biblioteca? Todavía no tengo muchos libros, pero poco a poco voy reuniéndolos. Siéntese en este sillón. Es más cómodo.

Vea estas frases que he sacado de este manuscrito: « Todos

se hacían sus casas. Todos sabían labrar la tierra y beneficiarla, sin alquilar otros obreros. Labradas las tierras de los pobres, labraba cada uno las suyas, ayudándose unos a otros. De esta tierra de los indios ningún particular poseía cosa propia. De la cosecha de sus tierras particulares no pagaban los vasallos cosa alguna al Inca. No había vagamundos ni holgazanes, ni nadie hacía cosa que no debiese.»

B. 1. ¿ En dónde no se puede entrar? 2. ¿ Qué hay sobre el escritorio? 3. ¿ Cuánto producirá el trabajo? 4. ¿ Qué hizo alguien con los papeles? 5. ¿ Quién hizo un viaje a Chile y el Perú? 6. ¿ Qué compró el señor? 7. ¿ Quién indicó la importancia de los manuscritos? 8. ¿ Adónde le llamó el señor? 9. ¿ Qué le pidió? 10. ¿ Por qué se alegrará de cobrar? 11. ¿ Qué describe uno de los manuscritos? 12. ¿ Qué describe el otro? 13. ¿ Quiénes eran los conquistadores? 14. ¿ Tiene usted libros sobre los indios? 15. ¿ Ha estado usted en Chile? 16. ¿ Qué sabían labrar los indios? 17. ¿ Qué no pagaban al Inca?

C. *Supply the Spanish equivalent of the indefinite adjective or pronoun in parenthesis, if one is needed in Spanish:*

(*Any*) ¿ Tiene Vd. pan? Tengo pan, pero no tengo mantequilla (manteca). ¿ Tiene amigos en Madrid? No, señor; no tengo amigo en Madrid. ¿ Compró Vd. abanicos en Sevilla? No, señor; no compré abanico. No hables más; ya hablaste demasiado. Sin duda podré hacerlo mañana. ¿ Cree Vd. que hombre sea bueno para eso? No, señor; creo que no hay hombre capaz de hacerlo bien.

(*Some*) ¿ Quiere Vd. uvas? Sí, señor; vengo a comprar uvas y peras. ¿ Puede Vd. prestarme dinero? Sí, señor; le prestaré dinero con mucho gusto. Muchas gracias; quisiera que me prestase quinientos pesos. ¿ Han venido parientes de Vd.? Sí, señor; han venido parientes y amigos también.

(*Nothing*) No tengo. Tengo. No tengo mejor. No veo. Veo.

(Poco *or* mucho) Tiene amigos porque tiene dinero. Sabe porque estudia. Vivió en Madrid años y aprendió español.

(Todo) Juan trabaja los días excepto el domingo. Descansa los domingos. Estudia el español las noches. Lo aprendió. Los hombres deben trabajar para ganarse la vida. El mundo debe trabajar. Estaba enfermo aquel día. Mujer debe casarse.

(Mismo) Llegamos el día. Vivimos en la casa. Él me lo dijo. Ella se engaña a sí. Ellos se aman a sí. Ellas se burlan de sí.

(Otro) Quiero el caballo. Quiero caballo. No tengo.

(Tal) El Martínez era un pícaro. Me lo dijo un García. Nunca he visto hombre. Nunca he hecho cosa.

D. 1. Alfred had little money that day. 2. He had bought a present for his mother and had spent nearly all that he had. 3. He himself told me so. 4. Besides, he had a great deal to do. 5. But some of his friends insisted that he should go with them and that he should invite his cousin Jane. 6. She was anxious to go on a trip to the country. 7. He could not help going with them and inviting his cousin. 8. He would have preferred not to go anywhere. 9. He came to see me and told me everything. 10. I lent him a little money.

11. They went on a picnic. 12. Many men and women were invited. 13. There were also some children. 14. Everybody had to take something. 15. All the men were to take fruit and sweets. 16. All the women were to take sandwiches and cakes. 17. They expected to be able to buy coffee or milk at some farm. 18. Some of the women wanted milk for their children. 19. But there was no farm near the place they chose for the picnic.

20. Alfred and Jane didn't enjoy themselves [very] much. 21. Some of the children quarreled, and made fun of one another. 22. One asked for fruit and sweets the whole day. 23. His mother wouldn't (**no quería**) give him either fruit or sweets. 24. Another cried because he had no milk. 25. Two of the men had a dispute. 26. One said that he could lift a certain large stone. 27. The other said anyone could do that. 28. Both tried (**lo intentaron**);

but only the first could do it. 29. He was stronger than the other. 30. Jane liked none of the women. 31. Alfred told me later that he was very sorry they had gone on a picnic that day.

LESSON XXVII

NUMERALS

192. Cardinal Numerals

cero	0	veinte y nueve	29
un(o), –a [1]	1	treinta	30
dos	2	treinta y un(o), –a	31
tres	3	cuarenta	40
cuatro	4	cincuenta	50
cinco	5	sesenta	60
seis	6	setenta	70
siete	7	ochenta	80
ocho	8	noventa	90
nueve	9	ciento [3]	100
diez	10	ciento un(o), –a	101
once	11	ciento diez	110
doce	12	doscientos, –as	200
trece	13	trescientos, –as	300
catorce	14	cuatrocientos, –as	400
quince	15	quinientos, –as	500
diez y seis [2]	16	seiscientos, –as	600
diez y siete	17	setecientos, –as [4]	700
diez y ocho	18	ochocientos, –as	800
diez y nueve	19	novecientos, –as [4]	900
veinte	20	mil	1,000
veinte y un(o), –a	21	mil ciento	1,100
veinte y dos	22	mil doscientos, –as	1,200
veinte y tres	23	dos mil	2,000
veinte y cuatro	24	cien [3] mil	100,000
veinte y cinco	25	doscientos, –as mil	200,000
veinte y seis	26	un millón	1,000,000
veinte y siete	27	dos millones	2,000,000
veinte y ocho	28		

[1] See § 114.

[2] These numbers are also written in one word, as, **dieciséis, veintiuno,** etc.

[3] See § 117.

[4] In colloquial language one sometimes hears **sietecientos** and **nuevecientos.**

a. The cardinals are invariable, except **un(o), –a, –cientos, –as** in the combinations from **doscientos, –as** to **novecientos, –as** inclusive, and **quinientos, –as**: **doscientos hombres,** *two hundred men;* **doscientas mujeres,** *two hundred women;* **doscientas mil personas,** *two hundred thousand persons.*

b. In compound numerals, **uno** drops the final vowel before a masculine noun: **treinta y un soldados,** *thirty-one soldiers;* but **cincuenta y una casas,** *fifty-one houses.*

c. **Millón** takes **un,** but **ciento** and **mil** do not: **cien estudiantes,** *one hundred students;* **mil pesos,** *one thousand dollars;* **un millón de pesetas,** *one million pesetas.*

But **ciento un, doscientos un,** etc., may occur before **mil** when they mean *a hundred and one,* etc.: **ciento un mil trescientos veinte y cinco,** 101,325.

d. The conjunction **y** is used to connect two numerals, provided the numeral that precedes is less than 100 and the numeral that follows is less than 10: **cuarenta y cinco,** 45, **noventa y nueve,** 99; but, **ciento cinco,** 105, **veinte mil,** 20,000.

e. Counting by hundreds is not carried above nine hundred in Spanish; beginning with ten hundred **mil** is used: **mil ochocientos noventa y tres,** 1893.

f. As substantives, **ciento** or **centenar, mil** or **millar,** are used; but only **ciento** and **millar** are regularly used to express rate: **centenares de caballos,** *hundreds of horses;* **dos pesetas el ciento,** *two pesetas per hundred;* **miles de aves,** *thousands of birds;* **a peso el millar,** *at one dollar per thousand.*[1]

193. Ordinal Numerals[2]

primer(o), –a (primo, –a)	1st	**undécimo, –a**	11th
segundo, –a	2d	**duodécimo, –a**	12th
tercer(o), –a (tercio, –a)	3d	**décimotercio, –a**	13th
cuarto, –a	4th	**décimocuarto, –a**	14th
quinto, –a	5th	**décimoquinto, –a**	15th
sexto, –a *or* **sesto, –a**	6th	**décimosexto, –a**	16th
séptimo, –a *or* **sétimo, –a**	7th	**décimoséptimo, –a**	17th
octavo, –a	8th	**décimooctavo, –a**	18th
noveno, –a (nono, –a)	9th	**décimonono, –a**	19th
décimo, –a	10th	**vigésimo, –a**	20th

[1] In mercantile language **uno** is usually omitted, as here, before the name of the coin.

[2] The use of the ordinals in Spanish is daily becoming less. It is hardly an exaggeration to say that only trained persons know them from *twentieth* on.

vigésimo primo, –a	21st	**ducentésimo, –a**	200th
vigésimo segundo, –a	22d	**trecentésimo, –a**	300th
vigésimo tercio, –a	23d	**cuadragentésimo, –a**	400th
trigésimo, –a	30th	**quingentésimo, –a**	500th
cuadragésimo, –a	40th	**sescentésimo, –a**	600th
quincuagésimo, –a	50th	**septengésimo, –a**	700th
sexagésimo, –a	60th	**octogentésimo, –a**	800th
septuagésimo, –a	70th	**nonagentésimo, –a**	900th
octogésimo, –a	80th	**milésimo, –a**	1,000th
nonagésimo, –a	90th	**dosmilésimo, –a**	2,000th
centésimo, –a	100th	**diezmilésimo, –a**	10,000th
centésimo primo, –a	101st	**millonésimo, –a**	1,000,000th
centésimo undécimo, –a	111th		

a. The shorter forms, **primo, tercio** and **nono** are used in compound ordinal numerals. **Sexto** and **séptimo** are usually pronounced and often written **sesto** and **sétimo.** For the apocopation of **primero** and **tercero** see § 114.

b. The ordinals agree in gender and number with the noun they modify. A single ordinal may precede or follow its noun; a compound ordinal regularly follows: **el primer día,** *the first day;* **el siglo décimo sexto** (or **el siglo diez y seis**), *the sixteenth century.*

c. After **décimo,** the cardinals are generally used in Spanish instead of the ordinals, to specify the number of a volume, book, chapter, lesson, century, etc.: **el tomo veinte,** *the twentieth volume* (or *volume twenty*); **el siglo diez y nueve,** *the nineteenth century.*

d. The ordinals are used up to **décimo** (or **undécimo**) to indicate the order of succession of sovereigns; but from that number on the cardinals are regularly used: **Carlos quinto,** *Charles the Fifth*[1]; **León trece,** *Leo XIII.*

e. In dates, the cardinals are used instead of the ordinals, with the exception of **primero: el primero** (**el dos, el tres,** etc.) **de junio,** *the first* (*the second, the third, etc.*) *of June.* Sometimes **uno** is used instead of **primero,** as in **el uno y el dos de enero,** *the first and the second of January.*

194. Fractional Numerals

un medio	$\frac{1}{2}$	**tres cuartos**	$\frac{3}{4}$
un tercio	$\frac{1}{3}$	**un quinto**	$\frac{1}{5}$
dos tercios	$\frac{2}{3}$	**un sexto**	$\frac{1}{6}$
un cuarto	$\frac{1}{4}$	**un séptimo**	$\frac{1}{7}$

[1] Note the omission of the article in Spanish. See § 106 (2).

un octavo	$\frac{1}{8}$	**un diecisieteavo**	$\frac{1}{17}$
un noveno	$\frac{1}{9}$	**un dieciochavo**	$\frac{1}{18}$
un décimo	$\frac{1}{10}$	**un diecinueveavo**	$\frac{1}{19}$
un undécimo *or* **onzavo** [1]	$\frac{1}{11}$	**un veintavo**	$\frac{1}{20}$
un dozavo	$\frac{1}{12}$	**un treintavo**	$\frac{1}{30}$
un trezavo	$\frac{1}{13}$	**un centésimo** *or* **centavo**	$\frac{1}{100}$
un catorzavo	$\frac{1}{14}$	**un milésimo**	$\frac{1}{1000}$
un quinzavo	$\frac{1}{15}$	**un millonésimo**	$\frac{1}{1000000}$
un dieciseisavo	$\frac{1}{16}$		

a. Fractional numerals may also be expressed by the ordinals with **parte,** especially when a partitive expression follows or is understood: **la tercera parte de ellos,** *one-third of them.*

b. Half (*a half, one-half, half a*), as a substantive, is expressed by **la mitad;** as an adjective, by **medio** (**–a**) without the indefinite article. In calculations, **medio** (**–a**) is used.

La mitad de mis bienes.	One-half of my goods.
Medio día.	Half a day.
Una hora y media.	An hour and a half.

195. Collective Numerals

un par a pair	**una veintena** twenty, a score
una decena ten	**una sesentena** sixty
una docena a dozen	**una centena** *or* **un centenar** one hundred
una quincena fifteen	**un millar** one thousand

a. The ending **–ena** may make the numeral indefinite: e.g., **una veintena,** *some twenty, about twenty.*

196. Multiplicative Numerals

simple single	**séptuplo** septuple
doble *or* **duplicado** double [2]	**óctuplo** octuple
triple *or* **triplicado** treble	**décuplo** decuple
cuádruplo *or* **cuadruplicado** quadruple [2]	**céntuplo** *or* **centuplicado** centuple
quíntuplo *or* **quintuplicado** quintuple	
séxtuplo sextuple	

[1] Note loss of final vowel before **–avo,** except the final **–e** of **siete** and **nueve.**

[2] **Doble, triple,** etc., may also be translated *two-fold, three-fold,* etc. There are also the forms **dúplice** and **tríplice,** and **cuádruple, quíntuple,** etc.

197. Numeral Phrases

una vez once
dos veces twice
tres veces three times (thrice)
diez veces ten times
cien veces a hundred times
mil veces a thousand times

198. Irregular Verbs. — **Andar,** (*to*) *go* (*to go* in a definite direction is **ir**); **Caer,** (*to*) *fall.*

199. Idiomatic Expressions

el reloj no anda, the watch doesn't go (run).
voy a la ciudad, I am going to town.
se cayó, he fell down.
ya caigo en eso, now I understand that.
lo dejé caer, I dropped it.
la levita te cae (sienta) bien, the coat fits you well.
este color cae bien con este otro, this color matches well with this other.

EXERCISES

A. Escena: Habitación en una residencia de estudiantes. Hay tres jóvenes en ella. Uno está en pie delante de un espejo, poniéndose el cuello y la corbata. Otro, sentado a la mesa, tiene un libro en la mano. El tercero, repantigado en una poltrona, lee un periódico.

1er. estudiante. — ¿ Creen ustedes que el color de esta corbata cae bien con el de la camisa?

2do. estudiante. — ¿ Te preocupa mucho eso?

1er. estudiante. — Bastante. Voy a visitar a una señorita algo criticona. ¿ Qué hora es? Mi reloj no anda. Lo dejé caer ayer y se ha parado. ¿ Son las siete? Pues tengo que irme. Abur.

3er. estudiante. (*leyendo el periódico*): « Sigue firme el papel de los Ferrocarriles Unidos.

« En esta plaza se hicieron 100 acciones a $95\frac{1}{2}$ y 500 a 96; 800 a $96\frac{1}{2}$ para el mes y 200 a $95\frac{3}{4}$ a entregar.

« Al cerrar el mercado a las 12 prevalecían los siguientes tipos:

Ferrocarriles Unidos, $95\frac{3}{4}$ a 96
Banco Español, 101 a 102
Acciones Gas, $135\frac{3}{4}$ a 138
Petróleo, $130\frac{3}{4}$ a 133
Río Tinto, $97\frac{1}{2}$ a 99 $\frac{1}{4}$ »

2DO. ESTUDIANTE. — Mira, no me fastidies con eso. Oye este cuento (*leyendo en el libro que tiene en la mano*): « Un campesino tenía tres hijos. Al morir les dejó diez y siete hermosos caballos. De éstos el hijo mayor debía quedarse con la mitad, el segundo con un tercio, y el menor con la sexta parte. Pero no podían hacer una división exacta. El resultado fué una grave disputa entre ellos. Acudieron a un anciano, antiguo amigo de su padre, el cual les dijo:

— Para facilitar la repartición, tomen mi caballo. Así tendrán diez y ocho animales. El mayor, que tome la mitad, o sea nueve caballos; el segundo, un tercio, o sea seis caballos; y el último, la sexta parte, o sea tres caballos.

Luego montó en su caballo, disponiéndose a marchar.

— ¡ Cómo ! — gritaron a una voz los hermanos, — ¿ nos quita usted el que nos ha dado ?

— ¿ Qué importa ? ¿ No he repartido a cada uno la justa parte que le corresponde ? ¿ No poseen los diez y siete caballos que les dejó su padre ? Además, ¿ cómo harían para repartirse el décimooctavo caballo ? »

B. 1. ¿ Cuántos jóvenes hay en la habitación ? 2. ¿ Qué hace el que está repantigado en la poltrona ? 3. ¿ Cuál tiene un libro en la mano ? 4. ¿ Cuál se pone el cuello y la corbata ? 5. ¿ A quién va a visitar ? 6. ¿ Qué hora era ? 7. ¿ Por qué se ha parado el reloj ? 8. ¿ Cuántos caballos dejó el campesino ? 9–11. ¿ Cuántos había de recibir el hijo mayor ? el segundo ? el menor ? 12. ¿ Por qué no podían hacer la división ? 13. ¿ A quién acudieron ? 14. ¿ Cómo resolvió el problema ? 15. ¿ Qué hizo luego el anciano ? 16. ¿ Por qué no les gustó a los jóvenes la solución ?

C. 1. *Answer:* ¿ Cuál es la suma de $35.50 y $21.75? [1] Si de $65.25 quito $25.15, ¿ cuánto queda? Si multiplico $25.00 por 5, ¿ cuál es el producto? Si divido $66.40 por 4, ¿ cuál es el resultado? Una persona ha hecho 3 compras, y ha gastado sucesivamente $25, $35 y $50. ¿ Cuánto ha gastado por todo? Un niño nació el 5 de febrero de 1922. ¿ Cuándo cumplió 5 años? Si Juan tenía $16 y gastó $ 4.40, ¿ cuánto dinero le queda? Si Vd. pagó $17 por 8 metros y medio de un género de seda, ¿ a cómo se vendía el metro? Si damos a una peseta española el valor de 20 centavos norteamericanos (estadounidenses), ¿ cuánto vale en moneda norteamericana (estadounidense) ptas: 50.25; 23.10; 11.75; 6.15; 127.30; 143.60; 250.50; 275.25; 320.15; 525.50; 2,000? (Por ejemplo, 58 pesetas con 25 céntimos valen 11 pesos y 65 centavos norteamericanos [estadounidenses]).[2]

2. *Read or write in Spanish:* 15; 23; 37; 41; 56; 62; 78; 89; 94; 100; 110; 113; 124; 138; 155; 169; 172; 185; 199; 201; 310; 425; 530; 642; 768; 873; 987; 1,000; 1,025; 1,575; 2,000; 5,150; 1,000,000; 10,000,000; el año 1492; el año 1776; el año 1918; el año 1930; el 1° de agosto; el 5 de septiembre; el 2° tomo; el capítulo 22; la página 145; Carlos V; Alfonso XIII; $\frac{1}{2}$; $\frac{1}{3}$; $\frac{2}{3}$; $\frac{1}{4}$; $\frac{3}{4}$; $\frac{2}{5}$; $\frac{3}{8}$; $\frac{5}{9}$; $\frac{1}{40}$; $\frac{3}{100}$; $\frac{15}{1000}$.

D. (*Write out all numerals:*) 1. I met my friend Arthur White the other day. 2. I had not seen him for six or seven months. 3. He is only twenty-six years old. 4. But he looks forty.[3] 5. When I met him he was going to his father's shop. 6. He works very hard, but his salary is only forty-five dollars a week. 7. I went with him as far as the shop. 8. We stopped at the door and chatted a while. 9. Then he invited me to go in. 10. He wanted me to help him translate a letter.

[1] In these problems read $ as **peso** or **pesos.** In some countries the $ is sometimes placed after the number: thus 15$ = **15 pesos.**

[2] The abbreviation of **peseta** is **pta.** Note the use of **con** before the number of **céntimos.** The easiest method of reducing **pesetas** to dollars is to multiply the number of **pesetas** by two, and move the decimal point one digit to the left.

[3] Say: *he seems to have forty.*

11. Arthur's father was in the shop. 12. He was talking to one of his clerks. 13. — I have told you three or four times, — I heard him say, — to be more careful. 14. You see, this shelf is not secure. 15. That clock has stopped. 16. Why don't you wind it? 17. Be careful, don't drop it. — 18. Another clerk asked him a question. 19. — These buttons, he said to him, cost fifteen dollars a thousand. 20. The chains cost four dollars a dozen. 21. — Now I understand, said the clerk.

22. This is the letter that Arthur wanted me to translate:

23. — March 25th, 1927

24. Dear Sir: We are in receipt of your favor of the 15th inst. 25. We are pleased to send you now a small order, which we beg you to send by (**para**) the sixth of next month at the latest. 26. If you can not fill the whole order, please[1] send us (the) half now, and the rest within thirty days.

27. 1st — 100 silver chains, at 9 pesetas wholesale.

28. 2nd — 50 gold necklaces, at 36 pesetas wholesale.

29. 3rd — 25 gold lockets with small pearls, at 80 pesetas wholesale.

30. We are very truly yours,[2]
Henry White and Son.

LESSON XXVIII

200. Adverbs

aquí, acá here	**allí, allá** there (distant from both the speaker and the person addressed)
ahí there (near the person addressed)	
Estoy muy bien aquí.	I am very comfortable here.
A dos pasos de acá.	Two paces (steps) from here.
Allá iremos todos.	We shall all go there.

a. With verbs of motion, *here* is usually **acá,** and *there* is **allá;** but **aquí** and **allí** are used to denote a definite, specific place: **ven acá** *come here;* **ven aquí,** *come right here.*

[1] Use **sírvase.** [2] **Quedamos de Vd. atentos y seguros servidores.**

b. *Here in* is **aquí en**, and *there in* is **ahí en** or **allá en**: **allá en Puerto Rico**, *over there in Porto Rico.*

c. English expletive *there* is not to be expressed in Spanish: **hay**, *there is, there are;* **han salido de este pueblo más de veinte familias**, *there have left this town more than twenty families.*

201. **Mucho,**[1] *much, a great deal;* **muy**, *very.*

Trabaja mucho.	He works a great deal.
Estoy muy cansado.	I am very tired.

Before past participles, *much, very much,* is **muy.**

Es muy estimado.	He is much esteemed.
Te estoy muy agradecido.	I am very much obliged to you.

But with the past participle of a perfect tense, *much* is **mucho**: **ha escrito mucho**, *he has written much* (*a great deal*).

a. *Very,* when standing alone, is **mucho**: **¿ es interesante el libro?** *is the book interesting?* **sí, mucho**, *yes, very.*

202. Both **si**, *if*, and **sí**, *yes*, may be used as intensive adverbs.

¡ Si no lo creo !	Indeed I don't believe it!
¡ Si partió esta mañana !	Why, he left this morning!
Ahora sí lo creo.	Now I do believe it.
Eso sí que es bueno.	That is indeed good.

203. **Ya**, *already, now;* with a negative, *no longer, no more.*

Ya es tarde.	It is already late.
Ya acabé.	I have already finished.
Ya entiendo.	I understand now.
Ya no fuma.	He doesn't smoke any longer (any more).
Ya no tengo dinero.	I have no more money (I haven't any more money).

204. **–mente.** — In English many adverbs of manner are formed by adding the termination *–ly* to adjectives, as *quickly* (from *quick*), *correctly* (from *correct*), etc. In Spanish

[1] For the comparison of **mucho**, see § 126.

many adverbs are similarly formed by adding **-mente** to the feminine singular of descriptive adjectives, as **severamente** (from **severo**), *severely*, **fácilmente** (from **fácil**), *easily*, etc.

a. When several adverbs in **-mente** modify the same word, **-mente** is omitted from all but the last: **habla docta, concisa y elegantemente,** *he speaks learnedly, concisely, and elegantly.*

Prepositions

205. ***Por* and *Para.*** — *For* is expressed by **por** or **para.** If *for* means *for the sake of*, *on account of*, or *in exchange for*, it is expressed by **por**; if it denotes *purpose* or *destination*, it is expressed by **para.**

Daría la vida por él.	I would give my life for him.
Los sacrificios que hizo por ella.	The sacrifices that he made for her.
Peleaba por la vida.	He was fighting for his life.
Le castigué por haberme dicho una mentira.	I punished him for having told me a lie.
He pagado diez pesos por el perro.	I have paid ten dollars for the dog.
Este libro es para ti.	This book is for you.
Parto para Madrid.	I am leaving for Madrid.

a. **Por** also means *through*, *by*,[1] *per.*

Por temor.	Through fear.
Entró por la ventana.	He entered through the window.
Este árbol ha sido plantado por mi abuelo.	This tree was planted by my grandfather.
Diez por ciento.	Ten per cent.
Mil pesos por año.	A thousand dollars per year (a year).

b. Before an infinitive, *to*, expressing unsuccessful endeavor, is **por** and, expressing purpose whether successful or not, is **para.**

Pugnando por entrar.	Fighting to enter.
Lo hizo para engañarme.	He did it to deceive me.

[1] *By* is usually **de**, after passive verbs and participles that express feeling or emotion: **es amado de todos,** *he is beloved by all.*

c. Note also the following ways of expressing *for* in Spanish:

Estuve allí un año.	I was there *for* a year.
Hace un año que estoy aquí.	I have been here *for* a year.
Voy a Madrid por un año.	I am going to Madrid *for* a year.
Tengo que escribir un ejercicio en castellano para mañana.	I must write a Spanish exercise *for* tomorrow.

206. A preposition is usually retained before a substantive clause in Spanish, but omitted in English.

Estoy convencido de mi error.	I am convinced of my error.
Estoy convencido de que no dijo la verdad.	I am convinced that he did not tell the truth.
Me alegro de eso.	I am glad of that.
Me alegro de que no pueda venir.	I am glad that he cannot come.
No me acuerdo de su nombre.	I do not remember his name.
Me acuerdo de que se llama Pedro.	I remember that he is called Peter.
Estoy seguro del hecho.	I am certain of the fact.
Estoy seguro de que no dará nada.	I am certain that he will give nothing.

207. With verbs meaning *to take* (*from*), *to ask* (*of*), etc., *of* or *from* is expressed in Spanish by **a.**

El capitán quitó el puñal al soldado.	The captain took the dagger from the soldier.
Hemos pedido un favor a tu señor padre.	We asked a favor of your father.
¿ A quién compraste el caballo ?	Of whom did you buy the horse ?

a. A personal pronoun object is put in the dative case (indirect object).

Me han robado mucho dinero.	They have stolen a great deal of money from me.
Se lo quité.	I took it away from him.

208. In English nouns are often used adjectively, as in *a wheel chair*, *a saw-mill*, etc. A noun used adjectively in English is usually expressed in Spanish by a noun preceded by **de** or **para.**

Una estatua de mármol.	A marble statue.
Una vela de cera.	A wax candle.

Una máquina de coser.	A sewing-machine.
Un vaso para vino.	A wineglass.
Una cuchara para sopa.	A soup spoon.

209. Irregular Verbs

caber (to) be contained in	**salir** (to) go out
poner (to) put	**traer** (to) bring
asir (to) grasp	**conducir** (to) lead
valer (to) be worth	

Study §§ 266, 271, 272, 273, 274, 277, and 278.

210. Idiomatic Expressions

se pone pálida, she becomes pale.
el café se pondrá frío, the coffee will get cold.
¿ has puesto la mesa? have you set the table?
el sol se pone, the sun is setting.
esta gallina no pone huevos, this hen doesn't lay eggs.
la niña se puso a llorar, the little girl began to cry.
¿ quién salió? who won?
salir a luz, (to) be published.
río abajo, down-stream.
días antes, days before.
meses después, months afterward.
dice que sí (que no), he says so (not).
creo que sí (que no), I believe so (not).
espero que sí (que no), I hope so (not).
me parece que sí (que no), it seems to me so (it doesn't seem to me so).
acaba de partir, he has just left.
acababa de partir, he had just left.
huele a tabaco, it smells of tobacco.
sabe a ajo, it tastes of garlic.
no volveré a mentir, I shall not lie again.
poco faltó para que se cayese (cayera), he almost fell.
hoy mismo, this very day.
ayer mismo, even yesterday.
por la tarde, in the evening.
mañana por la mañana, tomorrow morning.
¿ cuánto vale? how much is it worth?
no vale nada, it's good for nothing.
no vale la pena, it isn't worth while.
más vale tarde que nunca, it is better late than never.
ir escalera arriba (abajo), (to) go upstairs (downstairs).
tierra adentro, inland.
mar afuera, seaward.
¿ vive usted por aquí? do you live about here?
voy por pan, I am going after bread.
he enviado por el médico, I have sent for the physician.

te pagaré para el 5 de mayo, I shall pay you (by) the 5th of May.

leyó la carta para sí, he read the letter to himself.

este niño es pequeño para su edad, this child is small for his age.

no sirve para nada, it is good for nothing.

estudia para médico, he is studying to be a physician.

EXERCISES

A. — ¿ Por qué no viene Luisa ?

— Está en su habitación. Se cayó esta mañana al bajarse del automóvil. — ¿ Se hizo mucho daño ? — Creo que sí, porque al principio se puso pálida y luego se puso a llorar.

— Ah, ahí viene al fin. Más vale tarde que nunca. A ver, Luisa, ¿ cómo está ?

— Muy bien, gracias. Me siento mucho mejor.

Clara ¿ quieres poner la mesa ? Quisiera que aprendieras a hacerlo. El mantel está puesto. Aquí tengo las servilletas. Trae los platos. Ten cuidado, no los dejes caer.

— ¿ Cuántos cubiertos hay que poner, seis o siete ?

— Seis. Para cada uno pon un cuchillo, una cuchara para sopa, dos cucharitas y dos tenedores. No te olvides de poner un plato sopero y un vaso. Pon también saleros, pimenteros, la aceitera, la vinagrera y el azucarero. Deja las tazas y los platillos en el aparador. Ya es hora de comer. Hace tiempo que se puso el sol y pronto irá obscureciendo. La comida se pondrá fría. Ah, ya están aquí Antonio y María.

Antonio Blasco cogió un ladrón anoche. A las once y cuarto estaba para entrar en su casa cuando vió un hombre en el patio. El ladrón entró por una ventana. Antonio tenía un revólver, pero por temor de herir a alguien y por no asustar al vecindario, no disparó. Cuidadosamente se acercó a la ventana. Se subió sobre un barril que había usado el ladrón, pero poco faltó para que se cayese. Cuando el ladrón iba a salir Antonio le agarró por detrás y le quitó

el revólver que llevaba. Cerca de la ventana había una mesita de caoba y sobre ella una estatua de mármol. En la lucha con el ladrón la estatua se cayó de la mesita y se rompió. El ladrón no le había robado mucho y Antonio no le delató a la policía. El ladrón prometió marcharse del pueblo hoy mismo. Antonio dice que no se arrepiente de lo que hizo por él. Está seguro de que cualquiera haría lo mismo.

B. 1. ¿Dónde está Luisa? 2. ¿Qué tiene que hacer Clara? 3. ¿Qué está puesto ya? 4. ¿Cuántos cubiertos hay que poner? 5. ¿Qué debe ponerse en la mesa? 6. ¿Qué debe dejar Luisa en el aparador? 7. ¿A qué horas come usted? 8. ¿Cuándo se pone el sol? 9 ¿Quién cogió un ladrón? 10. ¿Por dónde entró el ladrón? 11. ¿Por qué no disparó Antonio? 12. ¿Sobre qué se subió Antonio? 13. ¿Qué le quitó Antonio al ladrón? 14. ¿Cuánto había robado el ladrón? 15. ¿Qué prometió el ladrón?

C. 1. *Place a preposition in the blank space:* acabamos comer; mañana la tarde parto Córdoba Granada; voy Granada un año; come vivir, pero no vivas comer; compré un reloj oro; busco una taza [illegible] té y voy tomar una taza té; hágame Vd. el favor darme un vaso agua; entraron la ventana y salieron la puerta; pugnaron con él salir y poco faltó que le mataran; mi padre va darme una máquina coser; la casa donde nací; vamos entrar la casa; casi estoy seguro que Juan lo hizo; esta pluma no sirve nada; me acuerdo que se llama Felipe; estoy convencido que me dijo una mentira; no volveré mentir; compré el caballo don Carlos mi hijo; mi hijo se alegra que lo comprara; ¿cuánto pagó Vd. el caballo? quité el ladrón el revólver que tenía; estaba matarme; yo tenía miedo que me matase;

poco faltó que me matara; no quisiera pedir un favor mi padre; creo que lo hizo engañarme; estoy convencido que trató engañarme; vamos estudiar mucho aprender el español; empezamos estudiar por el profesor Ortiz; ¿escribió Vd. la carta? no, señor, fué escrita mi hermana; tengo una carta ti; hoy recibí más diez cartas; doña Ana fué amada todos; don Pablo es temido todos; esta casa fué construída un buen arquitecto.

D. 1. Come here, and sit down here near me. 2. Do you know my nephew Charles? 3. — I believe so. Didn't I meet him two years ago in Philadelphia?

4. — Probably. Read what he says in this letter. 5. — "Dear Uncle: I wish to ask a favor of you. 6. I have been here six months, and I should like to return to America. 7. But I have no more money. 8. Will you send me what I need for (**para**) the trip?" 9. — That's all I wanted you to read. 10. What do you think of it? 11. — That is indeed good! Is he industrious?

12. — Oh, yes, very. I am glad that he went to Europe. 13. He had been working hard, and was very tired. 14. First he went to Paris. 15. Then, three months later, he left for Madrid. 16. There he has met very fine people. 17. — Are you sure that he will return immediately? 18. — I have no doubt that he will do as he promises. 19. He is very fond of me, and will not deceive me. 20. When he was small, he used to come to see me almost every day. 21. He would come in the afternoon, and would go home after dinner. 22. One day, while he was here, he became very ill. 23. I sent for a physician. 24. The doctor told me it was nothing. 25. The little boy had tried to smoke and had swallowed some tobacco, and that made him sick. 26. A few days before I had told him not to smoke. 27. He was very small for his age, and I told him that if he smoked he would not grow fast. 28. I asked him not to smoke. 29. He doesn't smoke any more. 30. He does for me anything I ask of him.

LESSON XXIX

Conjunctions

211. **y, e** (before initial **i** or **hi**), *and*.

Padre y madre.	Father and mother.
Padre e hijo.	Father and son.

a. **y** is used before **y** and the diphthong (**h**)**ie**.

Tú y yo.	You and I.
Corta y hiere.	It cuts and wounds.

212. **o, u** (before initial **o** or **ho**), *or*.

Cinco o seis.	Five or six.
Siete u ocho.	Seven or eight.
Flores u hojas.	Flowers or leaves.

a. **o**, like **a**, *to*, formerly had the accent (**ó, á**), but the accent is now usually omitted except when **o** is placed between numerals, as in **5 ó 6**, 5 *or* 6.

213. **Pero, mas, sino** (after a negative statement which is offset by an affirmative statement), *but*.[1]

Somos los servidores del rey, pero no sus esclavos.	We are the king's servants, but not his slaves.
Lo dice, mas no lo creo.	He says so, but I do not believe it.
No voy a París sino a Madrid.	I am not going to Paris, but to Madrid.

a. *But*, as adverb or preposition, is often expressed by **no . . . sino**, and *no . . . but* by **no . . . más que**.

No nos visita sino raramente.	He visits us but rarely.
No tengo más amigo que tú.	I have no friend but you.

214. **Cuando** (interrogatively, **cuándo**), *when*.

Se lo diré cuando venga.	I shall tell him when he comes.
¿ Cuándo lo hará usted ?	When will you do it ?

[1] Colloquially, **pero** is used much oftener than **mas**.

a. **Que** is used instead of **cuando** to introduce a clause that limits the meaning of an adverb or adverb-phrase of time.

En el momento que venga, se lo daré.	The moment (that) he comes I shall give it to him.
Un día que estuve en Barcelona.	One day when I was in Barcelona.

215. Donde (interrogatively, **dónde**), *where,* is often made more specific by prefixing **a, en,** or **de.**

¿ Adónde va usted?	Where are you going?
La casa (en) donde vive.	The house in which he lives.
¿ De dónde viene?	Where does he come from?

Porque, *because,* **por qué,** *why.*

No lo hice porque no quería hacerlo.	I did not do it because I did not want to do it.
¿ Por qué no vino usted ayer?	Why did you not come yesterday?

216. Agreement of Subject and Verb. — A verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

yo soy I am; **tú eres** you are, etc.

(1) Two or more singular subjects take a verb in the plural: **él y ella son,** *he and she are.*

(2) When subjects are of different persons, the verb is in the first person plural if any of the subjects is of the first person; and it is in the second person if the subjects are of the second and third persons.

tú y yo somos you and I are
él y yo somos he and I are
tú y él sois you and he are

217. Word Order

(1) In an affirmative sentence, the subject may precede or it may follow the verb.

El hombre está enfermo.	The man is ill.
Ya llegó mi amigo.	My friend has already arrived.

(2) In an interrogative sentence, the subject usually follows the verb.

¿ Lo compró su hermano?	Did your brother buy it?

But one may say: **¿ su hermano lo compró?**

218. When the subject follows the verb:

(1) A noun object usually precedes a noun subject.

¿ Compró la casa tu señor padre?	Did your father buy the house?

But if the object is the longer, it follows.

¿ Compró tu padre todas estas casas?	Did your father buy all these houses?

(2) A predicate adjective usually precedes a noun subject

¿ Es interesante el libro?	Is the book interesting?

(3) A pronoun subject immediately follows the verb and precedes a noun object or a predicate adjective.

No quiero yo el caballo.	I do not want the horse.
¿ Está usted enfermo?	Are you ill?

(4) In a subordinate clause, the subject often follows the verb if there be no noun object.

Esperaremos hasta que llegue el tren.	We shall wait until the train comes.

(5) The parts of a perfect tense are not separable.

¿ Ha comprado Vd. (*not* **ha Vd. c.) la casa?**	Have you bought the house?

219. If an adverb does not come first in the sentence, it usually follows the verb immediately.

Mañana hablaremos el gobernador y yo.	Tomorrow the governor and I shall have a talk.
Aquí se habla inglés.	English is spoken here.
Dice siempre la verdad.	He always tells the truth.
Contestó muy tranquilamente el joven.	The young man answered quite calmly.

220. Anomalous Past Participles

Study §§ 281–282.

221. Idiomatic Expressions

a principios de mayo, the first of May.
a mediados de junio, the middle of June.
a fines (últimos) de julio, the last of July.
¿ a cuántos estamos ? what day of the month is this ?
a los pocos años de estar en Madrid, after being in Madrid a few years.
al otro lado, on the other side.
al (a lo) menos, at least.
a la francesa, after the fashion of the French.
poco a poco, little by little.
uno a uno, one by one.
¿ a cuánto se vende ? what is it worth ?
a peso la vara, el metro, a dollar a yard, a meter.
quinientos pesos al año, five hundred dollars a year.
temblar de frío, (to) tremble with cold.
estoy mejor (peor) de salud, I am in better (worse) health.
huérfano de madre (padre), orphan on the mother's (father's) side.
camino de Cádiz, on the way to Cadiz.
dos billetes de diez pesos, two ten-dollar bills (bank notes).
de esta manera *or* **de este modo,** in this way.
caer de rodillas, (to) fall on one's knees.
trabajar de sastre, (to) work as tailor.
servir de guía, (to) serve as guide.
ciego de cólera, blind with anger.
desde luego, at once.
pobre de mí, poor me.
la buena de la Justina, good Justine.
estar en casa, (to) be at home
está en casa del Señor Montejo, he is at Mr. Montejo's.
ir a casa, (to) go home.
va a casa de un vecino, he is going to a neighbor's.
viene de casa de mi tío, he comes from my uncle's.

EXERCISES

A. ¿ Adónde vamos ahora ? — No vamos a casa. Vamos a casa de José Herrera. Está esperando a Ramiro Vega y a su hijo Miguel. Ellos no vienen a esta ciudad sino rara vez. Hace ya unos siete u ocho años que no vienen. Padre e hijo viajan mucho por el extranjero. Han ido a España muchas

veces. Han estado en Francia también, pero no han aprendido a hablar francés. Generalmente, cuando van allá, se hospedan donde se habla español. Pasado mañana vuelven a partir para Europa. Esta vez no irán a España ni a Francia, sino a Italia. Quisiera acompañarlos, pero me es imposible. Volverán a fines de agosto.

Miguel es un muchacho muy desgraciado. Es bastante rico y no tiene que trabajar. Pero es huérfano de madre y rara vez está bien de salud. No tiene más amigo íntimo que José. Le gusta escribir. Ha escrito dos libros, pero solamente uno ha sido impreso. Cuando viaja escribe sus impresiones de los lugares que visita. De esta manera pasa el tiempo. Una vez que José estaba en Cádiz, Miguel quiso ir a visitarle. Estaba entonces en un pueblecito cerca de Sevilla. Camino de Cádiz cayó enfermo. Se apeó del caballo y se hospedó en casa de unos campesinos. Un viejecito sevillano le servía de guía. Miguel le dió al sevillano dos billetes de cien pesetas y una carta para José. Naturalmente José en seguida fué a ver a su amigo.

B. 1. ¿ A quién espera José? 2. ¿ Por dónde viajan Miguel y su padre? 3. ¿ Adónde han ido? 4. ¿ Qué idioma no han aprendido? 5. ¿ Cuándo vuelven a partir? 6. ¿ Adónde irán? 7. ¿ Cuándo volverán? 8. ¿ Por qué es desgraciado Miguel? 9. ¿ Qué le gusta hacer? 10. ¿ Cuántos libros ha escrito? 11. ¿ Qué escribe cuando viaja? 12. ¿ Dónde estaba Miguel cuando José fué a Cádiz? 13. ¿ Qué le sucedió camino de Cádiz? 14. ¿ Dónde se hospedó? 15. ¿ Quién le servía de guía? 16. ¿ Qué le dió al sevillano?

C. 1. *Place the word given in parenthesis in its proper place or places in the sentence:* (Pablo) ¿ lo vendió? 2. (don Felipe) ¿ está enfermo? 3. (Juan) estaré aquí hasta que venga. 4. (ahora) ¿ empieza la función? 5. (tu tío) ¿ vendió todos los libros? 6. (ayer) mi tío vendió todos los

libros. 7. (el señor Martínez) ¿ ha comprado la casa? 8. (interesante) ¿ es la carta? 9. (siempre) digo la verdad. 10. (usted) ¿ está cansado? 11. (fácil) ¿ es la lección de español? 12. (La lección) ¿ es fácil o difícil? 13. (el tren) esperaremos hasta que llegue. 14. (ya) llegó el tren. 15. (aquí) se habla español. 16. (mañana) hablaremos el profesor y yo. 17. (María) ¿ escribió una carta interesante? 18. (Pablo y Felipe) ¿ escribieron el tema?

2. *Substitute for the dash the proper adverb or conjunction:* el país de —— vengo; era un joven fino —— inteligente; su nota era « sobresaliente » —— « óptimo »; deseo mucho verle, —— me es imposible; no voy a Madrid —— a París; tenemos cuatro —— cinco plumas y siete —— ocho lápices; él lo dice, —— yo no lo creo; ¿ a —— va usted? ¿ de —— viene usted? madre —— hija, padre —— hijo, todos estaban enfermos; el padre —— su hijo murieron; hay nueve —— diez tomos ¿ no es verdad? No, señor, hay diez —— once; no es español, —— francés.

3. *Substitute for the dash the proper form of the present indicative of the verb in parenthesis:* (ser) tú, él y yo —— de la misma edad; tú y él —— buenos amigos; (pensar) él y yo —— partir mañana; (estudiar) usted y Juan no ——: sí, señor, Juan y yo —— mucho.

D. 1. What day of the month is it? 2. — It is the tenth of March, isn't it? 3. — Oh, I am glad. Joseph will be at home very soon. 4. He went away the last of December. 5. — Where is he now? 6. — I am not sure where he is. 7. He wrote that he was leaving New York. 8. But he didn't say where he was going then, or when he would arrive here. 9. He said only that he would be here after the ninth. 10. When he comes, he ought to rest a few days. 11. He is not in very good health, and has been traveling a great deal. 12. As you know, he is frequently away. 13. When he is at home he writes verses. 14. He has written four volumes, and they have all been published. 15. — Didn't he buy that house on the other side of the square? 16. — He didn't (buy it);

at least I don't believe he did (buy it). 17. I believe his old friend John Mora was the one who bought it.

18. John Mora is the man who has opened the new shop. 19. He used to work as a tailor. 20. Before that he served as a guide in the mountains. 21. There he earned little money, but he spent less. 22. Thus he saved his dollars, little by little, one by one. 23. One day when Joseph took a trip to the country he saw Mora. 24. He employed him several times. 25. He asked him to come to the city. 26. When he arrived at the station, Mora was very hungry, and immediately he looked for a restaurant. 27. He ate a good meal, but he thought the charge was too high. 28. He refused to pay it, and was arrested by the police. 29. Now he himself sells things at high prices. 30. For instance, he sold me this velvet at three dollars a yard. 31. My friends tell me that one (**uno**) can buy it anywhere else for less.

LESSON XXX

222. Qualifying Suffixes

The Spanish diminutive and augmentative suffixes consist of endings all of which may be attached to nouns, while some diminutives may be attached to adjectives and adverbs. They occur commonly in colloquial language, but rarely in elevated diction. The foreigner should use them with the utmost caution. It is generally safe to use **–ito,** but one not to the manner born would best avoid the other suffixes until he has become familiar with their use.

a. The qualifying suffixes are attached to the stem of a word after it has dropped a final unstressed vowel or, often, an unstressed diphthong.

pájaro, pajarillo **amigo, amiguito** **rosario, rosarito**

223. Diminutives. — There are three forms of most diminutive suffixes, as follows: (1) **–ito, –illo, –uelo,** etc.; (2) **–cito, –cillo, –zuelo,** etc.; and (3) **–ecito, –ecillo, –ezuelo,** etc.

a. The third form (**–ecito,**[1] **–ecillo, –ezuelo,** etc.) is used:

(1) With monosyllables.

flor flower	**florecita** little flower
pez fish	**pececito** little fish
rey king	**reyezuelo** little king

(2) With words of more than one syllable, ending in **–e.**

viaje journey	**viajecito** little trip
aire air	**airecillo** light breeze

(3) With words ending in **–a** or **–o,** that have the radical diphthong **–ie** or **–ue.**[2]

viento wind	**vientecito** slight breeze
piedra stone	**piedrecita** little stone
pueblo village	**pueblecillo** little village

(4) With some words ending in unstressed **–ia, –io, –ua, –uo.**

bestia beast	**bestiecita** little beast
genio genius	**geniecillo** little genius
lengua tongue	**lengüecita** little tongue
arduo arduous	**arduecito** rather arduous

b. The second form (**–cito, –cillo, –zuelo,** etc.) is used with words of more than one syllable, ending in **–n** or **–r,** and especially if they have the stress on the final syllable.

ladrón thief	**ladroncillo** petty thief
joven young man	**jovencito** youth
autor author	**autorcillo** young author

But:

árbol tree	**arbolito** little tree

[1] **Pie** makes **piececito, piececillo,** etc.

[2] In old Spanish the radical diphthongs **ie** and **ue** usually reverted to **e** and **o** when a qualifying suffix was added: as in **puerta,** *door,* **portezuela,** *carriage door;* but in modern Spanish the diphthongs are usually retained: **nieto, nietecillo; huevo, huevecillo,** etc.

c. The first form (**–ito, –illo, –uelo,** etc.) is used in all other cases.

hermano brother	**hermanito** little brother
pollo fowl	**polluelo** chick

d. There are some exceptions to the above rules; such as

mano hand	**manecita** (*or* **manita**) little hand
abuelo grandfather	**abuelito** dear little grandfather
agrio sour	**agrillo** rather sour
jardín garden	**jardinito** (*or* **jardincito**) little garden

224. The meaning of the various diminutive suffixes is as follows:

a. **–ito** (**–a**), **–cito** (**–a**), **–ecito** (**–a**), express smallness of size, quality, or degree, together with fondness, admiration, and respect. They may usually be translated *little, dear little,* etc.

pobre hijita mía my poor dear child	**madrecita** dear little mother
gatito kitten	**un poquito** a very little
una niña grandecita a rather large girl	**toditos los días** every single day
	cerquita quite near

b. **–illo** (**–a**), **–cillo** (**–a**), **–ecillo** (**–a**), express smallness of size, quality or degree, with indifference, or with depreciation, ridicule or pity.

ladroncillo little thief	**pobre viejecillo** poor old man
sonrisilla faint smile	**pobrecillo** poor little fellow

c. **–uelo** (**–a**), **–zuelo** (**–a**), **–ezuelo** (**–a**), express smallness, sometimes accompanied with ridicule, disdain, or mockery.

plazuela little square	**sus ojuelos** his little eyes

d. **–ico** (**–a**), **–cico** (**–a**), **–ecico** (**–a**),[1] have the force of **–ito,** except that they are generally used somewhat humorously or sarcastically.

un perrico a pretty little dog

[1] In some parts of the Spanish-speaking world, e.g., Cuba, **–ico** replaces **–ito** after a stem ending in **–t:** as **platico** for **platito, gatico** for **gatito,** etc.

e. **–ete (–a), –cete (–a),** are used in a diminutive and often depreciative sense.

un pobrete a poor fellow **un caballerete** a dandy

f. **–ejo (–a)** usually denotes contempt.

librejo worthless book **amarillejo** yellowish
caminejo wretched road

g. The forms **–ín (–ina)** and **–ino (–a)** are sometimes used in Castilian to express smallness.

chiquitín wee little child **cebollino** young onion

225. Augmentative Suffixes. — *a.* **–ón (–ona)** denotes large size, with or without grotesqueness. Feminine nouns usually become masculine upon assuming this ending, unless sex is indicated.

hombrón big man **sillón** easy chair **barbón** thick beard
picarón great rogue **cucharón** ladle

In a few words, **–ón** seems to have diminutive force. Compare **rata,** *rat,* and **ratón,** *mouse.*

b. **–azo (–a)** has a meaning similar to that of **–ón,** but it is used less often.

bocaza big mouth **mujeraza** large, coarse woman

c. **–ote (–a)** is augmentative or depreciative.

palabrota naughty word **ricote** rich and pretentious

d. **–acho (–a), –ucho (–a),** and **–ajo (–a)** express disdain and contempt.

vinacho poor wine **casucha** hut **trapajo** dirty rag

226. Combinations of diminutive and augmentative endings occur.

(**chico,**[1] **chiquito**) **chiquitín** wee little child
(**hombre, hombrón**) **hombronazo** big, awkward man
(**pícaro, picarón**) **picaroncillo** small man who is a great rogue
(**pícaro, picarillo**) **picarillón** large man who is a little rogue

[1] Note **chico, chiquito, chiquitito (chiquitico).**

227. The endings **–azo** and **–ada** are often used to denote a blow, thrust, discharge, etc. These endings are neither diminutive nor augmentative, but denote the result of an action.

bastonazo blow with a walking stick **fusilazo** rifle shot
puñalada stab with a dagger

228. Defective Verbs. — Study §§ 284–292.

EXERCISES

A. Esto parece un tema escrito por una alumna de una escuela elemental. Lo digo por su índole y por los muchos aumentativos y diminutivos que contiene. Leámoslo:

El mes pasado hice un viajecito al pueblecillo donde vive mi tío. A los pocos días de estar allí quise regresar. Llegué allá a principios de julio y volví a casa a mediados del mismo mes. Mi tío es un hombrón muy feo. Su bocaza y su barbón me hacen temblar de miedo.

Cerquita de su casa vive un pobre viejecito que me gusta mucho. Sus ojuelos y su sonrisilla parecen de un niñito. Trabaja como sastre. Yo iba a verle toditos los días. Me sentaba en un sillón juntito a él y le hacía muchas preguntas. Un día le pregunté:

— ¿ A cómo se vende esta telita ?

— A pesito la varita — me dijo sonriéndose.

Con él viven su hija y dos nietecitos. El chiquitín tiene unos ocho años. Su hermanita es ya una niña grandecita. Pero tiene unos piececitos más pequeñitos que los de su hermanito. El viejecito quiere mucho a sus nietecitos. Pero un día se puso ciego de cólera y castigó al niñito.

Estábamos él, su hermanita y yo en el jardincito. Debajo de un arbolito el chiquitín jugaba con tres pollitos que le había comprado el abuelito. El gato de una casa vecina se acercó poco a poco y de un arañazo mató a uno de los

pollitos. El niño se puso a llorar y luego dijo unas cuantas palabrotas. Por eso su abuelito le castigó.

B. 1. ¿ Quién escribió el tema? 2. ¿ Qué contiene el tema? 3. ¿ Dónde vive el tío? 4. ¿ Qué es el tío? 5. ¿ Qué tiene? 6. ¿ Quién vive cerca de la casa del tío? 7. ¿ Con quién vive el viejecito? 8. ¿ Cuántos años tiene el chiquitín? 9. ¿ A quién quiere el viejecito? 10. ¿ Quién se puso ciego de cólera? 11. ¿ Qué había comprado el abuelito?

C. 1. *Give the noun, adjective, adverb, or participle to which the suffix has been added, and in each case give the meaning of both words:* la hijita (la hija), los hermanitos, la plazuela, el pillete, el hombrecillo, el hombrón, el caminejo, el reyezuelo, la jovencita, un talentazo, los gatitos, Carlitos, madrecita, el abogadillo, el picarillo, un sillón, una sillita, una cucharita, un cucharón, un picarillo, un picarón, un ladroncillo, un arbolito, los polluelos, la señorita, una viejecita, una florecita, mi abuelita, una sonrisilla, la manecita, un perrito, una piedrecita, la lengüecita, amarillejo, un fusilazo, el vinacho, un vientecito, los pobrecitos, mis amiguitos, seis amigotes, la bestiecita, ricote, sus ojuelos, el pueblecillo, sus piececitos, el rosarito, mi nietecita.

2. *Read the following sentences both with and without the suffixes and explain the difference in meaning: Ahorita* estaré de vuelta; la ensalada está *cargadita* de mostaza; es *lejitos;* no fué más que un *descuidillo; caballerito,* una *limosnita,* un *centavito,* o cualquier *cosita* que quiera darme; es una niña *grandecita;* le dió una *puñalada* y no un *bastonazo;* no me gusta la *casucha;* viene a verme *toditos* los días; un *chiquitín;* me dijo unas *palabrotas;* no es más que un *caballerete;* perdió un *poquito;* el pobre *viejecito* murió ayer; me caí en la *plazuela;* es *cerquita;* el *autorcillo* escribió un *librejo;* salió de la sala *callandito;* mi *nietecito* llegó esta mañana; está *cansadito.*

3. *It is suggested that the process now be reversed, the in-*

structor reading the words in 1 *and* 2 *without the suffixes, while the students, with books closed, repeat them with suffixes.*

D. 1. Last summer I spent two months in a village. 2. I had a small room in a cottage. 3. This cottage was quite near a little square. 4. Every single day I would sit on an easy chair on the veranda. 5. I could look at the little children playing in the little square. 6. Behind the house there was a little garden. 7. In it there were a few small trees and many tiny flowers. 8. There were also a few hens and many chicks. 9. The owner of the cottage was a large coarse woman. 10. She had two children, a wee little boy of three, and a rather large girl.

11. Quite near the village there was a small forest. 12. In the middle of the small forest there was a pond. 13. Sometimes I would go out with the little boy and the girl for a short walk.[1] 14. The girl was looking for some little flowers for her little brother. 15. I tried to catch some little fishes for him. 16. But he would throw little stones into the pond. 17. [At] other times I would make little boats for him. 18. When a light breeze came up, the boats would go. 19. Then the little boy would become rather excited.

20. There was a hut not far from the pond. 21. In it lived a poor old man. 22. Sometimes I would give him money or some little thing. 23. He had a pretty little dog. 24. This little dog used to follow us. 25. The little boy used to play with him. 26. One day I heard a rifle shot. 27. I ran to the hut, and found the poor old man very angry. 28. A big man had killed the little dog.

[1] **a dar un paseíto.**

VERBS

229. Like its prototype, the Latin verb, the Spanish verb shows changes of mood, tense, and person, by the addition to a verb stem of certain inflectional endings:

habl–ar to speak	**habl–o** I speak
habl–aba I used to speak, *or* I was speaking	**habl–é** I spoke
	habl–ando speaking

It resembles the English verb in forming compound tenses by adding to an auxiliary verb the past participle, or the present participle, of a principal verb; e.g.:

he hablado I have spoken; **estoy hablando** I am speaking

230. For the sake of convenience we may consider the Spanish verb under five different headings: (1) the regular verb, (2) the verb with inceptive endings, (3) the radical-changing verb, (4) the **–uir** (**–üir**) verb, (5) the irregular verb.

231. There are six principal parts, a knowledge of which will aid in the formation of the other parts of many verbs: these are the present infinitive, the past participle, the present participle (or gerund), the first person singular of the present indicative, the first person singular of the preterite indicative, and the third person singular of the preterite indicative.

(1) The present infinitive is the basis of the future indicative and the conditional of all verbs. For the future, there are added to the infinitive of the verb in question the forms, or the ending (as in the case of the second plural), of the present indicative of the verb **haber,** *to have.* The initial **h** of the forms of **haber** disappears in the composition.

For the conditional, there are added to the infinitive of the verb in question the endings of the imperfect indicative of **haber.** Irregular verbs may show a certain alteration of the infinitive basis.

(2) The past participle enters into the composition of all perfect tenses.

(3) The present participle, or gerund, enters into the composition of the periphrastic progressive tenses.

(4) The first person singular present indicative has, *in regular verbs*, the same stem as the rest of the verb, except the future and the conditional of the indicative. In radical-changing, irregular, inceptive, and **–uir** verbs, it usually furnishes the stem for the first person singular of the present subjunctive.

(5) The first person singular preterite indicative has the same stem as all the rest of that tense in regular, inceptive, **–uir,** and irregular verbs; and as the second singular and the first and second plural of this same tense in radical-changing verbs. Its stem is also the same as that of the subjunctive imperfect tenses and the future (or hypothetical) subjunctive of all but radical-changing verbs.

(6) The third person singular preterite indicative has, in radical-changing verbs, the same stem as the third plural of that tense, and as the subjunctive imperfect tenses and the hypothetical subjunctive.

(Apart from regular verbs, the above rules are not complete guides, and practice must be relied on. Note also certain orthographic changes that occur in some verbs.)

232. Regular Verbs. — It is the custom to speak of three regular conjugations in Spanish, classified, according to their endings, as the **–ar,** or first; the **–er,** or second; and the **–ir,** or third conjugation. In actual practice, however, we find that there are but two entire conjugations, for in all but four forms (the present infinitive, the first and second

persons plural of the present indicative, and the second person plural of the imperative) the **–ir** or third conjugation has the same endings as the **–er,** or second. In the four exceptional forms, the third conjugation has the distinctive vowel **i** (**–ir, –imos, –ís, –id**), whereas the second has **e** (**–er, –emos, –éis, –ed**). The following are the paradigms:

I	II	III
	INFINITIVE MOOD	
Present	**Present**	**Present**
habl **ar** *to speak*	tem **er** *to fear*	viv **ir** *to live*
	PARTICIPLES	
Present (Gerund)	**Present** (Gerund)	**Present** (Gerund)
habl **ando** *speaking*	tem **iendo** *fearing*	viv **iendo** *living*
Past	**Past**	**Past**
habl **ado** *spoken*	tem **ido** *feared*	viv **ido** *lived*
	INDICATIVE MOOD	
Present	**Present**	**Present**
I speak, do speak, am speaking, etc.	*I fear, do fear, am fearing, etc.*	*I live, do live, am living, etc.*
habl **o**	tem **o**	viv **o**
habl **as**	tem **es**	viv **es**
habl **a**	tem **e**	viv **e**
habl **amos**	tem **emos**	viv **imos**
habl **áis**	tem **éis**	viv **ís**
habl **an**	tem **en**	viv **en**
Imperfect	**Imperfect**	**Imperfect**
I spoke, was speaking, used to speak, etc.	*I feared, was fearing, used to fear, etc.*	*I lived, was living, used to live, etc.*
habl **aba**	tem **ía**	viv **ía**
habl **abas**	tem **ías**	viv **ías**
habl **aba**	tem **ía**	viv **ía**
habl **ábamos**	tem **íamos**	viv **íamos**
habl **abais**	tem **íais**	viv **íais**
habl **aban**	tem **ían**	viv **ían**

Preterite	Preterite	Preterite
I spoke, etc.	*I feared, etc.*	*I lived, etc.*
habl é	tem í	viv í
habl aste	tem iste	viv iste
habl ó	tem ió	viv ió
habl amos	tem imos	viv imos
habl asteis	tem isteis	viv isteis
habl aron	tem ieron	viv ieron

Future	Future	Future
I shall speak, etc.	*I shall fear, etc.*	*I shall live, etc.*
hablar é	temer é	vivir é
hablar ás	temer ás	vivir ás
hablar á	temer á	vivir á
hablar emos	temer emos	vivir emos
hablar éis	temer éis	vivir éis
hablar án	temer án	vivir án

Conditional	Conditional	Conditional
I should speak, etc.	*I should fear, etc.*	*I should live, etc.*
hablar ía	temer ía	vivir ía
hablar ías	temer ías	vivir ías
hablar ía	temer ía	vivir ía
hablar íamos	temer íamos	vivir íamos
hablar íais	temer íais	vivir íais
hablar ían	temer ían	vivir ían

IMPERATIVE MOOD

speak, etc.	*fear, etc.*	*live, etc.*
2*d Sg.* habl a	tem e	viv e
2*d Pl.* habl ad	tem ed	viv id

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present	Present	Present
(*That I may*) *speak,* (*let me*) *speak, etc.*	(*That I may*) *fear,* (*let me*) *fear, etc.*	(*That I may*) *live,* (*let me*) *live, etc.*
habl e	tem a	viv a
habl es	tem as	viv as
habl e	tem a	viv a

habl emos	tem amos	viv amos
habl éis	tem áis	viv áis
habl en	tem an	viv an
Imperfect	**Imperfect**	**Imperfect**
First Form (–se Imperfect)	First Form (–se Imperfect)	First Form (–se Imperfect)
(*That* or *if I might*) *speak, etc.*	(*That* or *if I might*) *fear, etc.*	(*That* or *if I might*) *live, etc.*
habl ase	tem iese	viv iese
habl ases	tem ieses	viv ieses
habl ase	tem iese	viv iese
habl ásemos	tem iésemos	viv iésemos
habl aseis	tem ieseis	viv ieseis
habl asen	tem iesen	viv iesen
Imperfect	**Imperfect**	**Imperfect**
Second Form (–ra Imperfect)	Second Form (–ra Imperfect)	Second Form (–ra Imperfect)
I should speak, (*that* or *if I might*) *speak, etc.*	*I should fear,* (*that* or *if I might*) *fear, etc.*	*I should live,* (*that* or *if I might*) *live, etc.*
habl ara	tem iera	viv iera
habl aras	tem ieras	viv ieras
habl ara	tem iera	viv iera
habl áramos	tem iéramos	viv iéramos
habl arais	tem ierais	viv ierais
habl aran	tem ieran	viv ieran
Future	**Future**	**Future**
(or Hypothetical)	(or Hypothetical)	(or Hypothetical)
I (*may* or *shall*) *speak, etc.*	*I* (*may* or *shall*) *fear, etc.*	*I* (*may* or *shall*) *live, etc.*
habl are	tem iere	viv iere
habl ares	tem ieres	viv ieres
habl are	tem iere	viv iere
habl áremos	tem iéremos	viv iéremos
habl areis	tem iereis	viv iereis
habl aren	tem ieren	viv ieren

233. Compound Perfect Tenses. — The compound tenses of all verbs, regular or not, are formed by adding their past participle (invariable) to a part of the auxiliary **haber,** *to have;* e.g.:

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Present Perfect	**Present Perfect (Perfect Gerund)**
to have spoken	*having spoken*
haber hablado	habiendo hablado

INDICATIVE

Present Perfect	**Preterite Perfect (Past Anterior)**
I have spoken, etc.	*I had spoken, etc.*
he hablado	hube hablado
has hablado	*etc.*
etc.	

Pluperfect	**Future Perfect**
I had spoken, etc.	*I shall have spoken, etc.*
había hablado	habré hablado
etc.	*etc.*

Conditional Perfect

I should have spoken, etc.
habría hablado
etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present Perfect	**Future (or Hypothetical) Perfect**
(*That I may*) *have spoken, etc.*	*I* (*may* or *shall*) *have spoken, etc.*
haya hablado	hubiere hablado
etc.	*etc.*

Pluperfect	**Pluperfect**
First Form (-se Pluperfect)	Second Form (-ra Plupferect)
(*That I might*) *have spoken, etc.*	*I should have spoken, etc.*
hubiese hablado	hubiera hablado
etc.	*etc.*

234. Periphrastic Progressive Tenses. — These are formed by adding the present participle to a part of the auxiliary **estar,** *to be* (or **ir,** *to go*, **venir,** *to come*, etc.); e.g.:

estoy (**voy,** *etc.*) **hablando** I am speaking, *etc.*

235. Orthographic Variations. — It is an inviolable rule of Spanish conjugation that the consonantal *sound* occurring at the end of the infinitive stem (i.e., immediately before the endings **–ar, –er, –ir**) shall be preserved throughout the verb. When, therefore, there is a change of the vowel beginning the flectional ending, the *written character* denoting the consonantal sound at the end of the infinitive stem may have to be changed, for the original character may not denote the original sound before the new vowel; thus it is obvious that a first conjugation verb in **–car** cannot continue to have **c** before the preterite ending, first person singular in **–é**; the original **k** sound of the infinitive stem can now be indicated only by **qu** before the **–é**.

Many of the changes here indicated for regular verbs occur also in the case of irregular verbs.

236. The usual variations in spelling are the following:

(1) Verbs in **–c–ar** change **c** to **qu** before flectional **e**. The change can occur only in the present subjunctive and in the first person singular of the preterite indicative.

Sacar *to take out*

Pret. 1st Sing.	saqué					
Pres. Subj.	saque	saques	saque	saquemos	saquéis	saquen

(2) Verbs in **–g–ar** insert **u** between the **g** and flectional **e**. The cases of change are the same as for **–car** verbs.

Pagar *to pay*

Pret. 1st Sing. pagué *Pres. Subj.* pague, *etc.*

(The **u** has no pronounceable value: it is a mere sign that the **g** is "hard" before the following **e**.)

(3) Verbs in **–gu–ar** write a diæresis over the **u** before flectional **e**. This is necessary in order to indicate that the **u**, which has a pronounceable value before the infinitive ending **–ar**, continues to have one before the **–e**. Without the diæresis **u** is silent in the combination **gue**.

Apaciguar *to pacify*

Pret. 1st Sing. apacigüé *Pres. Subj.* apacigüe, *etc.*

(4) Verbs in **–z–ar** change **z** to **c** before flectional **e**. The cases concerned are the same as in the three preceding classes, but the variation in spelling is a purely conventional one (due to the fact that modern Spanish does not write **z** before **e** or **i**), and no possible change of sound is involved.

Rezar *to pray*

Pret. 1st Sing. recé *Pres. Subj.* rece, *etc.*

237. The preceding cases concern only verbs of the first conjugation. In the ensuing ones we deal with second and third conjugation verbs.

(1) Verbs in **–c–er** or **–c–ir** preceded by a consonant change **c** to **z** before flectional **o** or **a**. The cases concerned here and in the three following classes are the first person singular of the present indicative and all of the present subjunctive.

Vencer *to conquer*

Pres. Indic., 1st Sing. venzo

Pres. Subj. venza venzas venza venzamos venzáis venzan

Esparcir *to scatter*

Pres Indic., 1st Sing. esparzo *Pres. Subj.* esparza, *etc.*

a. For verbs in **–cer** and **–cir** preceded by a vowel, see the Inceptive Conjugation, § 242.

(2) Verbs in **–g–er** or **–g–ir**, whether regular verbs or not, change **g** to **j** before flectional **o** or **a**.

Coger *to gather, take, etc.*

Pres. Indic., 1*st Sing.* cojo *Pres Subj.* coja, *etc.*

Corregir *to correct*

Pres. Indic., 1*st Sing.* corrijo
Pres. Subj. corrija, *etc.* (A radical-changing verb.)

(3) Verbs in **–qu–ir** change **qu** to **c** before flectional **o** or **a.**

Delinquir *to be delinquent*

Pres. Indic., 1*st Sing.* delinco *Pres. Subj.* delinca, *etc.*

(4) Verbs in **–gu–ir** omit the **u** before flectional **o** or **a.** The **u** is a mere sign of "hard" **g** in the infinitive, and is not needed before a following **o** or **a.**

Distinguir *to distinguish*

Pres. Indic., 1*st Sing.* distingo *Pres. Subj.* distinga, *etc.*

238. In the second and third conjugations the diphthongs **–ie–** and **–ió** occur in certain endings (present participle, third person singular, and third person plural of the preterite indicative, and throughout the two imperfects and the future or hypothetical of the subjunctive). If the verb stem end in a vowel (e.g., **le–er,** *to read*), the **i** of these diphthongal endings must be changed to **y,** for it is a general rule (and therefore applicable to all verbs, whether regular or not) that unaccented **i** can not stand between two vowels.

Le–er *to read*

Pres. Part.	le–yendo (*for* le–iendo)
Pret. Indic., 3*d Sing.*	le–yó (*for* le–ió)
3*d Pl.*	le–yeron (*for* le–ieron)
Imperf. Subj., 1*st Form*	le–yese, *etc.* (*for* le–iese, *etc.*)
2*d Form*	le–yera, *etc.* (*for* le–iera, *etc.*)
Fut. Subj.	le–yere, *etc.* (*for* le–iere, *etc.*)

This change is particularly common in **–uir** verbs (**huir,** *to flee,* **huyendo,** etc.).

239. If the verb stem end in **ll** or **ñ**, the **i** of the diphthongal endings **–ie–** and **–ió** disappears. This is true of all verbs, regular or not. Certain irregular verbs (especially **decir,** *to say,* **traer,** *to bring,* and **–ducir** derivatives) likewise lose the **i** of their **–ie–** endings after the **j** of their preterite stem.

Bullir *to boil*

Pres. Part.	bull–endo (*instead of* bull–iendo)
Pret. Indic., 3*d Sing.*	bull–ó (*instead of* bull–ió)
3*d Pl.*	bull–eron (*instead of* bull–ieron)
Impf. Subj., 1*st Form*	bull–ese, *etc.*
2*d Form*	bull–era, *etc.*
Fut. Subj.	bull–ere, *etc.*

Plañir *to lament*

plañ–endo	plañ–ó	plañ–eron
plañ–ese, *etc.*	plañ–era, *etc.*	plañ–ere, *etc.*

Traer *to bring*

Pret. Indic., 3*d Pl.*,	traj–eron		
Subj.	traj–ese, *etc.*	traj–era, *etc.*	traj–ere, *etc.*

240. In the three persons singular and in the third plural of the present tenses (indicative, subjunctive, and imperative), certain **–iar** and **–uar** verbs take an accent on the **i** or the **u.**

Variar *to vary*

Pres Indic.	varío	varías	varía	(variamos)	(variáis)	varían
Pres. Subj.	varíe	varíes	varíe	(variemos)	(variéis)	varíen
Imper. Sing.	varía					

Acentuar *to accentuate, accent*

Pres. Indic.	acentúo	acentúas	acentúa	acentúan
Pres. Subj.	acentúe	acentúes	acentúe	acentúen
Imper. Sing.	acentúa			

241. Not all the **–iar** and **–uar** verbs take this accent; cf. **principiar,** *to begin;* **principio,** *I begin;* **presenciar,** *to witness;* **presencio,** *I witness;* **diferenciar,** *to differentiate;*

diferencian, *they differentiate.* By practice only can it be determined whether the accent should fall on the **i** and the **u** or not. The verbs in the following lists are among the commonest taking the accent.

(1) **–iar:**

acuantiar	calofriar	cuantiar	enfriar	guiar	telegrafiar
aliar	cariar	desafiar	enviar	hastiar	triar
ampliar	ciar	descarriar	espiar	liar	vaciar
arriar	confiar	desconfiar	estriar	piar	vanagloriar
ataviar	contrariar	descriar	expiar	porfiar	variar
averiar	correntiar	desvariar	fiar	resfriar	vigiar
aviar	criar	desviar	gloriar	rociar	zurriar

(2) **–uar:**

acentuar	continuar	extenuar	habituar	perpetuar	situar
actuar	desvirtuar	fluctuar	individuar	puntuar	tumultuar
arruar	efectuar	ganzuar	infatuar	redituar	usufructuar
atenuar	evaluar	graduar	insinuar	ruar	valuar
conceptuar	exceptuar				

242. Verbs with Inceptive Endings. — There are certain verbs of the second and third conjugations whose infinitives end in **–cer** or **–cir** preceded by a vowel and the great majority of which are derived from Latin inceptive (*–scere*) verbs. In the present stem (indicative and subjunctive) these insert a **z** before the **c,** wherever the verb ending begins with **o** or **a.** Only seven forms undergo this change; namely, the first person singular present indicative, and the six forms of the present subjunctive. All other forms of these verbs are regular.[1]

Conocer *to know,* **conociendo, conocido**

Pres. Indic.

conozc–o	conoc–es	conoc–e	conoc–emos	conoc–éis	conoc–en

[1] The inceptive or "beginning" sense is not necessarily present in these verbs. It was already gone to a large degree in Latin.

Pres. Subj.

conozc–a conozc–as conozc–a conozc–amos conozc–áis conozc–an

Pres. Imperat. conoce, conoc–ed
Imperf. Indic. conocía, *etc.* *Pret.* conocí, *etc.*
Fut. Indic. conoceré, *etc.* *Cond.* conocería, *etc.*
Subj. Imperfs. conociese, *etc.*, conociera, *etc.*
Fut. Subj. conociere, *etc.*

Lucir *to shine,* **luciendo, lucido**

Pres. Indic. **luzc–o** luc–es luc–e luc–imos luc–ís luc–en
Pres. Subj. **luzc–a luzc–as luzc–a luzc–amos luzc–áis luzc–an**

All other forms regular as in the third conjugation.

Exceptions. — *a.* **mecer,** *to rock* (and its derivative **remecer**), simply changes **c** to **z** before **o** or **a** (**mezo, meza,** etc.); it is a regular verb of the second conjugation. **Cocer,** *to boil,* **recocer,** *to boil again,* and **escocer,** *to smart,* likewise change **c** to **z**; they are radical-changing verbs of the first class, e.g., **cuezo, cueza,** etc.; cf. § 245 (4); but **cocer** is little used in forms taking **z**. **Hacer,** *to do, make,* **decir,** *to say,* and their derivatives, are irregular verbs and not of the inceptive class. Irregular, too, are **yacer,** *to lie,* and **placer,** *to please.* **Pacer,** *to graze,* and **balbucir,** *to stammer,* are hardly used in the forms that would have an inserted **z**.

b. Certain irregular verbs conjugate their present tenses after the fashion of the inceptive verb. Thus the **–ducir** derivatives (**conducir, inducir,** etc.) have in the pres. indic. **–duzco,** and in the pres. subj. **–duzca, –duzcas, –duzca, –duzcamos, –duzcáis, –duzcan.** The rest of their present forms are also like those of **lucir**; that is, are those of regular verbs of the third conjugation. Their preterite tenses are irregular. See § 278.

243. Radical-changing Verbs. — Quite a number of verbs are regular as to their flectional endings, but under certain conditions modify the vocalic nature of their radical or root syllable. In these verbs the infinitive shows the unmodified root vowel, which must be either **e** or **o**. As a result of accentual influences or of apparent umlaut (e.g., the influence of the **i** of one of the diphthongs **ie, io,** in the following

syllable) the **e** may become **ie** or even **i** and the **o** may become **ue** or even **u**.

244. There are three main classes of these radical-changing verbs. Their variations may be represented by this scheme:

I. Root vowel **e** becomes **ie**; Root vowel **o** becomes **ue** } under the accent.

II. (1) Root vowel **e** becomes **ie**; Root vowel **o** becomes **ue** } under the accent.

(2) Root vowel **e** becomes **i**; Root vowel **o** becomes **u** } when not accented, if the following [1] syllable have **a** or one of the diphthongs **ie, io.**

III. Root vowel **e** becomes **i**, both (1) under the accent and (2) when not accented, if followed by a syllable with **a** or one of the diphthongs **ie, io.**[1]

It is well for students to be on their guard against all verbs showing **e** or **o** in what seems to be the root vowel of the infinitive. A verb list should be consulted for the purpose of ascertaining whether they are radical-changing or not.

245. The First Class of radical-changing verbs embraces only **–ar** and **–er** verbs. In these, **e** becomes **ie** and **o** becomes **ue** when the root syllable has the accent. It can have the accent only in the three persons singular and the third person plural of the present indicative and present subjunctive, and in the second person singular of the imperative. These forms alone, then, show any change: all the other forms are perfectly regular. The variations may be illustrated by the verbs

pensar *to think* — **contar** *to count, tell*
perder *to lose* — **mover** *to move*

[1] This rule may also be stated as follows: in the radical-changing verbs of the second and third classes (both of the third conjugation), the root vowel **e** becomes **i** and the root vowel **o** becomes **u**, when not accented, if not followed by stressed **i**.

(1) **Pensar, pensando, pensado**

Pres. Indic.	piens–o	pens–amos
	piens–as	pens–áis
	piens–a	piens–an
Pres. Subj.	piens–e	pens–emos
	piens–es	pens–éis
	piens–e	piens–en
Imperat.	piens–a	pens–ad

All other forms are regular.

Imperf. Indic. pens–aba, pens–abas, *etc.*
Pret. Indic. pens–é, pens–aste, *etc.*
Fut. Indic. pensar–é, pensar–ás, *etc.*
Cond. Indic. pensar–ía, pensar–ías, *etc.*
Imperf. Subj., 1st Form pens–ase, pens–ases, *etc.*
Imperf. Subj., 2d Form pens–ara, pens–aras, *etc.*
Fut. Subj. pens–are, pens–ares, *etc.*

(2) **Perder, perdiendo, perdido**

Pres. Indic.	pierd–o	perd–emos
	pierd–es	perd–éis
	pierd–e	pierd–en
Pres. Subj.	pierd–a	perd–amos
	pierd–as	perd–áis
	pierd–a	pierd–an
Imperat.	pierd–e	perd–ed

All other forms are regular.

Imperf. Indic. perd–ía, perd–ías, *etc.*
Pret. Indic. perd–í, perd–iste, *etc.*
Fut. Indic. perder–é, perder–ás, *etc.*
Cond. Indic. perder–ía, perder–ías, *etc.*
Imperf. Subj., 1st Form perd–iese, perd–ieses, *etc.*
Imperf. Subj., 2d Form perd–iera, perd–ieras, *etc.*
Fut. Subj. perd–iere, perd–ieres, *etc.*

(3) **Contar, contando, contado**

Pres. Indic.	cuent–o	cont–amos
	cuent–as	cont–áis
	cuent–a	cuent–an
Pres. Subj.	cuent–e	cont–emos
	cuent–es	cont–éis
	cuent–e	cuent–en
Imperat.	cuent–a	cont–ad

All other forms are regular.

Cont–aba, *etc.;* cont–é, *etc.;* contar–é, *etc.;* contar–ía, *etc.;* cont–ase, *etc.;* cont–ara, *etc.;* cont–are, *etc.*

(4) **Mover, moviendo, movido**

Pres. Indic.	muev–o	mov–emos	All other forms are regular.
	muev–es	mov–éis	
	muev–e	muev–en	
Pres. Subj.	muev–a	mov–amos	
	muev–as	mov–áis	
	muev–a	muev–an	
Imperat.	muev–e	mov–ed	

Mov–ía, *etc.;* mov–í, *etc.;* mover–é, *etc.;* mover–ía, *etc.;* mov–iese, *etc.;* mov–iera, *etc.;* mov–iere, *etc.*

NOTE. — The change of the root vowels **e** and **o** to **ie** and **ue** under the accent started with verbs having as their root vowels in Latin *ĕ* or *ae* (vulgar Latin open *e*) and *ŏ*. In the development of Latin into Spanish these vowels, when stressed, broke into the corresponding diphthongs **ie, ue.** When not under the accent, they ordinarily preserved their integrity in Spanish: cf. Latin *pĕtra,* Spanish **piedra,** *stone;* Latin *tĕrra,* Spanish **tierra,** *earth;* Latin *cĕrtus,* Spanish **cierto,** *certain;* Latin *caecus,* Spanish **ciego,** *blind;* Latin *fŏrtis,* Spanish **fuerte,** *strong;* but with unaccented and therefore retained root vowel, Latin * *pĕtrārius,* Spanish **pedrero,** *stone-cutter;* Latin *tĕrrēnus,* Spanish **terreno,** *land,* etc., etc.

246. Certain verbs in **–olver** are of this first radical-changing class, but have an irregular past participle in **–uelto.** These are chiefly

volver *to return, come back*

Pres. Indic. vuelvo, vuelves, *etc.* *Past Part.* vuelto

and its derivatives, **devolver,** *to give back;* **envolver,** *to wrap up;* **revolver,** *to stir,* etc., and **solver,** *to loosen,* and its derivatives, **absolver,** *to absolve;* **disolver,** *to dissolve;* **resolver,** *to resolve,* etc.

247. Orthographic changes already indicated for regular verbs are to be observed also in radical-changing verbs; cf. §§ 235–239, e.g.:

c to **qu** — **revolcarse** *to wallow* — *Pret., 1st Sing.* me revolqué; *Pres. Subj., 1st Sing.* me revuelque, *etc.*

g to **gu**	**cegar** *to blind*	*Pret. 1st Sing.* cegué *Pres. Subj. 1st Sing.* ciegue, *etc.*
z to **c**	**tropezar** *to stumble*	*Pret. 1st Sing.* tropecé *Pres. Subj. 1st Sing.* tropiece
c to **z**	**torcer** *to twist*	*Pres. Ind.* tuerzo, *but* tuerces, tuerce, *etc.* *Pres. Subj.* tuerza, tuerzas, *etc.*
(g)**o** to (g)**üe**	**degollar** *to behead*	*Pres. Ind.* degüello, degüellas, *etc.* *Pres. Subj.* degüelle, *etc.*

248. The verbs **errar,** *to err,* and **oler,** *to have an odor, smell,* are of this first radical-changing class, but wherever they stress their root syllables, the resulting **ie** of **errar** is changed to **ye,** and the resulting **ue** of **oler** to **hue,**[1] because of the rule that no word should begin with the diphthongs **ie** or **ue.**

(1) **Errar, errando, errado**

Pres. Ind.	yerr–o	yerr–as	yerr–a	err–amos	err–áis	yerr–an
Pres. Subj.	yerr–e	yerr–es	yerr–e	err–emos	err–éis	yerr–en
Imperat.	——	yerr–a	——	——	err–ad	——
		etc.			*etc.*	

(2) **Oler, oliendo, olido**

Pres. Ind.	huel–o	huel–es	huel–e	ol–emos	ol–éis	huel–en
Pres. Subj.	huel–a	huel–as	huel–a	ol–amos	ol–áis	huel–an
Imperat.	——	huel–e	——	——	ol–ed	——
		etc.			*etc.*	

a. An **h** is also inserted before the **ue** of the stressed root syllables of **desosar,** *to bone, unbone,* and **desovar,** *to spawn.* Here the **h** is due to the analogy of the related nouns **hueso,** *bone,* and **huevo,** *egg.*

Desosar, desosando, desosado

Pres. Indic.

deshueso deshuesas deshuesa desosamos desosáis deshuesan

[1] The **h** of **hue–,** as in **huelo,** is and always has been silent. In Old Spanish there was confusion in the use of **v** and **u.** By the use of **h,** such words as **huelo** (Old Spanish **velo** or **uelo**) and **velo** (Old Spanish **velo** or **uelo**) could be distinguished.

Pres. Subj.

deshuese deshueses deshuese desosemos desoséis deshuesen

Imperat.

—— deshuesa —— —— desosad ——
etc. *etc.*

In similar fashion **desovar** has

deshuevo deshuevas deshueva desovamos *etc.*

249. Instead of **o** in the unaccented syllables, to correspond to **ue** of the accented syllables, **jugar,** *to play*, now shows **u.** But the **u** has simply taken the place of older **o.** The **ue** remains wherever originally developed. Before flectional **e** of the ending, **u** is inserted after the **g.**

Jugar, jugando, jugado

Pres. Ind.	juego	juegas	juega	jugamos	jugáis	juegan
Pres. Subj.	juegue	juegues	juegue	juguemos	juguéis	jueguen
Imperat.	——	juega	——	——	jugad	——
Pret. Ind.	jugué, *etc.*					

All other forms have **u.**

250. Three verbs in **–ir** seem to belong to this class, which regularly comprises only **–ar** and **–er** verbs. These are **discernir,** *to discern*, **concernir,** *to concern* (cf. § 286), **adquirir,** *to acquire*, and **inquirir,** *to inquire.* But they are derivatives and are related to simple verbs in **–er,** viz., **cerner** and **querer.**[1] **Adquirir** and **inquirir** show the further peculiarity of an **i** in the unstressed root forms, to correspond to the **ie** of the stressed root syllables; but it is to be observed that **querer** shows the original **e.**

(1) **Discernir, discerniendo, discernido**

Pres. Indic.

discierno disciernes discierne discernimos discernís disciernen

[1] **Querer** is irregular, **adquirir** and **inquirir** are regular, in the preterite and allied forms.

Pres. Subj.

discierna	disciernas	discierna	discernamos	discernáis	disciernan

Imperat.

——	discierne	——	——	discernid	——

All other forms are regular as of the **–ir** conjugation.

(2) **Adquirir, adquiriendo, adquirido**

Pres. Indic.

adquiero	adquieres	adquiere	adquirimos	adquirís	adquieren

Pres. Subj.

adquiera	adquieras	adquiera	adquiramos	adquiráis	adquieran

Imperat.

——	adquiere	——	——	adquirid	——

All other forms are regular as of the **–ir** conjugation.

251. The Second Radical-Changing Class embraces only verbs of the third conjugation with the root vowel **e** or **o**.

As in the first class, **e** becomes **ie** and **o** becomes **ue** under the accent. When not accented the **e** is changed to **i** and the **o** to **u**, if the vowel **a**[1] or one of the diphthongs **ie**, **ió** occur in the next syllable. In all other cases the original **e** and **o** remain. This class may be illustrated by the conjugation of the verbs **sentir,** *to feel,* and **dormir,** *to sleep.*

(1) **Sentir, sintiendo, sentido**

Pres. Indic.

sient–o	sient–es	sient–e	sent–imos	sent–ís	sient–en

Pres. Subj.

sient–a	sient–as	sient–a	sint–amos	sint–áis	sient–an

Imperat.

——	sient–e	——	——	sent–id	——

[1] **Sintamos** derives from Latin *sentiamus.* The **i** of **–ia–** has been lost, but its effect is evident in Spanish **sintamos,** with **i** instead of **e** in the stem.

Fut. Indic. sentir–é, *etc.* (*Regular*)
Cond. Indic. sentir–ía, *etc.* (*Regular*)
Imperf. Indic. sent–ía, *etc.* (*Regular*)

Pret. Indic.

sent–í sent–iste sint–ió sent–imos sent–isteis sint–ieron

Imperf. Subj., 1*st Form*

sint–iese sint–ieses sint–iese sint–iésemos sint–ieseis sint–iesen

Imperf Subj., 2*d Form*

sint–iera sint–ieras sint–iera sint–iéramos sint–ierais sint–ieran

Fut. Subj.

sint–iere sint–ieres sint–iere sint–iéremos sint–iereis sint–ieren

(2) **Dormir, durmiendo, dormido**

Pres. Indic.	duerm–o	duerm–es	duerm–e
	dorm–imos	dorm–ís	duerm–en
Pres. Subj.	duerm–a	duerm–as	duerm–a
	durm–amos	durm–áis	duerm–an
Imperat.	——	duerm–e	——
	——	dorm–id	——

Fut. Indic. dormir–é, *etc.* (*Regular*)
Cond. Indic. dormir–ía, *etc.* (*Regular*)
Imperf. Indic. dorm–ía, *etc.* (*Regular*)

Pret. Indic.	dorm–í	dorm–iste	durm–ió
	dorm–imos	dorm–isteis	durm–ieron
Imperf. Subj., 1*st Form*	durm–iese	durm–ieses	durm–iese
	durm–iésemos	durm–ieseis	durm–iesen
Imperf. Subj., 2*d Form*	durm–iera	durm–ieras	durm–iera
	durm–iéramos	durm–ierais	durm–ieran
Fut. Subj.	durm–iere	durm–ieres	durm–iere
	durm–iéremos	durm–iereis	durm–ieren

It is a useful fact to remember that in this class the subjunctive im-

perfects and future always show the same stem as the preterite, third person singular and plural.

a. The number of **o** verbs in this second radical-changing class is small: **dormir,** *to sleep,* and **morir,** *to die,* are the only *simple* verbs in it. **Morir** is conjugated exactly like **dormir** except in its past participle, which has only the irregular form **muerto.** The past participle **muerto** is not only intransitive, meaning *died, dead* (**el hombre ha muerto,** *the man has died, the man is dead);* but with a *personal* object it may be transitive, meaning *killed* (**hemos muerto al soldado,** *we have killed the soldier*).

252. The Third Radical-Changing Class consists only of third-conjugation verbs with the root vowel **e.** A change occurs only in the same cases as in Class II, viz., under the accent, and where the root syllable is not accented if it be followed by **a** or one of the diphthongs **ie, ió.** In both these cases the **e** becomes **i** (so that there is no diphthong in the root syllable of these verbs). In all other forms the **e** remains and those forms are regular as of the third conjugation. The class may be illustrated by the conjugation of **vestir,** *to clothe.*

Vestir, vistiendo, vestido

Pres. Indic.

vist–o	vist–es	vist–e	vest–imos	vest–ís	vist–en

Pres. Subj.

vist–a	vist–as	vist–a	vist–amos	vist–áis	vist–an

Imperat.

——	vist–e	——	——	vest–id	——

Fut. Indic. vestir–é, *etc.* (*Regular*)
Cond. Indic. vestir–ía, *etc.* (*Regular*)
Imperf. Indic. vest–ía, *etc.* (*Regular*)

Pret. Indic.

vest–í	vest–iste	vist–ió	vest–imos	vest–isteis	vist–ieron

Imperf. Subj., 1st Form

vist–iese	vist–ieses	vist–iese	vist–iésemos	vist–ieseis	vist–iesen

Imperf. Subj., 2d Form

vist–iera vist–ieras vist–iera vist–iéramos vist–ierais vist–ieran

Fut. Subj.

vist–iere vist–ieres vist–iere vist–iéremos vist–iereis vist–ieren

As in the second class, it is to be noted that the stem of the preterite, third person, prevails throughout the subjunctive imperfects and future.

253. The orthographical changes stated for regular verbs are to be observed here: cf. §§ 235–239.

gu to **g**	**seguir** *to follow*	*Pres. Indic.*, 1*st Sing.* sigo *Pres. Subj.* siga, sigas, *etc.*
g to **j**	**elegir** *to elect*	*Pres. Indic.*, 1*st. Sing.* elijo *Pres. Subj.* elija, elijas, *etc.*
ñie to **ñe** **ñió** to **ñó**	**ceñir** *to gird*	*Pres. Part.* ciñendo (*for* ciñiendo) *Pret.* 3*d Sing.* ciñó, 3*d Pl.* ciñeron *Imperf. Subj.*, 1*st Form*, ciñese, *etc.* *Imperf. Subj.*, 2*d Form*, ciñera, *etc.* *Fut. Subj.* ciñere, *etc.*

254. The verb **erguir,** *to erect*, may in the stressed root syllables of its present tenses have either the diphthong **ie** (written **ye** because it is at the beginning of the word) or the vowel **i.** It may be conjugated throughout as of either the second or the third radical-changing class. Of course its **u** disappears before **o** or **a.**

Erguir, irguiendo, erguido

Pres. Ind.	yerg–o irg–o	yergu–es irgu–es	yergu–e irgu–e	ergui–mos	ergu–ís	yergu–en irgu–en
Pres. Subj.	yerg–a irg–a	yerg–as irg–as	yerg–a irg–a	irg–amos	irg–áis	yerg–an irg–an
Imperat.	—— ——	yergu–e irgu–e	—— ——	——	ergu–id	—— ——

Fut. Ind. erguir–é, *etc.* (*Regular*)
Cond. Indic. erguir–ía, *etc.* (*Regular*)
Imp. Ind. ergu–ía, *etc.* (*Regular*)

Pret. Ind. ergu–í ergu–iste irgu–ió ergu–imos ergu–isteis irgu–ieron

Imp. Subj., 1*st Form* } irgu–iese, *etc.*

Imp. Subj., 2*d Form* } irgu–iera, *etc.*

Fut. Subj. irgu–iere, *etc.*

255. There are certain verbs in **–eír** that belong to this class. They change their **e** to **i** in the same cases as **vestir,** but whenever that **i** comes into conjunction with **i** of a following diphthong **ie** or **ió,** one of the two **i**'s disappears, as in **reír,** *to laugh.*

Reír, riendo (*for* ri–iendo), **re–ído**

Pres. Indic.	rí–o	rí–es	rí–e	re–ímos	re–ís	rí–en
Pres. Subj.	rí–a	rí–as	rí–a	ri–amos	ri–áis	rí–an
Imperat.	——	rí–e	——	——	re–íd	——

Fut. Indic. reir–é, *etc.* (*Regular*)
Cond. Indic. reir–ía, *etc.* (*Regular*)
Imperf. Ind. re–ía, *etc.* (*Regular*)

Pret. Indic. re–í re–íste { rió (*for* ri–ió) } re–ímos re–ísteis { rieron (*for* ri–ieron)

Imperf. Subj., 1*st Form* riese (*for* ri–iese) rieses, *etc.*
Imperf. Subj., 2*d Form* riera (*for* ri–iera) rieras, *etc.*
Fut. Subj. riere (*for* ri–iere) rieres, *etc.*

a. This is now the customary conjugation of **reír** and other **-eír** verbs of this class. Formerly — at least in the case of **reír** itself — the **i** was not lost necessarily, and there resulted such forms as **riyendo** (unaccented **i** changed to **y** between vowels), **riyó, riyeron, riyese,** etc., **riyera,** etc., **riyere,** etc. Note the many forms of **reír** requiring a written accent.

256. The verb **pudrir,** or **podrir,** *to putrefy,* was once included in this class as an example of a change of **o** to **u** in con-

jugation. But in practice it has become a regular verb of the third conjugation, with **u** everywhere in the root syllable. The **o** is retained only in by-forms of the infinitive and past participle, **podrir** and **podrido.** **Pudrir** is preferred to **podrir,** but as the passive participle **podrido** seems to be still the commoner form.

257. ***–Uir*** **Verbs.** — These include only verbs with a pronounced **u** (written with a diæresis when **g** precedes, as in **argüir,** *to argue*).

Their peculiarity consists in adding **y** to the **u,** except where the flectional ending begins with **i** (whether stressed **i** or **i** of the diphthongs **–ie–, –ió**). Of course, the future and conditional indicative do not take the **y,** being based on the infinitive. Besides this **y** added to the **u,** the conjugation of these verbs shows a **y** (in the present participle, the preterite, third singular and third plural, and the subjunctive imperfects and future) which represents the unaccented **i** of the diphthongal ending when it comes between vowels: cf. § 238.

The class may be illustrated by the conjugation of **huir,** *to flee.*

Huir, huyendo (*for* hu–iendo), **huído**

Pres. Indic.

huy–o	huy–es	huy–e	hu–imos	hu–is	huy–en

Pres. Subj.

huy–a	huy–as	huy–a	huy–amos	huy–áis	huy–an

Imperat.

——	huy–e	——	——	hu–id	——

Fut. Indic.

huir–é, *etc.* (*Regular*)

Cond. Indic.

huir–ía, *etc.* (*Regular*)

Imperf. Indic.

hu–ía	hu–ías	hu–ía	hu–íamos	hu–íais	hu–ían

Pret. Indic.

hu–í	hu–iste	hu–yó	hu–imos	hu–isteis	hu–yeron

Imperf. Subj., 1*st Form*

hu–yese	hu–yeses	hu–yese	hu–yésemos	hu–yeseis	hu–yesen

Imperf. Subj., 2*d Form*

hu–yera	hu–yeras	hu–yera	hu–yéramos	hu–yerais	hu–yeran

Fut. Subj.

hu–yere	hu–yeres	hu–yere	hu–yéremos	hu–yereis	hu–yeren

a. Verbs in **-güir** require their diæresis only before a written **i**: it disappears before **y**: e.g.:
argüir, *to argue,* but **arguyendo, arguyo, arguye, arguyen, arguya,** etc.
argüía, argüí, but **arguyó, arguyese,** etc.

IRREGULAR VERBS

258. Ser *to be*

Ser, siendo, sido

Pres. Indic.	soy	eres	es	somos	sois	son
Pres. Subj.	se–a	se–as	se–a	se–amos	se–áis	se–an
Imperat.	——	sé	——	——	sed	——
Fut. Indic.	ser–é	ser–ás	ser–á	ser–emos	ser–éis	ser–án
Cond. Indic.	ser–ía	ser–ías	ser–ía	ser–íamos	ser–íais	ser–ían
Imperf. Indic.	era	eras	era	éramos	erais	eran
Pret. Indic.	fu–í	fu–iste	fu–é	fu–imos	fu–isteis	fu–eron
Imperf. Subj., 1*st Form*	fu–ese	fu–eses	fu–ese	fu–ésemos	fu–eseis	fu–esen
Imperf. Subj., 2d *Form*	fu–era	fu–eras	fu–era	fu–éramos	fu–erais	fu–eran
Fut. Subj.	fu–ere	fu–eres	fu–ere	fu–éremos	fu–ereis	fu–eren

259. Haber *to have*

Haber, habiendo, habido

Pres Indic.

he	has	ha	hemos	hab–éis	han

Pres. Subj.

hay–a	hay–as	hay–a	hay–amos	hay–áis	hay–an

Imperat.

——	he	——	——	hab–ed	——

Fut. Indic.

habr–é	habr–ás	habr–á	habr–emos	habr–éis	habr–án

Cond. Indic.

habr–ía	habr–ías	habr–ía	habr–íamos	habr–íais	habr–ían

Imperf. Indic.

hab–ía	hab–ías	hab–ía	hab–íamos	hab–íais	hab–ían

Pret. Indic.

hub–e	hub–iste	hub–o	hub–imos	hub–isteis	hub–ieron

Imperf. Subj., 1st Form

hub–iese	hub–ieses	hub–iese	hub–iésemos	hub–ieseis	hub–iesen

Imperf. Subj., 2d Form

hub–iera	hub–ieras	hub–iera	hub–iéramos	hub–ierais	hub–ieran

Fut. Subj.

hub–iere	hub–ieres	hub–iere	hub–iéremos	hub–iereis	hub–ieren

a. Note that the future and the conditional of the indicative are based on a contract form of the infinitive. As the impersonal verb *to be*, **haber** takes the suffix **y** (an old adverb meaning *there*) in the present indicative, whence **hay,** *there is* or *there are*. For the other moods and tenses it simply has the third person singular forms without the appended **y**: **había,** *there was* (*were*), **habrá,** *there will be*, etc.

It is characteristic of many irregular verbs that in the first and third singular of the preterite indicative they stress

the stem vowel and not the ending: compare **hube, hubo** with **acabé, acabó.**

260. Estar *to be*

Estar, estando, estado

Pres. Indic.

est–oy	est–ás	est–á	est–amos	est–áis	est–án

Pres. Subj.

est–é	est–és	est–é	est–emos	est–éis	est–én

Imperat.

——	est–á	——	——	est–ad	——

Fut. Indic.

estar–é	estar–ás	estar–á	estar–emos	estar–éis	estar–án

Cond. Indic.

estar–ía	estar–ías	estar–ía	estar–íamos	estar–íais	estar–ían

Imperf. Indic.

est–aba	est–abas	est–aba	est–ábamos	est–abais	est–aban

Pret. Indic.

estuv–e	estuv–iste	estuv–o	estuv–imos	estuv–isteis	estuv–ieron

Imperf. Subj., 1*st Form*

estuv–iese estuv–ieses estuv–iese estuv–iésemos estuv–ieseis estuv–iesen

Imperf. Subj., 2*d Form*

estuv–iera estuv–ieras estuv–iera estuv–iéramos estuv–ierais estuv–ieran

Fut. Subj.

estuv–iere estuv–ieres estuv–iere estuv–iéremos estuv–iereis estuv–ieren

a. The present tenses of **estar** are perfectly regular as of the first conjugation, except for the **y** appended to the first person singular, present indicative form (cf. the **y** of **soy,** *I am,* from **ser;** of **doy,** *I give,* from **dar;** and of **voy,** *I go,* from **ir**). **Estar** is the Latin verb *stare, to stand,* which has had its sense weakened to *to be,* and has received an

initial (prosthetic) **e,** because in Spanish no word properly begins with **s** plus a consonant. All Latin words beginning with such a combination and surviving in Spanish take this **e** prefix (cf. also French *état* from Latin *statum*, etc.).

261. Tener *to have*

Tener, teniendo, tenido

Pres. Indic.

teng–o	tien–es	tien–e	ten–emos	ten–éis	tien–en

Pres. Subj.

teng–a	teng–as	teng–a	teng–amos	teng–áis	teng–an

Imperat.

——	ten	——	——	ten–ed	——

Fut. Indic.

tendr–é	tendr–ás	tendr–á	tendr–emos	tendr–éis	tendr–án

Cond. Indic.

tendr–ía	tendr–ías	tendr–ía	tendr–íamos	tendr–íais	tendr–ían

Imperf. Indic.

ten–ía	ten–ías	ten–ía	ten–íamos	ten–íais	ten–ían

Pret. Indic.

tuv–e	tuv–iste	tuv–o	tuv–imos	tuv–isteis	tuv–ieron

Imperf. Subj., 1*st Form*

tuv–iese	tuv–ieses	tuv–iese	tuv–iésemos	tuv–ieseis	tuv–iesen

Imperf. Subj., 2*d Form*

tuv–iera	tuv–ieras	tuv–iera	tuv–iéramos	tuv–ierais	tuv–ieran

Fut. Subj.

tuv–iere	tuv–ieres	tuv–iere	tuv–iéremos	tuv–iereis	tuv–ieren

a. The infinitive basis of the future and the conditional of the indicative is contract, but with inserted **d**. The second and third person singular and the third person plural, present indicative, have the peculiarity of a radical-changing verb. The imperative singular has no inflectional ending.

262. Andar *to go, walk*

Andar, andando, andado

Pres. Indic.	and–o	and–as	and–a
	and–amos	and–áis	and–an
Pres. Subj.	and–e	and–es	and–e
	and–emos	and–éis	and–en
Imperat.	——	and–a	——
	——	and–ad	——
Fut. Indic.	andar–é	andar–ás	andar–á
	andar–emos	andar–éis	andar–án
Cond. Indic.	andar–ía	andar–ías	andar–ía
	andar–íamos	andar–íais	andar–ían
Imperf. Indic.	and–aba	and–abas	and–aba
	and–ábamos	and–abais	and–aban
Pret. Indic.	anduv–e	anduv–iste	anduv–o
	anduv–imos	anduv–isteis	anduv–ieron
Imperf. Subj., 1*st Form*	anduv–iese	anduv–ieses	anduv–iese
	anduv–iésemos	anduv–ieseis	anduv–iesen
Imperf. Subj., 2*d Form*	anduv–iera	anduv–ieras	anduv–iera
	anduv–iéramos	anduv–ierais	anduv–ieran
Fut. Subj.	anduv–iere	anduv–ieres	anduv–iere
	anduv–iéremos	anduv–iereis	anduv–ieren

a. This verb is perfectly regular as of the first conjugation in all its forms except the preterite indicative and the three subjunctive tenses based on it. Note the resemblance of the preterite stems of **estar, tener,** and **andar,** i.e., **estuv–, tuv–,** and **anduv–,** to that of **haber,** i.e., **hub–** (spelled with **v** instead of **b** in earlier Spanish).

263. Dar *to give*

Dar, dando, dado

Pres. Indic.	d–oy	d–as	d–a	d–amos	d–ais	d–an
Pres. Subj.	d–é	d–es	d–é	d–emos	d–eis	d–en
Imperat.	——	d–a	——	——	d–ad	——
Fut. Indic.	dar–é	dar–ás	dar–á	dar–emos	dar–éis	dar–án

Cond. Indic.	dar–ía	dar–ías	dar–ía	dar–íamos	dar–íais	dar–ían
Imp. Indic.	d–aba	d–abas	d–aba	d–ábamos	d–abais	d–aban
Pret. Indic.	d–i	d–iste	d–ió	d–imos	d–isteis	d–ieron
Imp. Subj., 1st Form	d–iese	d–ieses	d–iese	d–iésemos	d–ieseis	d–iesen
Imp. Subj., 2d Form	d–iera	d–ieras	d–iera	d–iéramos	d–ierais	d–ieran
Fut. Subj.	d–iere	d–ieres	d–iere	d–iéremos	d–iereis	d–ieren

a. The stem of this verb is **d–**. Thereon are based the present tenses and the imperfect indicative with the regular endings of the first conjugation. The first person singular, present indicative, has also a **y** suffix (cf. **ser, estar,** and **ir** with **soy, estoy,** and **voy**). The preterite and the subjunctive imperfect and hypothetical tenses add to **d–** the regular endings of the second and third conjugations, and not those of the first conjugation.

264. Querer *to wish, want*

Querer, queriendo, querido

Pres. Indic.

quier–o	quier–es	quier–e	quer–emos	quer–éis	quier–en

Pres. Subj.

quier–a	quier–as	quier–a	quer–amos	quer–áis	quier–an

Imperat.

——	quier–e	——	——	quer–ed	——

Fut. Indic.

querr–é	querr–ás	querr–á	querr–emos	querr–éis	querr–án

Cond. Indic.

querr–ía	querr–ías	querr–ía	querr–íamos	querr–íais	querr–ían

Imperf. Indic.

quer–ía	quer–ías	quer–ía	quer–íamos	quer–íais	quer–ían

Pret. Indic.

quis–e	quis–iste	quis–o	quis–imos	quis–isteis	quis–ieron

Imperf. Subj., 1*st Form*

quis–iese quis–ieses quis–iese quis–iésemos quis–ieseis quis–iesen

Imperf. Subj., 2*d Form*

quis–iera quis–ieras quis–iera quis–iéramos quis–ierais quis–ieran

Fut. Subj.

quis–iere quis–ieres quis–iere quis–iéremos quis–iereis quis–ieren

a. In the present tenses the verb is conjugated exactly like a radical-changing verb of the first class. The future and conditional indicative are based on a contract infinitive **querr–**, whose **rr** must be carefully pronounced, especially to distinguish the conditional from the imperfect indicative.

265. Poder *to be able*

Poder, pudiendo, podido

Pres. Indic.

pued–o pued–es pued–e pod–emos pod–éis pued–en

Pres. Subj.

pued–a pued–as pued–a pod–amos pod–áis pued–an

Imperat.

—— —— —— —— —— ——

Fut. Indic.

podr–é podr–ás podr–á podr–emos podr–éis podr–án

Cond. Indic.

podr–ía podr–ías podr–ía podr–íamos podr–íais podr–ían

Imperf. Indic.

pod–ía pod–ías pod–ía pod–íamos pod–íais pod–ían

Pret. Indic.

pud–e pud–iste pud–o pud–imos pud–isteis pud–ieron

Imperf. Subj., 1*st Form*

pud–iese pud–ieses pud–iese pud–iésemos pud–ieseis pud–iesen

Imperf. Subj., 2d Form

pud–iera pud–ieras pud–iera pud–iéramos pud–ierais pud–ieran

Fut. Subj.

pud–iere pud–ieres pud–iere pud–iéremos pud–iereis pud–ieren

a. The present indicative and subjunctive follow the model of a radical-changing verb of the first class, but the present participle has the same stem as the preterite. The future and conditional indicatives are based on a contract infinitive. The verb has no imperative.

266. Caber *to be contained, find room*

Caber, cabiendo, cabido

Pres. Indic.

quep–o cab–es cab–e cab–emos cab–éis cab–en

Pres. Subj.

quep–a quep–as quep–a quep–amos quep–áis quep–an

Imperat.

—— cab–e —— —— cab–ed ——

Fut. Indic.

cabr–é cabr–ás cabr–á cabr–emos cabr–éis cabr–án

Cond. Indic.

cabr–ía cabr–ías cabr–ía cabr–íamos cabr–íais cabr–ían

Imperf. Indic.

cab–ía cab–ías cab–ía cab–íamos cab–íais cab–ían

Pret. Indic.

cup–e cup–iste cup–o cup–imos cup–isteis cup–ieron

Imperf. Subj., 1st Form

cup–iese cup–ieses cup–iese cup–iésemos cup–ieseis cup–iesen

Imperf. Subj., 2d Form

cup–iera cup–ieras cup–iera cup–iéramos cup–ierais cup–ieran

Fut. Subj.

cup–iere cup–ieres cup–iere cup–iéremos cup–iereis cup–ieren

a. Note the two stems, one regular and the other irregular, in the present tenses. As is frequently the case, the present subjunctive uses

the irregular stem as found in the first person singular, present indicative. The future and conditional are based on a contract infinitive.

267. Saber *to know, be aware*

Saber, sabiendo, sabido

Pres. Indic.

sé	sab–es	sab–e	sab–emos	sab–éis	sab–en

Pres. Subj.

sep–a	sep–as	sep–a	sep–amos	sep–áis	sep–an

Imperat.

——	sab–e	——	——	sab–ed	——

Fut. Indic.

sabr–é	sabr–ás	sabr–á	sabr–emos	sabr–éis	sabr–án

Cond. Indic.

sabr–ía	sabr–ías	sabr–ía	sabr–íamos	sabr–íais	sabr–ían

Imperf. Indic.

sab–ía	sab–ías	sab–ía	sab–íamos	sab–íais	sab–ían

Pret. Indic.

sup–e	sup–iste	sup–o	sup–imos	sup–isteis	sup–ieron

Imperf. Subj., 1st Form

sup–iese	sup–ieses	sup–iese	sup–iésemos	sup–ieseis	sup–iesen

Imperf. Subj., 2d Form

sup–iera	sup–ieras	sup–iera	sup–iéramos	sup–ierais	sup–ieran

Fut. Subj.

sup–iere	sup–ieres	sup–iere	sup–iéremos	sup–iereis	sup–ieren

a. The conjugation of **saber** is quite like that of **caber.** In the first person singular, present indicative, however, **saber** has a contract form **sé** instead of a form **sepo,** which might have been expected: but the irregular stem **sep–** has remained in the present subjunctive.

268. Hacer *to do, make*

Hacer, haciendo, hecho

Pres. Indic.

hag–o	hac–es	hac–e	hac–emos	hac–éis	hac–en

Pres. Subj.

hag–a	hag–as	hag–a	hag–amos	hag–áis	hag–an

Imperat.

——	haz	——	——	hac–ed	——

Fut. Indic.

har–é	har–ás	har–á	har–emos	har–éis	har–án

Cond. Indic.

har–ía	har–ías	har–ía	har–íamos	har–íais	har–ían

Imperf. Indic.

hac–ía	hac–ías	hac–ía	hac–íamos	hac–íais	hac–ían

Pret. Indic.

hic–e	hic–iste	hiz–o	hic–imos	hic–isteis	hic–ieron

Imperf. Subj., 1st Form

hic–iese	hic–ieses	hic–iese	hic–iésemos	hic–ieseis	hic–iesen

Imperf. Subj., 2d Form

hic–iera	hic–ieras	hic–iera	hic–iéramos	hic–ierais	hic–ieran

Fut. Subj.

hic–iere	hic–ieres	hic–iere	hic–iéremos	hic–iereis	hic–ieren

a. The past participle is irregular (from Latin *factum*). The imperative singular has no flectional ending, but consists only of the regular present stem as found in **hac–es,** etc., with, of course, **z,** and not **c,** in the final position. The future and conditional are based on a contract infinitive **har.** The preterite **hice** represents the Latin *fēcī*. Like **hacer** are conjugated its derivatives. Some of these, like **satisfacer,** *to satisfy,* have instead of **h** the original Latin *f* of *facere*. Besides an imperative singular **satisfaz,** there is found also a regular form **satisface.**

269. Ir *to go*

Ir, yendo, ido

Pres. Indic.

voy	vas	va	vamos	vais	van

Pres. Subj.

vaya	vayas	vaya	vayamos	vayáis	vayan

Imperat.

——	ve	——	vamos	id	——

Fut. Indic.

ir–é	ir–ás	ir–á	ir–emos	ir–éis	ir–án

Cond. Indic.

ir–ía	ir–ías	ir–ía	ir–íamos	ir–íais	ir–ían

Imperf. Indic.

iba	ibas	iba	íbamos	ibais	iban

Pret. Indic.

fu–í	fu–iste	fu–é	fu–imos	fu–isteis	fu–eron

Imperf. Subj., 1st Form

fu–ese	fu–eses	fu–ese	fu–ésemos	fu–eseis	fu–esen

Imperf. Subj., 2d Form

fu–era	fu–eras	fu–era	fu–éramos	fu–erais	fu–eran

Fut. Subj.

fu–ere	fu–eres	fu–ere	fu–éremos	fu–ereis	fu–eren

a. There are three different Latin verbs discernible in the make-up of this verb. The infinitive, present participle, past participle, imperative plural, future and conditional indicative, and imperfect indicative are associated with **ire,** *to go.* The present indicative and subjunctive and the imperative singular forms come from **vadere,** *to go.* The preterite and the subjunctive imperfects and future represent the Latin *fuī, fuissem,* etc.; that is, they are simply borrowed from the corresponding tenses of the Spanish **ser,** *to be.* Cf. in colloquial English 'I *was* to Boston yesterday' = 'I *went* (and returned).'

b. **Ir** is the only verb that has a special form of the first person plural of the present subjunctive, viz., **vamos,** *let us go,* which is used only as an imperative in modern Spanish. In Cervantes and other classic writers there is found also a second form of the second plural, present subjunctive, viz., **vais. Vayamos** is restricted in use to subordinate clauses. **Vamos** and **vaya** are frequently used as interjections (cf. French *allons*), meaning *come now!* etc.

270. Venir *to come*

Venir, viniendo, venido

Pres. Indic.

veng–o	vien–es	vien–e	ven–imos	ven–ís	vien–en

Pres. Subj.

veng–a	veng–as	veng–a	veng–amos	veng–áis	veng–an

Imperat.

——	ven	——	——	ven–id	——

Fut. Indic.

vendr–é	vendr–ás	vendr–á	vendr–emos	vendr–éis	vendr–án

Cond. Indic.

vendr–ía	vendr–ías	vendr–ía	vendr–íamos	vendr–íais	vendr–ían

Imperf. Indic.

ven–ía	ven–ías	ven–ía	ven–íamos	ven–íais	ven–ían

Pret. Indic.

vin–e	vin–iste	vin–o	vin–imos	vin–isteis	vin–ieron

Imperf. Subj., 1st Form

vin–iese	vin–ieses	vin–iese	vin–iésemos	vin–ieseis	vin–iesen

Imperf. Subj., 2d Form

vin–iera	vin–ieras	vin–iera	vin–iéramos	vin–ierais	vin–ieran

Fut. Subj.

vin–iere	vin–ieres	vin–iere	vin–iéremos	vin–iereis	vin–ieren

a. Certain forms have characteristics of a radical-changing verb (cf. present participle, second and third singular and third plural of present

indicative, etc.). The imperative singular is without a flectional ending. The future and conditional of the indicative are based on a contract infinitive with inserted **d**. The preterite **vine** represents Latin *vēnī*.

271. Poner *to put*

Poner, poniendo, puesto

Pres. Indic.

pong–o	pon–es	pon–e	pon–emos	pon–éis	pon–en

Pres. Subj.

pong–a	pong–as	pong–a	pong–amos	pong–áis	pong–an

Imperat.

——	pon	——	——	pon–ed	——

Fut. Indic.

pondr–é	pondr–ás	pondr–á	pondr–emos	pondr–éis	pondr–án

Cond. Indic.

pondr–ía	pondr–ías	pondr–ía	pondr–íamos	pondr–íais	pondr–ían

Imperf. Indic.

pon–ía	pon–ías	pon–ía	pon–íamos	pon–íais	pon–ían

Pret. Indic.

pus–e	pus–iste	pus–o	pus–imos	pus–isteis	pus–ieron

Imperf. Subj., 1st Form

pus–iese	pus–ieses	pus–iese	pus–iésemos	pus–ieseis	pus–iesen

Imperf. Subj., 2d Form

pus–iera	pus–ieras	pus–iera	pus–iéramos	pus–ierais	pus–ieran

Fut. Subj.

pus–iere	pus–ieres	pus–iere	pus–iéremos	pus–iereis	pus–ieren

a. The present stem shows both a regular and an irregular (**pong–**) form. The imperative singular is without flectional ending. The future and conditional indicative are based on a contract infinitive with in-

serted **d**. The preterite **puse** came from Latin *posuī*. The past participle **puesto** is irregular; cf. Latin *pŏsitum*.

272. Asir *to grasp*

Asir, asiendo, asido

Pres. Indic.

asg–o	as–es	as–e	as–imos	as–ís	as–en

Pres. Subj.

asg–a	asg–as	asg–a	asg–amos	asg–áis	asg–an

Imperat.

——	as–e	——	——	as–id	——

Fut. Indic.

asir–é	asir–ás	asir–á	asir–emos	asir–éis	asir–án

Cond. Indic.

asir–ía	asir–ías	asir–ía	asir–íamos	asir–íais	asir–ían

Imperf. Indic.

as–ía	as–ías	as–ía	as–íamos	as–íais	as–ían

Pret. Indic.

as–í	as–iste	as–ió	as–imos	as–isteis	as–ieron

Imperf. Subj., 1st Form

as–iese	as–ieses	as–iese	as–iésemos	as–ieseis	as–iesen

Imperf. Subj., 2d Form

as–iera	as–ieras	as–iera	as–iéramos	as–ierais	as–ieran

Fut. Subj.

as–iere	as–ieres	as–iere	as–iéremos	as–iereis	as–ieren

a. This verb is irregular in only seven forms, viz., the first singular, present indicative, and all the present subjunctive, which show a stem **asg–**. All other forms are as of the third regular conjugation.

273. Valer *to be worth*

Valer, valiendo, valido

Pres. Indic.

valg–o	val–es	val–e	val–emos	val–éis	val–en

Pres. Subj.

valg–a	valg–as	valg–a	valg–amos	valg–áis	valg–an

Imperat.

——	val *or* vale	——	——	val–ed	——

Fut. Indic.

valdr–é	valdr–ás	valdr–á	valdr–emos	valdr–éis	valdr–án

Cond. Indic.

valdr–ía	valdr–ías	valdr–ía	valdr–íamos	valdr–íais	valdr–ían

Imperf. Indic.

val–ía	val–ías	val–ía	val–íamos	val–íais	val–ían

Pret. Indic.

val–í	val–iste	val–ió	val–imos	val–isteis	val–ieron

Imperf. Subj., 1st Form

val–iese	val–ieses	val–iese	val–iésemos	val–ieseis	val–iesen

Imperf. Subj., 2d Form

val–iera	val–ieras	val–iera	val–iéramos	val–ierais	val–ieran

Fut. Subj.

val–iere	val–ieres	val–iere	val–iéremos	val–iereis	val–ieren

a. The present tenses have both a regular and an irregular (**valg–**) stem. The imperative singular may have a flectional vowel or not; it usually does nowadays. The future and conditional indicative are based on a contract stem with inserted **d.** All other forms are perfectly regular.

274. Salir *to go out, come out*

Salir, saliendo, salido

Pres. Indic.	salg–o	sal–es	sal–e	sal–imos	sal–ís	sal–en
Pres. Subj.	salg–a	salg–as	salg–a	salg–amos	salg–áis	salg–an
Imperat.	——	sal	——	——	sal–id	——

a. All other forms follow the model of **valer**, from which, moreover, **salir** differs only in the four flectional forms characteristic of the third conjugation and in having only the imperative singular without a flectional vowel.

275. Caer *to fall*

Caer, cayendo, caído

Pres. Indic.	caig–o	ca–es	ca–e
	ca–emos	ca–éis	ca–en
Pres. Subj.	caig–a	caig–as	caig–a
	caig–amos	caig–áis	caig–an
Imperat.	——	ca–e	——
	——	ca–ed	——
Fut. Indic.	caer–é	caer–ás	caer–á
	caer–emos	caer–éis	caer–án
Cond. Indic.	caer–ía	caer–ías	caer–ía
	caer–íamos	caer–íais	caer–ían
Imperf. Indic	ca–ía	ca–ías	ca–ía
	ca–íamos	ca–íais	ca–ían
Pret. Indic.	ca–í	ca–íste	ca–yó
	ca–ímos	ca–ísteis	ca–yeron
Imperf. Subj., 1st Form	ca–yese	ca–yeses	ca–yese
	ca–yésemos	ca–yeseis	ca–yesen
Imperf. Subj., 2d Form	ca–yera	ca–yeras	ca–yera
	ca–yéramos	ca–yerais	ca–yeran
Fut. Subj.	ca–yere	ca–yeres	ca–yere
	ca–yéremos	ca–yereis	ca–yeren

a. The present tenses have a regular and an irregular (**caig–**) stem. The rest of the verb is perfectly regular. Note, however, that a written accent is required on the **i** of the past participle and of the second

singular and the first and second plural of the preterite, and that unaccented **i** between vowels has been changed to **y** in the preterite third singular and third plural, in the subjunctive imperfects and future, and in the present participle.

276. Oír *to hear*

Oír, oyendo, oído

Pres. Indic.	oig–o	oy–es	oy–e	o–ímos	o–ís	oy–en
Pres. Subj.	oig–a	oig–as	oig–a	oig–amos	oig–áis	oig–an
Imperat.	——	oy–e	——	——	o–íd	——
Fut. Indic.	oir–é	oir–ás	oir–á	oir–emos	oir–éis	oir–án
Cond. Indic.	oir–ía	oir–ías	oir–ía	oir–íamos	oir–íais	oir–ían
Imperf. Indic.	o–ía	o–ías	o–ía	o–íamos	o–íais	o–ían
Pret. Indic.	o–í	o–íste	o–yó	o–ímos	o–ísteis	o–yeron
Imperf. Subj., 1st Form	o–yese	o–yeses	o–yese	o–yésemos	o–yeseis	o–yesen
Imperf. Subj., 2d Form	o–yera	o–yeras	o–yera	o–yéramos	o–yerais	o–yeran
Fut. Subj.	o–yere	o–yeres	o–yere	o–yéremos	o–yereis	o–yeren

a. Three stems are visible in the present, viz., **oig–** (first singular, present indicative, and all of present subjunctive), **oy–** (second and third singular and third plural of present indicative and imperative singular), and the regular stem **o–** (first and second plural, present indicative, and imperative plural). The rest of the verb is regular, but unaccented **i** between vowels is changed to **y** (third singular and plural of preterite, and all of subjunctive imperfects and hypothetical, as well as present participle). Note that stressed **i** after **o** requires a written accent.

277. Traer *to bring*

Traer, trayendo, traído

Pres. Indic.	traig–o	tra–es	tra–e
	tra–emos	tra–éis	tra–en
Pres. Subj.	traig–a	traig–as	traig–a
	traig–amos	traig–áis	traig–an
Imperat.	——	tra–e	——
	——	tra–ed	——

Fut. Indic.	traer–é	traer–ás	traer–á
	traer–emos	traer–éis	traer–án
Cond. Indic.	traer–ía	traer–ías	traer–ía
	traer–íamos	traer–íais	traer–ían
Imperf. Indic.	tra–ía	tra–ías	tra–ía
	tra–íamos	tra–íais	tra–ían
Pret. Indic.	traj–e	traj–iste	traj–o
	traj–imos	traj–isteis	traj–eron
Imperf. Subj., 1*st Form*	traj–ese	traj–eses	traj–ese
	traj–ésemos	traj–eseis	traj–esen
Imperf. Subj., 2*d Form*	traj–era	traj–eras	traj–era
	traj–éramos	traj–erais	traj–eran
Fut. Subj.	traj–ere	traj–eres	traj–ere
	traj–éremos	traj–ereis	traj–eren

a. The present tenses show a regular and an irregular (**traig–**) stem; the present participle exhibits the change of unaccented **i** between vowels to **y** (**tra–iendo — tra–yendo**). Note the written accent of the past participle. The preterite **traje** represents the Latin *trāxī* (a Latin *x* between vowels has usually become **j** in Spanish). The **i** of the diphthong **ie** has disappeared after the **j** (Old Spanish *x* = *sh*); cf. § 235.

278. –ducir *to lead*

This verb (from Latin *ducere*) is found in modern Spanish only in certain derivatives (**conducir, deducir, inducir, reducir,** etc.). Its conjugation may be illustrated by one of these.

Conducir *to conduct*

Conducir, conduciendo, conducido

Pres. Indic.	conduzc–o	conduc–es	conduc–e
	conduc–imos	conduc–ís	conduc–en
Pres. Subj	conduzc–a	conduzc–as	conduzc–a
	conduzc–amos	conduzc–áis	conduzc–an
Imperat.	——	conduc–e	——
	——	conduc–id	——

Fut. Indic.	conducir–é	conducir–ás	conducir–á
	conducir–emos	conducir–éis	conducir–án
Cond. Indic.	conducir–ía	conducir–ías	conducir–ía
	conducir–íamos	conducir–íais	conducir–ían
Imperf. Indic.	conduc–ía	conduc–ías	conduc–ía
	conduc–íamos	conduc–íais	conduc–ían
Pret. Indic.	conduj–e	conduj–iste	conduj–o
	conduj–imos	conduj–isteis	conduj–eron
Imperf. Subj., 1*st Form*	conduj–ese	conduj–eses	conduj–ese
	conduj–ésemos	conduj–eseis	conduj–esen
Imperf. Subj., 2*d Form*	conduj–era	conduj–eras	conduj–era
	conduj–éramos	conduj–erais	conduj–eran
Fut. Subj.	conduj–ere	conduj–eres	conduj–ere
	conduj–éremos	conduj–ereis	conduj–eren

a. The present tenses show the peculiarities of the inceptive verbs, to which, because there is a vowel before the **–cir**, this verb has been attracted. The preterite **–duje** represents the Latin *dūxī*, and as usual the i of a following diphthong **–ie–** is lost after the *j* (Old Spanish *x* = *sh*).

279. Decir *to say*

Decir, diciendo, dicho

Pres. Indic.	dig–o	dic–es	dic–e	dec–imos	dec–ís	dic–en
Pres. Subj.	dig–a	dig–as	dig–a	dig–amos	dig–áis	dig–an
Imperat.	——	di	——	——	decid	——
Fut. Indic.	dir–é	dir–ás	dir–á	dir–emos	dir–éis	dir–án
Cond. Indic.	dir–ía	dir–ías	dir–ía	dir–íamos	dir–íais	dir–ían
Imp. Indic.	dec–ía	dec–ías	dec–ía	dec–íamos	dec–íais	dec–ían
Pret. Indic.	dij–e	dij–iste	dij–o	dij–imos	dij–isteis	dij–eron
Imp. Subj., 1*st Form*	dij–ese	dij–eses	dij–ese	dij–ésemos	dij–eseis	dij–esen
Imp. Subj., 2*d Form*	dij–era	dij–eras	dij–era	dij–éramos	dij–erais	dij–eran
Fut. Subj.	dij–ere	dij–eres	dij–ere	dij–éremos	dij–ereis	dij–eren

a. The present tenses and the present participle show vocalic conditions like those of the third class of radical-changing verbs. The past participle is irregular (from Latin *dictum*); the imperative singular lacks

a flectional ending (cf. Latin *dic*). The future and conditional indicative are based on a contract infinitive, **dir.** **Dije** represents the Latin *dīxī*, and after the **j** the **i** of the diphthong **ie** has disappeared (in preterite third plural and subjunctive imperfects and future). There is an indefinite form **diz,** *it is said, people say,* etc.

b. Derivatives of **decir** are **bendecir,** *to bless,* and **maldecir,** *to curse.* These imitate **decir** in their conjugation, except that they base their future and conditional indicative upon the uncontracted infinitive **decir,** whence the forms **bendeciré,** etc., **maldeciré,** etc., and have a flectional vowel in their imperative singular, **bendice** and **maldice.** Furthermore, they have regular past participles, **bendecido** and **maldecido.** The participles **bendicho** and **maldicho** are now antiquated, and the forms **bendito** and **maldito** occur only as adjectives. The derivatives **contradecir,** *to contradict,* **desdecir,** *to gainsay,* and **predecir,** *to predict,* differ from **decir** only in having the full form of the imperative singular, **contradice, desdice, predice.**

280. Ver *to see*

Ver, viendo, visto

Pres. Indic.	ve–o	v–es	v–e	v–emos	v–eis	v–en
Pres. Subj.	ve–a	ve–as	ve–a	ve–amos	ve–áis	ve–an
Imperat.	——	v–e	——	——	v–ed	——
Fut. Indic.	ver–é	ver–ás	ver–á	ver–emos	ver–éis	ver–án
Cond. Indic.	ver–ía	ver–ías	ver–ía	ver–íamos	ver–íais	ver–ían
Imperf. Indic.	ve–ía	ve–ías	ve–ía	ve–íamos	ve–íais	ve–ían
Pret. Indic.	v–i	v–iste	v–ió	v–imos	v–isteis	v–icron
Imperf. Subj., 1*st Form*	v–iese	v–ieses	v–iese	v–iésemos	v–ieseis	v–iesen
Imperf. Subj., 2*d Form*	v–iera	v–ieras	v–iera	v–iéramos	v–ierais	v–ieran
Fut. Subj.	v–iere	v–ieres	v–iere	v–iéremos	v–iereis	v–ieren

a. The true present stem of this verb is **ve–**, which is seen in the first singular, present indicative (**ve–o**), and throughout in the present subjunctive (**ve–a,** etc.) and the imperfect indicative (**ve–ía,** etc.). Before a flectional **e** the stem loses its **e,** as in the remaining forms of the present indicative, the infinitive, and the imperative. It also loses the **e** in the present participle. The past participle is irregular. The preterite

vi represents the Latin *vīdī*.[1] In poetry an imperfect indicative **vía, vías** (with reduced stem **v–**), is sometimes found even now.

b. Compounds of **ver** which show the reduced present stem (**v–**), such as **antever,** *to foresee*, **prever,** *to foresee*, **rever,** *to see again, review*, are conjugated exactly like it. On the other hand, the derivative **proveer,** *to provide*, which shows the full present stem (**ve–**), is conjugated throughout as a perfectly regular verb. It has, however, both a regular past participle, **proveído,** and an irregular one, **provisto;** and in the present participle, the preterite, third singular and third plural, and the subjunctive imperfect and future, it changes the **i** of the diphthongs **–ie–, –ió,** to **y.**

Proveer, proveyendo, proveído *or* **provisto**

Pres. Indic.	prove–o	prove–es, *etc.*	
Pres. Subj.	prove–a	prove–as, *etc.*	
Imperat.		prove–e, *etc.*	
Fut. Indic.	proveer–é, *etc.*		
Cond. Indic.	proveer–ía, *etc.*		
Imperf. Indic.	prove–ía, *etc.*		
Pret. Indic.	prove–í	prove–íste	prove–yó
	prove–ímos	prove–ísteis	prove–yeron
Imperf. Subj., 1*st Form*	prove–yese, *etc.*		
Imperf. Subj., 2*d Form*	prove–yera, *etc.*		
Fut. Subj.	prove–yere, *etc.*		

Note the accent required in the regular past participle, and in the second singular and the first and second plural of the preterite.

Anomalous Past Participles

281. Four regular verbs of the third conjugation have only irregular past participles.

abrir *to open*, **abierto** — **escribir** *to write*, **escrito**
cubrir *to cover*, **cubierto** — **imprimir** *to print*, **impreso**

This peculiarity is shared by their compounds.

[1] **Vide,** for **vi,** still survives in some dialects.

a. The participle **escribido** is found in what is perhaps punning use in such an expression as **un hombre (bien) leído y escribido,** *a man who can read and write* (cf. the influence of the participle **leído;** its attractive force may explain **escribido**).

282. Two regular verbs of the second conjugation have both a regular and an irregular past participle.

prender *to catch,* **prendido** and **preso**
romper *to break,* **rompido** and **roto**

Prendido and **roto** are preferred for the compound tenses; **rompido,** however, occurs in intransitive use. **Preso** and **roto** are also used as adjectives.

283. Two regular verbs of the third conjugation have both a regular and an irregular past participle.

oprimir *to oppress,* **oprimido** and **opreso**
suprimir *to suppress,* **suprimido** and **supreso**

The regular participle alone seems now to be used in the compound tenses; the other forms are practically adjectives.

Defective Verbs

284. Placer, *to please.* Used now chiefly as an impersonal verb, i.e., only in the third person singular forms of its tenses. Traces of other forms are occasionally found in the present tenses; e.g., **placen.** Its impersonal conjugation is this:

Pres. Ind.	place	*Pres. Subj.*	plega, plegue *or* plazca
Impf. Ind.	placía (*rare*)	*Impf. Subj.,* 1*st Form*	pluguiese *or* placiese
Pret. Ind.	plugo *or* plació	*Impf. Subj.,* 2*d Form*	pluguiera *or* placiera
Fut. Ind.	placerá	*Fut. Subj.*	pluguiere *or* placiere
Cond. Ind.	placería	*Pres. Part.*	placiendo

a. The commonest form is **pluguiera,** which is used in optative expressions: **¡ pluguiera a Dios !** *would to God!*

b. The derivative **complacer** is of the class of verbs with inceptive

endings; another derivative, **aplacer,** is found in the third person singular and plural forms, such as **aplace, aplacen, aplacía,** and **aplacían.**

285. Yacer, *to lie.* This verb has many peculiarities of the inceptive class. It is nearly obsolete, and is chiefly used in the third person forms.

Yacer, yaciendo, yacido

Pres. Indic.	yazco / yazgo / yago	yaces	yace	yacemos	yacéis	yacen

Pres. Subj.	yazca	yazcas, *etc.*
	yazga	yazgas, *etc.*
	yaga	yagas, *etc.*

Imperat. yace *or* yaz

The other forms are regular.

yací, *etc.;* **yaciese,** *etc.;* **yaciera,** *etc.;* **yaciere,** *etc.;* **yaceré,** *etc.;* **yacería,** *etc.*

286. Concernir, *to concern,* occurs only in the third person singular and plural forms.

Pres. Indic.	concierne	conciernen
Pres. Subj.	concierna	conciernan
Fut. Indic.	concernirá	concernirán
Cond. Indic.	concerniría	concernirían
Imperf. Indic.	concernía	concernían
Pret. Indic.	concernió	concernieron
Imperf. Subj., 1st Form	concerniese	concerniesen
Imperf. Subj., 2d Form	concerniera	concernieran
Fut. Subj.	concerniere	concernieren

287. Soler, *to be accustomed,* is used now in hardly any forms except those of the present and imperfect indicative.

Pres. Indic.	suelo	sueles	suele	solemos	soléis	suelen
Imperf. Indic.	solía	solías	solía	solíamos	solíais	solían

The present participle **soliendo,** the past participle **solido,** and the preterite **solí,** etc., are exceedingly rare. All other forms do not occur.

288. Atañer, *to appertain*, is found only in the third person forms, especially of the present indicative.

atañe atañen

289. Raer, *to erase*, is but little used. Its conjugation is like that of **caer,** with the additional forms **raya, rayas,** etc., in the present subjunctive.

290. Roer, *to gnaw.* This may have any one of three present stems before its endings **–o** and **–a**; otherwise it is a regular verb of the second conjugation.

Pres. Indic.	ro–o roig–o roy–o	roes	roe	roemos	roéis	roen

Pres. Subj.	ro–a	ro–as, *etc.*
	roig–a	roig–as, *etc.*
	roy–a	roy–as, *etc.*

But the first person singular, present indicative, and all the present subjunctive are rather shunned in actual use.

a. The derivative **corroer,** *to corrode*, avoids the stems ending in **–ig** and **–y.**

291. The preterite forms **repuse,** *I replied*, **repusiste,** *thou didst reply*, etc., if judged by their form, would seem to be from the verb **reponer,** but they may be forms of an older **respuse,** etc., (with the first **s** lost by dissimilation), from **responder.**

292. Some ten verbs of the third regular conjugation occur only in the forms whose flectional ending begins with **i.** These are

abolir to abolish
aguerrir to make warlike
arrecirse to become numb
aterirse to become rigid
desmarrirse to become sad
despavorir to become frightened
embaír to impose upon
empedernir to harden
garantir to guarantee
manir to become tender

For these there can occur in the present indicative and imperative only the forms in **–imos, –ís,** and **–id** (e.g., **abolimos, abolís, abolid**). They have no subjunctive present forms. They may have all the rest of the conjugation, since the endings begin with **i.**

293. LIST OF VERBS

The following list embraces radical-changing, **–uir,** irregular, and anomalous verbs. The verbs with inceptive endings (**–cer** or **–cir** preceded by a vowel) are not included: they simply follow the models given in § 242. In the case of derivatives reference is made to the conjugation of the simple verbs, which they follow. The numbers refer to paragraphs.

abnegar renounce: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
abolir abolish: 292
abrir open: *p. p. irr.*, 281
absolver absolve: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); *p. p. irr.*, 246
abstenerse abstain: *irr.*, 261
abstraer abstract: *irr.*, 277
abuñolar make fritter-shaped: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. **abuñuelar,** *reg.*
acertar hit the mark: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
aclocarse stretch out, brood: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 247
acordar resolve, remind, tune; **—se** remember: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
acostar lay down: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
acrecentar increase: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
adestrar guide: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); *also* **adiestrar,** *reg.*
adherir adhere: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
adormir make drowsy: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (2)
adquirir acquire: *Rad.-ch.* I, 250
aducir adduce: *irr.*, 278
advertir observe, advise: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
afollar blow with bellows: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
aforar give a charter: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3). **Aforar** gauge, *reg.*
agorar divine, prognosticate: *Rad.-ch.* II, 245 (3); cf. 247
aguerrir inure to warfare: 292
alebrarse squat, cower: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
alentar breathe, encourage: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
aliquebrar break the wings: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
almorzar breakfast: *Rad.–ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (4) and 247
alongar lengthen: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (2) and 247
amoblar furnish: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3). *Also* **amueblar,** *reg.*
amolar whet: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
amover remove, dismiss: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4)
andar go, walk: *irr.*, 262
antedecir foretell: *irr.*, 279

anteponer put before, prefer: *irr.*, 271
antever foresee: *irr.*, 280
apacentar graze: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
apercollar collar, snatch: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
apernar seize by the legs: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
aplacer please: *irr.*, 284
apostar bet, post: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); post troops, *reg.*
apretar squeeze, press: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
aprobar approve: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
argüir argue: 257
arrecirse become benumbed: 292
arrendar rent, hire: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
arrepentirse repent: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
ascender ascend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
asentar seat, set down: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
asentir assent, acquiesce: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
aserrar saw: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
asir seize, grasp: *irr.*, 272
asolar level to ground, raze: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
asoldar hire: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
asonar assonate, be in assonance: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
asosegar *v.* **sosegar**
atañer belong, appertain: 288
atender attend, mind: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
atenerse abide, hold: *irr.*, 261
atentar try: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1). **Atentar** attempt a crime, *reg.*
aterirse become rigid with cold: 292
aterrar fell: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); terrify, *reg.*
atestar cram, stuff: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1). **Atestar** attest, *reg.*
atraer attract: *irr.*, 277
atravesar cross: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
atribuir attribute: 257
atronar make a thundering din, stun: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
avenir reconcile: *irr.*, 270
aventar fan, winnow: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
avergonzar shame: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (4) and 247
azolar shape with the adze: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)

balbucir stammer: 242 *a*
bendecir bless: *irr.*, 279
bienquerer esteem, wish well: *irr.*, 264
bruñir burnish: 239
bullir boil: 239

caber be contained, find room: *irr.*, 266
caer fall: *irr.*, 275
calentar warm: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
cegar blind: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
ceñir gird: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 239 and 253
cerner sift: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
cerrar close: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
cimentar found, establish: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
circuir encircle: 257
clocar cluck: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (1) and 247
cocer boil, bake: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); cf. 242, *Exceptions* (*a*)
coextenderse be coextensive: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)

colar strain, filter: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
colegir collect: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 237 (2) and 253
colgar hang up: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (2) and 247
comedirse behave: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
comenzar commence: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (4)
competir compete: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
complacer please, content: *irr.*, 284
componer compose: *irr.*, 271
comprobar verify, confirm: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
concebir conceive: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
concernir concern: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245; but cf. 286
concertar concert, regulate: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
concluir conclude: 257
concordar accord, agree: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
condescender condescend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
condolerse condole: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4)
conducir conduct: *irr.*, cf. 278 and 242 *b*
conferir confer: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
confesar confess: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
confluir join: 257
conmover move, affect: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4)
conseguir obtain, attain: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 237 (4) and 253
consentir consent: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
consolar console: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
consonar be in consonance, rhyme: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
constituir constitute: 257
constreñir compel, constrain: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 253
construir construct: 257
contar count, tell: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
contender contend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
contener contain: *irr.*, 261
contorcerse be distorted, writhe: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); cf. 237 (1)
contradecir contradict: *irr.*, 279
contraer contract: *irr.*, 277
contrahacer counterfeit: *irr.*, 268
contraponer oppose, compare: *irr.*, 271
contravenir contravene: *irr.*, 270
contribuir contribute: 257
controvertir controvert: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
convenir agree, fit: *irr.*, 270
convertir convert: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
corregir correct: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 237 (2) and 253
corroer corrode: *irr.*, 290
costar cost: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
creer believe: cf. 238
cubrir cover: *p. p. irr.*, 281

dar give: *irr.*, 263
decaer decay: *irr.*, 275
decentar begin to use: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
decir say: *irr.*, 279
deducir deduce: *irr.*, cf. 278 and 242 *b*

defender defend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
deferir defer: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
degollar behead, cut the throat: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 247
demoler demolish: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4)
demostrar demonstrate: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
denegar deny: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
denostar insult: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
dentar tooth, indent; teethe: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
deponer depose, depone: *irr.*, 271
derrengar sprain the hip, cripple: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
derretir melt: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
derrocar pull down, demolish: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (1) and 247
derruir cast down, destroy: 257
desacertar blunder, err: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desacordar make discordant; —**se** forget: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
desaferrar loosen, unfurl: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desalentar put out of breath, discourage: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desamoblar unfurnish, remove furniture: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3). *Also* **desamueblar**, *reg.*
desandar retrace steps, undo: *irr.*, 262
desapretar slacken, loosen: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desaprobar disapprove: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
desarrendarse shake off the bridle: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desasentar disagree, displease; —**se** get up: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desasir let go, release hold: *irr.*, 272
desasosegar disturb, disquiet: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
desatender disregard, neglect: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
desatentar perturb, perplex: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desavenir discompose, disconcert: *irr.*, 270
descender descend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
desceñir ungird: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 239 and 253
descolgar unhang, take down: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (2) and 247
descollar stand forth, excel: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
descomedirse be disrespectful, behave ill: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
descomponer disconcert, decompose: *irr.*, 271
desconcertar disconcert, confound: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desconsentir dissent: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
desconsolar make disconsolate: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
descontar discount: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
desconvenir disagree, be unlike: *irr.*, 270
descordar remove cords: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
descornar remove horns: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
descubrir uncover, discover; *p. p. irr.*, 281

desdar untwist: *irr.*, 263
desdecir gainsay: *irr.*, 279
desdentar remove teeth: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desempedrar unpave: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desencerrar release from confinement: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desencordar remove strings, loosen: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
desengrosar make lean: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
desentenderse disregard, feign not to notice: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desenterrar disinter: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desenvolver unfold, unravel: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); *p. p. irr.*, cf. 246
deservir neglect duty, do a disservice: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
desflocar remove flecks (of wool): *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 247
desgobernar derange the government, misgovern: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
deshacer undo, destroy: *irr.*, 268
deshelar thaw: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desherbar pluck out herbs: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desherrar uniron, remove horseshoes: 245 (1)
desleír dilute: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252 and 255
deslendrar remove nits (from hair): *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desmajolar uproot vines: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
desmarrirse become sad: 292
desmedirse go beyond bounds, be unreasonable: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
desmembrar dismember: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desmentir belie: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
desnegar retract denial: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
desnevar melt away (of snow): *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desobstruir remove obstruction: 257
desoír not to heed, feign not to hear: *irr.*, 276
desolar make desolate: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
desoldar unsolder: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
desollar flay: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
desosar remove bones: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 248 *a*
desovar spawn: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 248 *a*
despavorir be terrified, stand aghast: 292
despedir dismiss; —**se** take leave: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
despernar remove legs, cripple: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
despertar awaken: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
despezar arrange (stones) at intervals, taper at the end: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 247
desplacer displease: 284
desplegar unfold, unfurl: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
despoblar depopulate: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
desproveer leave unprovided, deprive of supplies: 238; cf. 280 *b*
desteñir discolor, fade: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 239 and 253
desterrar exile: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)

destituir deprive, remove from office: 257
destorcer untwist: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); cf. 237 (1) and 247
destrocar return a bartered object: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (1) and 247
destruir destroy: 257
desventar vent, let out air: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
desvergonzarse be shameless *or* impudent: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (4) and 247
detener detain: *irr.*, 261
detraer detract: *irr.*, 277
devolver give back: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); *p. p. irr.*, 246
diferir defer, delay, differ: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
digerir digest: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
diluir dilute: 257
discernir discern: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2) and 250 (1)
disconvenir *v.* **desconvenir**
discordar disagree, be discordant: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
disentir dissent: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
disminuir diminish, 257
disolver dissolve: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); *p. p. irr.*, 246
disonar be in dissonance: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
dispertar *v.* **despertar**
displacer displease: *irr.*, 284
disponer dispose: *irr.*, 271
distender distend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
distraer distract: *irr.*, 277
distribuir distribute: 257
divertir divert: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
dolar plane, smooth (wood, etc.): *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
doler pain, grieve: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4)
dormir sleep: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (2)

educir educe, bring out: *irr.*, 278; cf. 242 *b*
elegir elect: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 237 (2) and 253
embaír impose, deceive: 292
embestir invest, attack: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
emparentar be related by marriage: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
empedernir harden, make inveterate: 292
empedrar pave: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
empeller urge, push: 239
empezar begin: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (4) and 247
emporcar sully, befoul: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (1) and 247
encender light, kindle: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
encentar begin to use for first time: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
encerrar shut up, confine: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
enclocar cluck: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 247
encomendar commend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
encontrar meet, find: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
encorar cover with leather, renew the skin: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
encordar string (musical instruments), lash: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
encovar put into a cave *or* cellar, lock up: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)

encubertar cover over: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
endentar mortise in: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
engorar lay addled eggs: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 247
engreír elate, puff up: *Rad.-ch.* III, 245
engrosar fatten, strengthen: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
enhestar erect, set upright: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
enmelar honey, sweeten: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
enmendar amend, correct: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
enrodar break on the wheel: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
ensangrentar cover with blood: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
entender hear, understand: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
enterrar inter: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
entortar make crooked; deprive of one eye: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
entredecir interdict: *irr.*, 279
entremorir pine away: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (2); *p. p. irr.*, 251 *a*
entreoír hear indistinctly: *irr.*, 276
entrepernar put the legs in between (something else): *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
entreponer interpose: *irr.*, 271
entretener delay, entertain: *irr.*, 261
entrever see imperfectly, catch a glimpse of: *irr.*, 280
envolver involve, wrap up, complicate: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); *p. p. irr.*, 246
equivaler equal, be equivalent: *irr.*, 273
erguir erect: *Rad.-ch.* II or III, 254, 251, and 252; cf. 237 (4) and 248
errar err, wander: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 248
escarmentar give warning example, learn by experience: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
escocer smart: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); cf. 242 *a* and 247
escribir write: *p. p. irr.*, 281
esforzar strengthen; —**se** attempt: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (4) and 247
estar be: *irr.*, 260
estatuir establish, 257
estregar rub, scour, grind: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
estreñir bind, restrain: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 239
excluir exclude: 257
expedir expedite, despatch: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
exponer expose: *irr.*, 271
extender extend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
extraer extract: *irr.*, 277

ferrar put on iron points, etc.: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
fluir flow: 257
follar blow with bellows: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
forzar force: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (4) and 247
fregar rub, cleanse: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
freír fry: *Rad.-ch.* III, 255

garantir guarantee: 292
gemir groan, moan: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252

gobernar govern: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
gruir cry like cranes: 257
gruñir grunt: 239

haber have: *irr.*, 259
hacendar transfer property: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
hacer do, make: *irr.*, 268
heder have a stench, stink: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
helar freeze: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
henchir stuff, cram: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
hender cleave, split: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
herbar dress skins: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
herir wound: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
hervir boil, bubble: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
herrar shoe (horses), brand (cattle): *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
holgar rest, cease working: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (2) and 247
hollar trample on, tread on: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
huir flee: 257

imbuir imbue: 257
impedir impede: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
imponer impose: *irr.*, 271
imprimir print: *p. p. irr.*, 281
improbar disapprove, censure: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
incensar perfume, incense: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
incluir include: 257
indisponer indispose, disincline: *irr.*, 271
inducir induce: *irr.*, 278; cf. 242 *b*
inferir infer: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
infernar damn, vex: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
influir influence: 257
ingerir graft, insert: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
inquirir inquire: *Rad.-ch.* I, 250 (2)
instituir institute: 257
instruir instruct: 257
interdecir indict: *irr.*, 279
interponer interpose: *irr.*, 271
intervenir intervene: *irr.*, 270
introducir introduce: *irr.*, 278, cf. 242 *b*
invernar winter: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
invertir invert, spend, invest: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
investir invest, gird: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
ir go: *irr.*, 269

jugar play: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 249

leer read: 238

llover rain: *Rad.-ch.* I, *impers.*, 245 (4)

maldecir curse: *irr.*, 279
malherir wound seriously: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
malquerer dislike, abhor: *irr.*, 264
malsonar make cacophony: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
maltraer maltreat: *irr.*, 277
manifestar manifest: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
manir mellow, mature meat: 292
mantener maintain: 261
mecer rock, lull, mix: 242 *a*
medir measure: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252

melar boil to honey, deposit honey (of bees): *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
mentar mention: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
mentir lie: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
merendar lunch: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
moblar furnish: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3). *Also* **mueblar**, *reg.*
moler grind: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4)
morder bite: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4)
morir die: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (2); *p. p. irr.*, 251 *a*
mostrar show: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
mover move: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4)

negar deny: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
nevar snow: *Rad.-ch.* I, *impers.*, 245 (1)

obstruir obstruct: 257
obtener obtain: *irr.*, 261
oír hear: *irr.*, 276
oler smell, have an odor: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); cf. 248 (2)
oponer oppose: *irr.*, 271
oprimir oppress: 283

pedir ask: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
pensar think, mean, believe: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
perder lose, spoil, destroy: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
perniquebrar break the legs: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
perseguir pursue, persecute: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 253
pervertir pervert: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251
placer please: *irr.*, 284
plañir lament, bewail: 239
plegar fold: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
poblar found, people, fill: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
poder be able, can: *irr.*, 265
podrir rot: 256
poner put: *irr.*, 271
poseer possess: 238
posponer place after, postpone: *irr.*, 271
predecir predict: *irr.*, 279
predisponer predispose: *irr.*, 271
preferir prefer: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
premorir die first *or* prematurely: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (2) and *a*
prender arrest, catch: 282
preponer put before, prefer: *irr.*, 271
presentir forebode, foresee: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
presuponer presuppose: *irr.*, 271
prevalerse prevail: *irr.*, 273
prevenir forestall, prevent: *irr.*, 270
prever foresee: *irr.*, 280
probar prove, try, taste: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
producir produce: *irr.*, 278; cf. 242 *b*
proferir utter, pronounce: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
promover promote: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4)
proponer propose: *irr.*, 271
proseguir pursue, prosecute: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 237 (4) and 253
prostituir prostitute: 257
proveer provide: 238; cf. 280 *b*
provenir proceed: *irr.*, 270
pudrir rot: 256

quebrar break: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
querer wish, like: *irr.*, 264

raer scrape, grate, erase: *irr.*, 289
rarefacer rarify: *irr.*, 268

reapretar squeeze again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
rebendecir bless again: *irr.*, 279
recaer fall back, relapse: *irr.*, 275
recalentar treat again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
recentar leaven: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
recluir shut up, seclude: 257
recocer boil again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); cf. 242 *a*
recolar strain again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
recomendar recommend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
recomponer recompose, mend: *irr.*, 271
reconducir renew lease *or* contract: *irr.*, 278; cf. 242 *b*
reconstruir reconstruct: 257
recontar recount: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
reconvenir accuse, rebuke: *irr.*, 270
recordar remind: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
recostar lean against, recline: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
redargüir reargue: 257
reducir reduce: *irr.*, 278; cf. 242 *b*
reelegir reëlect: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 237 (2) and 253
referir relate, refer: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
refluir flow back: 257
reforzar strengthen, fortify: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (4)
refregar rub over again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
refreír fry again: 255
regar water: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
regimentar raise a regiment: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
regir rule, direct: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; 237 (2) and 253
regoldar belch, eruct: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 247
rehacer make again, mend: *irr.*, 268
rehenchir fill again, restuff: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
reherir wound again: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
reherrar shoe (horses) again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
rehervir reboil: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
rehollar trample under foot: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
rehuir withdraw, deny: 257
reír laugh, 255
rémendar repair, patch: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
rementir lie again: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
remoler grind again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4)
remorder bite repeatedly, cause remorse: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4)
remover remove, alter: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4)
rendir subdue, render; —**se** surrender: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
renegar deny, disown: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
renovar renovate, renew: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
reñir quarrel, scold: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 239 and 253
repensar think over again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
repetir repeat, recite: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252

replegar refold, double again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
repoblar repopulate: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
repodrir decay, rot inwardly: 256
reponer put back, replace: *irr.*, 271
reprobar reject, condemn: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
reproducir reproduce: *irr.*, 278; cf. 242 *b*
repudrir decay, rot inwardly: 256
requebrar court, make love: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
requerer wish much, like well: *irr.*, 264
requerir investigate, require, request: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
resaber know well: *irr.*, 267
resalir project, be prominent: *irr.*, 274
resegar reap again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
resembrar sow again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
resentirse begin to give way, resent: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
resolver resolve: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); *p. p. irr.*, 246
resollar respire: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
resonar resound: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
resquebrar crack, split, burst: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
restituir restore, reëstablish: 257
restregar scrub: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
retemblar shake, tremble much, brandish: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
retener retain: *irr.*, 261
retentar threaten with a relapse: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
reteñir dye over again: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 239 and 253
retorcer twist, contort: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); cf. 237 (1) and 247
retostar toast again, scorch well: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
retraer retract: *irr.*, 277
retribuir make retribution, recompense: 257
retronar thunder again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
retrotraer make retroactive, retroact: *irr.*, 277
revenirse be consumed gradually, sour, ferment: *irr.*, 270
reventar burst: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
rever see again, review, revise: *irr.*, 280
reverter revert: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
revestir put on vestments: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
revolar fly again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
revolcarse wallow: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (1) and 247
revolver stir, revolve: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); *p. p. irr.*, 246
rodar roll: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
roer gnaw: *irr.*, 290
rogar entreat, ask: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (2) and 247; *derivatives reg.*

saber know: *irr.*, 267
salir go out, come out: *irr.*, 274
salpimentar season with pepper and salt: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
sarmentar gather prunings of vine: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)

satisfacer satisfy: *irr.*, 268
segar reap: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
seguir follow: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 237 (4) and 253
sembrar sow: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
sementar sow: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
sentar seat, set, suit: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
sentir feel, regret: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
ser to be: *irr.*, 258
serrar saw: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
servir serve: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
sobre(e)ntender be understood: *Rad.-ch* I, 245 (2)
sobreponer put above, add: *irr.*, 271
sobresalir rise above, surpass: *irr.*, 274
sobresembrar sow over again: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
sobresolar pave again, put on new sole: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
sobrevenir happen, supervene: *irr.*, 270
sobreventar get the weather gauge: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
sobreverterse overflow: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
sobrevestir put on an outer coat: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
sofreír fry slightly: *Rad.-ch.* III, 255
solar floor, pave, sole: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
soldar solder, mend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
soler be wont *or* accustomed: *Rad.-ch.* I *and defective;* cf. 287
soltar untie, loosen: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
solver loosen: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); *p. p. irr.*, 246
sonar sound: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
sonreír smile: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252 and 255
sonrodarse stick in the mud: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
soñar dream: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
sorregar change channels: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
sosegar appease, rest: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
sostener sustain: *irr.*, 261
soterrar put underground, bury: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
subarrendar take a sublease, subrent: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
subentender subintend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
subseguir be next in sequence: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 237 (4) and 253
substituir *v.* **sustituir**
substraer *v.* **sustraer**
subtender subtend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
subvenir aid, give a subvention: *irr.*, 270
subvertir subvert: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
sugerir suggest: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
superponer superimpose: *irr.*, 271
supervenir supervene: *irr.*, 270
suponer suppose: *irr.*, 271
suprimir suppress: 283
sustituir substitute: 257
sustraer subtract: *irr.*, 277

tañer ring, peal, touch: 239
temblar tremble: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
tender stretch: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)

tener have, hold: *irr.*, 261
tentar feel, try: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
teñir tinge, dye, stain: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252; cf. 239 and 253
torcer twist, bend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (4); cf. 237 (1) and 247
tostar toast: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
traducir translate: *irr.*, 278; cf. 242 *b*
traer bring: *irr.*, 277
transcender *v.* **trascender**
transferir transfer: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)
transfregar *v.* **trasfregar**
transponer *v.* **trasponer**
trascender transcend: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
trascolar filter through: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
trascordarse forget: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
trasegar upset, decant: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
trasfregar rub: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1); cf. 236 (2) and 247
trasoír misunderstand, hear imperfectly: *irr.*, 276
trasoñar dream: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
trasponer transpose; —**se** set (of sun): *irr.*, 271
trastrocar change about, invert order: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (1) and 247
trasverter overflow: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
trasvolar fly across *or* beyond: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
travesar cross: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
trocar exchange, barter: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (1) and 247
tronar thunder: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
tropezar stumble: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (4) and 247

valer be worth: *irr.*, 273
venir come: *irr.*, 270
ventar blow: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (1)
ver see: *irr.*, 280
verter pour, shed: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2)
vestir dress, clothe: *Rad.-ch.* III, 252
volar fly, rise, blow up: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3)
volcar overturn: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (3); cf. 236 (1) and 247
volver return, come back: *Rad.-ch.* I, 245 (2); *p. p. irr.*, 246

yacer lie: *irr.*, 285
yuxtaponer put in juxtaposition: *irr.*, 271

za(m)bullirse dive: 239
zaherir reproach, censure: *Rad.-ch.* II, 251 (1)

294. REFERENCE LIST OF VERBS

Taking a Direct Infinitive Object, or Requiring a Preposition Before a Subordinate Infinitive

If the principal verb is followed by a direct infinitive object, without the interposition of a preposition, this fact is indicated by a dash (–) placed after the principal verb, thus: **querer** –, *wish to.*

If a preposition is required before the subordinate infinitive, the preposition is given after the principal verb, thus: **empezar a,** *begin to;* **tratar de,** *try to.*

If the gerund may be used instead of a subordinate infinitive, this fact is indicated thus: **recrearse en** or ger. *divert oneself by.*

After many verbs in the list, the infinitive is used only when the principal and the subordinate verbs have the same subject. This is true of verbs of *affirming, denying, believing, doubting, knowing,* etc. (**afirmar, asegurar, confesar, creer, dudar, negar, reconocer, saber, sostener,** etc.), verbs of *willing* or *wishing* (**anhelar, desear, querer,** etc.), and verbs that express *feeling* or *emotion* (**alegrarse de, sentir, temer,** etc.).

The following list does not include verbs and expressions with which an infinitive is used only as subject of the sentence, such as **importar** (e.g., **me importa hacerlo**), **ocurrir** (e.g., **se me ocurre hacerlo**), **ser fácil, necesario,** etc. (e.g., **es fácil hacerlo**), **tocar** (e.g., **me toca hacerlo**), **valer más** (e.g., **vale más hacerlo**), etc. Nor is reference made to the use of an infinitive subject with such verbs as **convenir** (e.g., **me conviene hacerlo**), **gustar** (e.g., **me gusta hacerlo**), etc.

abandonar(**se**) **a** give (oneself) up to
abstenerse de refrain from
acabar de finish, have just; — **por** end by
acceder a accede, agree to
acomodarse a conform to
aconsejar – advise to
acordarse de remember
acostumbrar – be used to; —(**se**) **a** make (become) used to
acudir a go, come, hasten to
acusar de accuse of
adherir(**se**) **a** stick to
afanarse por exert oneself to
aficionarse a become addicted to
afirmar – affirm, declare
afligirse de lament

agraviarse de be grieved at
ajustarse a agree to
alcanzar a reach, attain to
alegrarse de be glad to
amenazar – threaten to; — **con** threaten with
anhelar – long to
animar a encourage to
aplicarse a apply oneself to
aprender a learn to
apresurar(se) a hurry, hasten to
aprovecharse de profit by
apurarse por exert oneself to
arrepentirse de repent of
arriesgar con risk by; —**se a** risk
asegurar – assure, claim to
aspirar a aspire to
asustarse de be terrified at
atreverse a dare to
autorizar a authorize to
aventurarse a venture to
avergonzarse de be ashamed of
ayudar a aid, help to

bastar a *or* **para** be enough, suffice to; — **con** be enough

cansar(se) de tire, make (grow) weary of
celebrar – be glad to
cesar de cease to
comenzar a begin, commence to; — **por** begin by
complacerse en take pleasure in
comprometer(se) a engage (oneself), agree to
condenar a condemn to
condescender a *or* **en** condescend to
conducir a lead, conduct to
confesar – confess
confiar en trust, hope to
conformarse a conform, agree to
consagrar(se) a devote (oneself) to
conseguir – succeed in
consentir en consent to
consistir en consist in
conspirar a conspire to
consumirse en be consumed in
contar con count on
contentarse con content oneself with; — **de** be satisfied to
contribuir a contribute to
convenir(se) – **en** *or* **a** agree to
convidar a invite to
correr a run to
creer – believe, think

dar a give to; —**se a** give oneself up to
deber – should, ought to; — **de** ought to (*supposition*)
decidir – *or* —**se a** decide, determine to
declarar – declare
dedicar(se) a dedicate (oneself) to
dejar – let, allow, permit to; — **de** leave off, cease to
deleitarse en take delight in
desafiar a challenge to
descender a descend to
descuidarse de neglect to
desdeñar(se) – *or* **de** disdain to
desear – desire to
desesperar(se) de despair of
desistir de desist from
destinar a destine to
detenerse a stop to
determinar a *or* —**se a** determine to
dignarse – *or* **de** deign to
disculpar(se) de excuse oneself for
dispensar de excuse from

disponer(se) a *or* **para** get ready, prepare to
disuadir de dissuade from
divertirse en, con *or ger.* amuse oneself by *or* with
dudar – doubt; — **en** hesitate to

echar(se) a begin to
elegir – choose to
empeñarse en insist on
empezar a begin to
encargarse de undertake to
enfurecerse de be infuriated by
enseñar a teach to
entrar a enter on, begin to
entregarse a give oneself up to
entretener(se) con, en *or ger.* entertain oneself by *or* with
enviar a send to
equivocarse en be mistaken in
escuchar – listen to
esforzar(se) a, en *or* **por** attempt, endeavor to
esmerarse en take pains in
esperar – hope to
estar para be about to; — **por** be inclined to
estimular a stimulate to
evitar – avoid
excitar a excite to
excusar(se) de excuse (oneself) from
exhortar a exhort to
exponer(se) a expose (oneself) to

fastidiar(se) con *or* **de** weary, be weary of
fatigar(se) de tire, be tired of; — **por** tire one(self) by trying to
felicitar(se) de congratulate (oneself) on
fijarse en pay attention to
fingir – pretend to
forzar a force to

gozar(se) de enjoy; —**(se) con, en** *or ger.* take pleasure in
guardarse de guard against

haber de have to
habituar(se) a accustom (oneself) to
hacer – make, have; — **por** try to
hartarse de be sated with
humillar(se) a humiliate (oneself) to

imaginarse – imagine
impedir – prevent, hinder
impeler a impel to
incitar a *or* **para** incite to
inclinar a induce to; —**se a** be inclined to
incomodarse de be annoyed at; — **por** put oneself out to
indignarse de *or* **por** be indignant at
inducir a induce to
insistir en insist on
inspirar a inspire to
intentar – try, attempt
invitar a invite to
ir a go to

jactarse de boast of
jurar de swear to
justificar(se) de justify (oneself) for

librar de free from
limitar(se) a limit (oneself) to
lograr – succeed in
luchar por struggle to

llegar a come to, succeed in

mandar – command, have; — **a** send to
matarse a kill oneself by; — **por** try hard to
meditar en meditate upon
merecer – deserve to
meterse a undertake to
mezclarse en take part in
mirar – look at, watch
morirse por be dying to

necesitar – *or* **de** need to
negar – deny; —**se a** decline, refuse to

obligar(se) a oblige (oneself) to
obstinarse en persist in
ocupar(se) en busy (oneself) with
odiar – hate to
ofrecer(se) – offer, promise to; —**(se) a** offer to
oír – hear
olvidar de forget to; —**se** – *or* **de** forget to
oponerse a be opposed to
ordenar – order to

pararse a stop to
parecer – seem to
particularizarse en specialize in
pasar a proceed, pass to
pensar – intend to; — **en** think of
permitir – permit to
perseverar en persevere in
persistir en persist in
persuadir(se) a persuade (oneself) to
poder – can, may, be able to
poner a put to; —**se a** begin to
preciarse de boast of
preferir – prefer to
preparar(se) a prepare, make ready to
presumir – presume to
pretender – claim, try to
principiar con *or* **por** begin by
privar(se) de deprive be deprived of
probar a try to
proceder a proceed to
procurar – try to
prohibir – forbid
prometer – promise to
proponer – propose, purpose to
provocar a provoke to
pugnar por strive, struggle to

quedar(se) a remain to; — **en** agree to
quejarse de complain of
querer – wish to

rabiar por be crazy to
recelar(se) de fear
recomendar – recommend to
reconocer – acknowledge, confess to
recordar – remember
recrear(se) en *or ger.* divert (oneself) by
reducir(se) a bring (oneself) to
rehusar(se) – *or* **a** refuse to
renunciar a renounce
resignarse a resign oneself, submit to
resistirse a resist
resolver – *or* — **se a** resolve, decide to
reventar por be bursting to

saber – know how, be able to, can
salir a go (*or* come) out to
sentarse a sit down to
sentir – regret, be sorry to
ser de be to
servirse – please, be so kind as to

sobresalir en excel in
soler – be wont, used to
soltar a start to
someter(se) a submit (oneself) to
soñar con dream of
sospechar de suspect of
sostener – maintain, affirm
subir a go up to
sugerir – suggest

tardar en delay, be long in
temer – fear to
terminar en end by
tornar a return to; to . . . again
tratar de try to

urgir a urge to

vacilar en hesitate to
valerse de avail oneself of
venir a come to; — **de** come from, have just
ver – see
volar a fly to
volver a return to; . . . again

VOCABULARY

SPANISH–ENGLISH

A

a to, at, on; from; *also used as sign of the personal accusative;* — **los pocos días de estar allí** a few days after his (her, *etc.*) arrival
abandonar to abandon, leave
abandono neglect, slovenliness
abanico fan
abierto *p.p. of* **abrir**
abogadillo (*fr.* **abogado**) little lawyer, shyster
aborrecer to abhor
abrazar to embrace
abrigar to wrap up, dress warmly
abrigo shelter, wrap, overcoat
abril *m.* April
abrir to open
abuelo, –a grandfather, grandmother; *m. pl.* grandparents
abur good-bye
aburrir to weary, bore; —**se** be bored
acá hither, here; **por —,** here
acabar to end, finish; — **de** have just, get through, finish
accidente *m.* accident
acción *f.* deed, action, share (*of stock*)
aceite *m.* oil
aceitera oil cruet
aceptar to accept
acera sidewalk
acerca de about
acercarse a to approach, go near
acero steel
aclarar to light up, brighten
acometer to attack
acomodador *m.* usher
acompañar to accompany, go with, sympathize with
aconsejar to advise
acontecer to happen
acontecimiento happening, event, occurrence
acordar to remind; —**se de** remember
acostar to lay down, put to bed; —**se** lie down, go to bed
activo, –a active
acudir (**a**) to go (to), have recourse (to)
acusar to accuse, acknowledge
Adela Adele
adelantar to advance, go forward, be fast (*as a watch*)
además besides, moreover; — **de** besides
adiós good-bye
admirar to admire
adónde where, whither
adular to adulate, flatter
advertir to observe, warn
afectísimo, –a most affectionate
aficionado, –a (**a**) fond (of)
afirmativo, –a affirmative
afmo = **afectísimo**
agarrar to seize, grasp
agente *m.* agent
agitado, –a agitated, excited
agosto August
agradable pleasant

agradar to please
agradecer to thank, be grateful for
agravar to make worse (*as in health*); —**se** grow worse
agraviar to wrong
agua water
aguardar to wait for, await
aguardiente *m.* distilled liquor *such as* brandy, whiskey, rum
ah ah
ahí there
ahinco diligence; **con mucho —**, hard
ahora now; **— mismo** this very moment
ahorita (*fr.* **ahora**) very soon, in a minute
ahorrar to spare, save
ajá aha!
al to the; **— salir** on going out
alabar to praise
alambre *m.* wire
alboroto excitement, confusion
aldea village
alegar to allege
alegrarse (de) to be glad (to)
alegre happy, joyous, merry
Alejandro Alexander
alejarse to depart
alemán, –ana German
Alemania Germany
alfiler *m.* pin
Alfonso Alphonsus
Alfredo Alfred
algo something, anything; somewhat
alguien some one, somebody; any one, anybody
algún: *cf.* **alguno**
alguno, –a some, any; *pl.* some, certain, a few; **no . . . —**, not . . . any, no . . . whatsoever; **ni . . . —**, nor . . . any; **sin . . . —**, without any . . . whatsoever
alma soul
almorzar to have lunch(eon)
alojarse to lodge
alquilar to rent, hire
alto, –a high, tall; loud; **piso — *or* los altos** second floor
altura height
alumno, –a pupil, student
allá there, thither
allí there
amable kind, lovable
amar to love, like
amargura bitterness
amarillo, –a yellow
ambición *f.* ambition
ambiente *m.* atmosphere
ambos, –as both
América America; **— del Norte** North America
americano, –a American
amigo, –a friend
amigote (*fr.* **amigo**) old friend, chum
amiguito, –a *m. and f.* (*fr.* **amigo**) little friend
amistad *f.* friendship
amontonarse to pile up
amueblar to furnish
Ana Anna
ancho, –a broad, wide; breadth, width
anchura breadth, width
anciano, –a aged; old man, old woman
andar to go, walk, run (*as a watch*)
andén *m.* platform
animación *f.* animation, stir, excitement
animal *m.* animal; brute, fool
anoche last night
anochecer to become night; arrive (at) *or* be (in) at night; **anochece** night is coming on
ansiar to be anxious, long (for)
anteayer the day before yesterday, two days ago
anterior previous, former, before
antes before, beforehand; **— (de)**

que before; **cuanto —**, as soon as possible; **— de ayer** the day before yesterday
anticipación *f.* anticipation; **con —**, in advance
antiguo, –a old, ancient, former
Antonio Anthony
anunciar to announce
año year; **— bisiesto** leap year; **tener . . . —s** to be . . . years old
apagar to put out (*a fire or light*)
aparador *m.* sideboard
aparecer to appear
apariencia appearance
apearse to alight
apetito appetite
aplicado, —a diligent
aplicar to apply
aposento room, apartment
apreciable estimable, kind
apreciar to appreciate, esteem
aprender (**a**) to learn (to)
aprisa fast, quickly
aprobar to approve, carry (*a motion*)
apuntar to note down
apurado, –a financially distressed, "strapped"
apuro distress, financial distress, want
aquel, –ella *adj.* that, the former
aquél, aquélla, aquello that one, that, the one, the former
aquí here; **por —**, along here, this way
arancelario, –a relating to the tariff
arañazo (*fr.* **araña** spider) deep scratch, stroke of the claw
árbol *m.* tree
Argentina Argentine
argentino, –a Argentine
argüir to argue; **arguyamos** *pres. subj.* 1*st pl.*
argumento argument
aritmética arithmetic
armaduras *f. pl.* armor
armería armory
arqueólogo archaeologist
arquitecto architect
arrebatar to snatch away
arreglar to arrange, regulate, see to
arrepentirse to repent
arrojarse (**sobre**) to throw oneself (on)
arte *m. and f.* art
artículo article
artista *m. and f.* artist
Arturo Arthur
ascensor *m.* elevator, lift
asegurar to affirm, assure
asemejarse a to resemble
asesinar to assassinate
así as, so, thus; **— como** as well as
asiento seat
asignar to assign
Asiria Assyria
asistir (**a**) to be present (at), attend
asno, –a *m. and f.* ass, donkey
asunto matter, affair, business
asustar to frighten; **—se** be frightened
atención *f.* attention
atento, –a polite
atrasar to retard, be slow (*as a watch*)
atrevimiento daring
atribuir to attribute, ascribe
aumentativo augmentative
aunque although, even if
ausente absent, away, out
automóvil *m.* automobile, motor car
autor, –ora *m. and f.* author
avanzar to advance
avariento, –a *m. and f.* miser
averiguar to ascertain; **averigüé** *pret. indic.* 1*st sing.*
avisar to inform, advise, give notice
ay alas

ayer yesterday; **ante—, antes de —,** day before yesterday
ayuda aid
ayudar to aid
azúcar *m.* sugar
azucarero sugar bowl
azul blue

B

bachillerato (*studies for the*) bachelor's degree
bajar to go down, descend; take down
bajo, –a low, lower; **piso —, los —s** ground floor; *prep.* under
bala ball, bullet
banco bench, bank
bandera flag, banner
baño bath; **cuarto de —,** bathroom
barato, –a cheap
barba beard
barra bar
barril *m.* barrel
basebal *or* **besbol** *m.* baseball
bastante enough, sufficient, sufficiently, quite, rather
bastar to be enough
bastón *m.* stick, cane
bastonazo blow of a stick
bautismo baptism
bazar *m.* bazaar, (*large*) shop *or* store
beber to drink
bebida drink
bellísimo, –a most *or* very beautiful
bello, –a beautiful
bendito, –a blessed
beneficiar to cultivate, work
benevolencia benevolence, kindness
besar to kiss
besbol *m.* baseball
bestia beast
Biblia Bible
biblioteca library
bibliotecario, –a *m. and f.* librarian
bicicleta bicycle
bien well, comfortable; **está —,** he (she) is well, it is well, (it is) all right; **estoy — de salud** I am in good health; **más — que** rather than
billete *m.* bill, bank note, ticket
blanco, –a white; **lo —,** the white
bobo, –a *m. and f.* fool
boca mouth
bola marble
bolita (*fr.* **bola**) marble
bondad *f.* goodness, kindness
bonito, –a pretty
borrar to erase
botar to throw away
botones *m. pl.* "buttons," bell boy
brasas *f. pl.* glowing coals; **quien huye del fuego, da en las —,** out of the frying pan into the fire
Brasil: el —, Brazil
brazo arm
brillante brilliant
brindar to drink a toast to, offer
Bruto Brutus
buen *cf.* **bueno**
bueno, –a good, well (*referring to health*)
bulto swelling, bump
bullir to boil, seethe
buque *m.* vessel, boat
burlarse (de) to make fun, make sport (of)
burlón, –ona waggish, sportive, fond of fun
buscar to seek, look for
buzón *m.* letter box

C

caballerito (*fr.* **caballero**) young gentleman
caballero gentleman, sir
caballo horse

cabecera head of bed, pillow
caber to be contained (in)
cabeza head
cabo end; **llevar a —,** to carry out
cabritilla kid
cada *adj.* each, every; **— uno, –a** *pron.* each, each one
caer to fall, suit; **— con** match; **—se** fall down
café *m.* coffee
caja box
cajero cashier
calentar to heat
caliente hot, warm
calificación *f.* qualification, grade
California California
calor *m.* heat, warmth; **tener —,** to be warm (*as a person*); **hacer —,** be warm (*as the weather*)
calumniar to calumniate
callandito (*fr.* **callando**) very quietly
callando silently, secretly
callar to keep a thing secret; **—se** hush, be silent
calle *f.* street
cama bed
camaleón *m.* chameleon
cambiar to change, exchange
cambio change
caminar to take one's way, journey along, walk
camino road, way; **— de** on the way to
camisa shirt
campesino, –a *m. and f.* peasant, countryman
campo field, country; **casa de —,** country house
Campoamor *Spanish poet*
Canadá: el —, Canada
canal *m.* canal
cancha (*athletic*) field
cansadito (*fr.* **cansado**) rather tired
cansado, –a tired, (*with* **ser**) tiresome
cansar to tire, fatigue
cantar to sing
caoba mahogany
capaz capable, able
capital *m.* capital; *f.* capital (*city*)
capitán *m.* captain
capítulo chapter
carbón *m.* coal
cardinal cardinal
carecer de to be without, lack
carga burden
cargadito, –a (*fr.* **cargado**) slightly seasoned
cargar to load, charge, season
Carlitos Charlie
Carlos Charles
caro, –a dear
Carolina Caroline
carrera race, run, running; course of (*professional*) study
carro wagon, car
carta letter
cartero postman, letter carrier
casa house; **en —,** at home; **a —,** home; **a (en) — del señor García** to (at) Mr. García's (*house*)
casar to marry; **—se (con)** marry, be married (to)
casi almost
caso case; **en — que** in case; **hacer — (de)** to heed, give attention (to), mind
castellano, –a Castilian; **el —,** Spanish (*language*)
castigar to punish
castigo punishment
catedral *f.* cathedral
catedrático university professor
catorce fourteen
causa cause, lawsuit; **a — de** on account of
cautiverio captivity
cegar to blind
célebre celebrated
cenar to have supper, sup

centavito (*fr.* **centavo**) only a cent, mite
centavo, –a hundredth
centavo centavo, cent
centésimo, –a hundredth
céntimo centime (100 —**s**=**peseta**)
central central
centro center
cerca (**de**) near, near by
ceremonia ceremony
cerquita (**de**) quite near
cerrar to shut, close
certeza certainty; **con** —, definitely, positively
certificar to certify, register
Cervantes Cervantes
cerveza beer
César Caesar
cesta basket
ciego, –a blind; — **de cólera** blind with anger
cielo heaven, sky
ciencia science
ciento, cien (one) hundred
cierto, –a certain, a certain, authentic; **es** —, it is true
cinco five
cincuenta fifty
cine *m.* cinematograph, moving-picture show (house)
cita quotation
citar to cite, quote
ciudad *f.* city
ciudadano, –a *m. and f.* citizen
claramente clearly
clase *f.* class, kind, sort
cliente *m. and f.* patient
clima *m.* climate
coalición *f.* coalition
cobarde *m. and f.* coward
cobertizo shed
cobrar to collect, get money, receive payment, charge (=*ask a price*)
cobre *m.* copper
cocina kitchen, cooking
codo elbow
cofre *m.* box, trunk; **hacer un** — (**a**) to pack a trunk (for)
coger to catch, gather, pick
colección *f.* collection
colegio academy, (*private*) school
cólera anger
colmado, –a filled (to overflowing)
Colón Columbus
color *m.* color
collar *m.* necklace
comedor *m.* dining room
comer to eat, dine; **dar de** —, give something to eat
cometer to commit, make (*a mistake*)
comida dinner
comisión *f.* committee, commission
como as, like
cómo how; **¿a** — **?** at what price?
cómodo, –a comfortable
compañero, –a *m. and f.* companion, playmate; — **de colegio** schoolmate
compañía company
compás *m.*: **a** —, in unison, all together
compatriota *m. and f.* compatriot
complementario, –a complementary
completamente completely, entirely, wholly
completo, –a complete
cómplice *m. and f.* accomplice
comportamiento deportment, conduct
compra purchase
comprar to buy
comprender to understand, include
común common; **por lo** —, commonly, usually
con with, toward; **para** —, toward; — **tal que** provided that
concebir to conceive
conceder to grant

concepto conception, sense; **en mi —**, to my mind
conciudadano, –a *m. and f.* fellow citizen
concurrente *m. and f.* person present, bystander
conde *m.* count
condición *f.* condition
conducir to conduct, lead, guide
conducta behavior, conduct
confusión *f.* confusion
congoja (feeling of) anguish, dismay
conjugación *f.* conjugation
conmigo with me
conocer to know, be acquainted with
conocimientos *m. pl.* attainments
conquistador *m.* conqueror
conquistar to conquer
conseguir to obtain, succeed in
consejero counselor
consejo counsel, advice
consentir (en) to consent (to)
conservar to preserve, keep
considerar to consider
consigo with himself, herself, *etc.*
consiguiente *m.* consequence; **por —**, consequently
consolar to console
constante constant
constar (de) to consist (of)
constituir to constitute
construir to construct, build
consultar to consult
contador *m.* bookkeeper, clerk
contar to count, tell, relate
contendiente *m. and f.* contestant, opponent
contener to contain
contestación *f.* answer
contestar to answer
contigo with you, with thee
continuar to continue
contra against; **5 — 8**, 5 to 8
contrario, –a contrary
contrastar to contrast
contribución *f.* tax
convencido, –a convinced
conveniencia convenience
convenir (en) to agree (to)
conversación *f.* conversation
conversar to converse
convertir to convert, change
convidar to invite
copiar to copy
copo flake
corbata cravat, tie
cordialmente cordially
correctamente correctly
correcto, –a correct; **es —**, it is correct (*something that can not be changed*); **esa frase no está —a** that sentence is not correct
corregir to correct
correo mail, post office
correr to run
corresponder to belong, concern
corrida race, coursing match; **— de toros** bull fight
corriente present (month), current
cortar to cut
corte *f.* court, capital
cortés polite, courteous
cortésmente courteously
corto, –a short
cosa thing, affair, matter
cosecha harvest
coser to sew
cosita (*fr.* **cosa**) little thing, trifle
costar to cost
costoso, –a costly, expensive
costumbre *f.* custom, manner
coz *f.* kick
creer to believe, think; **creyendo** *pres. part.*
criada servant, maid
criado servant
crisis *f.* crisis
cristal *m.* pane
cristiano, –a *m. and f.* Christian

Cristo Christ
Cristóbal Christopher
criticón, –ona critical, hard to please
cruz *f.* cross
cuaderno notebook
cuadra city block
cuadro picture
cual which; **el (la) cual** who, which, who(m)
cuál *interrog. adj. and pron.* which, what
cualquiera any (one)
cuando when; **de vez en —,** from time to time
cuándo *interrog.* when
cuanto, –a how much, as much, all the, all that; **todo —,** all that; **en —,** as soon as; **— antes** as soon as possible; **— . . . tanto** the . . . the; **en —,** as soon as; **—os, —as** *pl.* how many, as many, all the; **unos —s** some, a few
cuánto, –a *interrog. and exclam.* how much; *pl.* how many; **¿ — tiempo?** how long? **¿ —s años tienes?** how old are you?
cuarenta forty
cuarto quarter; room; **— de dormir** bedroom; **— de baño** bathroom
cuarto, –a fourth
cuatro four
cuatrocientos, –as four hundred
Cuba Cuba
cubano, –a Cuban
cubierto cover
cuchara spoon; **— para sopa** soup spoon
cucharita (*fr.* **cuchara**) teaspoon
cuchillo knife
cuello collar
cuenta account, bill
cuento tale, story
cuidado care; **tener —,** to be careful; **perder —,** not to worry; **¡ cuidado!** look out! **¡ ter —!** look out! **no tengas —,** don't worry
cuidadosamente carefully
cuidar to care for, look after
culpa fault, blame
cumpleaños *m.* anniversary of birthday
cumplir to fulfil, complete
cuñado, –a *m. and f.* brother-in-law, sister-in-law
cura *m.* parish priest, Father
curar to treat, cure
curioso, –a curious
curso course, term
cuyo, –a whose, of which

Ch

charlar to chat, talk
charol *m.* patent leather
chico, –a little, young; boy, girl, lad, lass
chichón *m.* bump, swelling
Chile *m.* Chile
chileno, –a Chilian
chino, –a Chinese
chiquillo, –a (*fr.* **chico**) little fellow, tot
chisme(s) *m.* (*pl.*) tittle-tattle, gossip
chiste *m.* witty saying, jest, joke
chocar to collide
chocolate *m.* chocolate
choque *m.* collision

D

D. (= **don**) Mr.
dar to give, face, hit, strike (*of a clock*); **— en** strike against, fall upon; **— a** look out (up)on; **se dió** (he) got, caught
de of, from, since, with, in; than; **— sastre** as a tailor
dé *pres. subj.* 1*st and* 3*d sing. of* **dar**

debajo de under, beneath
deber to be (morally) obliged to, have to, owe; **debe** is to, ought, should; **debiera** ought, should; **se debe** it is due
deber *m.* duty, task
debido, –a due
débil weak
decidir, —se (a) to decide (to)
décimo, –a tenth
decir to say, tell
decisión *f.* decision
declarar to make a declaration, depose upon oath
defecto fault, defect
defender to defend
dejar to leave, let; — **de** cease to, leave off; **no — de** not to fail to, not to omit; **déjate de chistes** quit joking
del of the, from the; — **cual** of whom, of which
delante de before
delatar to announce, report
deleitar to delight
delincamos *pres. subj.* 1*st pl. of* **delinquir**
delinquir to be delinquent, transgress
demás other, rest
demasiado, –a *adj.* too much (many); *adv.* too, too much
denominador *m.* denominator
dentro de inside of, within
dependiente *m.* clerk
derecho, –a right; straight
derretir to melt
derrotar to rout
desafiar to challenge
desagradable disagreeable
desaparecer to disappear
desaparecimiento disappearance
desayunarse to breakfast
desayuno breakfast
desbocado, –a wildly, running away
descansar to rest
descanso rest
descender to descend, be descended
descomunal extraordinary, unusual
describir to describe
descubrir to discover
descuidillo (*fr.* **descuido**) slight neglect
desde from, since; — **. . . hasta** from . . . to; — **que** since
desear to desire, wish
desesperado, –a desperate
desgracia misfortune, accident
desgraciado, –a unfortunate, wretched
designio design, purpose
desmejorar to grow worse, get bad (*of health, etc.*)
despacio slow
despacho office; — **de billetes** ticket office
despedirse to take leave
despensa pantry
despertar (**se**) to awake, wake up
después afterward; — **de** after; — **que** after
destino destination
destruir to destroy
detalle *m.* detail
detrás de behind; **por —,** from behind
deuda debt
devolver to return, give back
di *imper. sing. of* **decir,** *and pret.* 1*st sing. of* **dar**
día *m.* day; **de —,** by day; **ocho —s** a week; **quince —s** a fortnight; **—s** saint's day; **dar los buenos —s** to bid good-day; **a los pocos —s** after a few days
diamante *m.* diamond
dibujo drawing
diccionario dictionary
diciembre *m.* December

dicho, –a (the) said
diente *m.* tooth
diez ten
diferencia difference
diferente different
diferir to defer, differ
difícil difficult
difunto, –a deceased
digno, –a worth, worthy
digo *pres. indic.* 1*st sing. of* **decir**
dijeron *pret. indic.* 3*d pl. of* **decir**
dijo *pret. indic.* 3*d sing. of* **decir**
diminutivo diminutive
dinero money
Dios *m.* God
dirección *f.* direction; address
directamente directly
director *m.* director, superintendent
dirigir to direct; **—se** make one's way, address, turn, direct oneself
discípulo, –a *m. and f.* pupil, scholar
díscolo, –a peevish
discurso discourse, speech
disgustar to displease; **—se** be displeased
disminuir to diminish
disparar to fire (*a gun, etc.*)
dispensar to excuse
disponerse to make ready
disputa dispute
disputar to dispute
distancia distance
distinción *f.* distinction
distingamos *pres. subj.* 1*st pl. of* **distinguir**
distinguir to distinguish
distraído, –a heedless, absent-minded
distribuir to distribute
diversión *f.* diversion, amusement, sport
dividir to divide
divino, –a divine
división *f.* division
doble double
doce twelve
docena dozen
dólar *m.* dollar
doler to ache
dolor *m.* pain, ache, grief; **— de cabeza** headache
domesticar to tame
domingo Sunday
dominio dominion, domain, power
don, doña *m. and f.* Mr., Mrs. *or* Miss; **Don Quijote** Don Quixote
donde where, in which; **en —**, where, in which; **de —**, whence
dónde *interrog.* where
dondequiera wherever
Dn = don
Dña = doña
dormir to sleep; **—se** fall asleep
dormitorio bedroom
dos two; **los (las) —**, both
doscientos, –as two hundred
dramático, –a dramatic
duda doubt
dudar to doubt
dueño master, owner
dulce sweet; **los —s** sweets, candies
duque *m.* duke
durante during
durar to endure, last
duro dollar
duro, –a hard, severe

E

e and
¡ea! well! come now!
echar to throw, cast, pour (*as water*); **— (a)** start (to), begin; **— al suelo** throw to the ground, knock down; **—se** throw oneself down, lie down
edad *f.* age; **— media** middle ages
edición *f.* edition
edificio building
educación *f.* education

educar to educate, bring up
efecto effect; **en —**, in fact
egoísta egoistic, conceited
Eiffel Eiffel; **la torre —**, the Eiffel tower
ejemplar *m.* copy
ejemplo example
ejercicio exercise
ejército army
el (**la, lo, los, las**) the; that, the one, those; **— que** who, whom, he who, *etc.*
él he; him, it
eléctrico, –a electric
elefante, –a *m. and f.* elephant
elegantemente elegantly
elemental elementary
Elisa Eliza
ella she; her, it
ello it
ellos, ellas they; them
embargo: sin —, however
embellecer to embellish, set off
Emilia Emily
emitir to emit, utter, give vent to
emperador *m.* emperor
empezar to begin
empleado, –a *m. and f.* employee
emplear to employ, use
emprender to undertake
empresa enterprise, undertaking
en in, into, on
enamorado, –a in love
encabezamiento heading
encantar to delight
encarnado, –a flesh-colored, (bright) red
encender to light, kindle
encontrar to meet, find; **—se con** meet
encuentro encounter, meeting
enemigo, –a *m. and f.* enemy; *adj.* hostile
enero January
enfadar to vex, anger; **—se** become angry
énfasis *m. and f.* emphasis
enfermedad *f.* illness, sickness
enfermo, –a ill, sick
engañar to deceive; **—se** be mistaken, be deceived
enjugar to dry, wipe
enojarse to become (get) angry
Enrique Henry
ensalada salad
enseñar to teach, show
entender to understand; **— de** understand, be skilled in
enterar to inform
entero, –a entire, whole, firm
entonces then, at that time
entrada entrance
entrar (**en** *or* **a**) to enter, go into; **hacer —**, show in, admit
entre between, among
entregar to deliver, hand over
entristecer to sadden
enviar to send
equivocarse to be mistaken
era *imp. ind.* 1*st and* 3*d sing. of* **ser**
errar to err
erróneo, –a erroneous
error *m.* error, mistake
es *pres. ind.* 3*d sing. of* **ser**
escamado, –a wary, on one's guard
escapar to escape
escaparate *m.* shop window
escena scene
esclavo, –a *m. and f.* slave
Escorial *m.* Escurial (*town and palace*)
escribir to write
escrito *past part. of* **escribir**
escritorio desk
escritura writing
escuchar to listen
escuela school; **en la —**, at school
escultor *m.* sculptor
Esdras Esdras
ese (**esa, esos, esas**) that (those); **ése,** *etc.*, that one, *etc.*; **eso**

that (which you say *or* know); **por eso** on that account
esencialmente essentially
espantar to frighten
España Spain
español, –ola Spanish
espejo mirror
espejuelos spectacles
esperar to hope, wait (for)
espléndido, –a splendid, fine
esposo, –a *m. and f.* husband, wife
esquina corner
establecerse to establish oneself, settle
estación *f.* station, season
estado state
Estados Unidos *m. pl.* United States
estad(o)unidense of the United States
estar to be, be in, be here; **— para** be about to
estatua statue
este (esta, estos, estas) *adj.* this (these), the latter
éste (ésta, esto, éstos, éstas) this, this one (these), the latter; **ésta** *f.* this place (city, town)
estimación *f.* esteem
esto this (that I say)
estrecho, –a narrow
estudiante *m. and f.* student
estudiar to study
estudio study
evitar to avoid
exacto, –a exact
excepción *f.* exception
excepto except
exclamar to exclaim
éxito outcome, result, issue, success
explicar to explain
exploración *f.* exploration
extenso, –a extensive, long
extranjero, –a foreign; **por el —,** abroad
extrañar to surprise; **—se** be surprised
extraviarse to go astray, get lost

F

fábrica factory
fácil easy
facilidad *f.* ease, facility
facilitar to facilitate; oblige with
fachada façade, front
falso, –a false
falta fault, mistake; defect, want, lack; **hacer —,** to be needed; **nos hacía —,** we needed
faltar to be lacking
familia family
famoso, –a famous
fastidiar to bother, annoy
fatigado, –a fatigued, tired
favor *m.* favor; **hacer el —,** to do the favor
favorable favorable
favorecer to favor
febrero February
fecha date
fechar to date
Federico Frederick
felicidad *f.* happiness
felicitar to congratulate
Felipe Philip
feliz happy
feo, –a ugly, homely
ferozmente fiercely
ferrocarril *m.* railway
festín *m.* banquet, feast
fiebre *f.* fever
fiel faithful
fiesta feast, festival, festivity
figurar to figure; **—se** fancy, imagine
fijamente fixedly
fijarse en to notice, look at
filosofía philosophy
fin *m.* end; **por —,** finally, at last; **al —,** at last; **a —es de** about the end of

finalmente finally
fino, –a courteous, refined, fine, elegant
firme firm
flor *f.* flower
florero vase (*for flowers*)
fonda inn, restaurant
fondo bottom, depth; **a —,** thoroughly, perfectly; **irse a —,** to sink
forma form, shape
formal serious, well trained
formar to form
fortuna fortune
fotografía photograph
francés, –esa French; Frenchman, Frenchwoman
Francia France
franco, –a frank
franqueza frankness
frase *f.* phrase, sentence
frente *f.* front, forehead; **— a —,** face to face
fresco, –a fresh, cool
frío cold; **tengo —,** I am cold; **hace —,** it is cold
frío, –a *adj.* cold
fruta(s) fruit
fuego fire; **quien huye del —, da en las brasas** out of the frying pan into the fire
fuente *f.* fountain, spring
fuera *impf. subj.* 1*st or* 3*d sing. of* **ser** to be *and of* **ir** to go
fuera de apart from, outside of, out of
fuercita *dimin. of* **fuerza**
fuerte strong, mighty, powerful; **— resfriado** bad cold
fuerza force, weight
fumar to smoke (*as tobacco*)
función *f.* performance
funcionario official
fundir to melt, fuse
fusil *m.* gun
fusilazo gunshot
fútbol *m.* football
futbolista *m.* player (*of football*)

G

gabinete *m.* cabinet, small room, office, "den"
gamuza chamois
gana inclination, desire; **tener —s de** to have a desire to
ganado live stock
ganar to earn, make (*money*), gain, win
gas *m.* gas
gastar to spend, waste
gatito, –a kitten
gato, –a cat
gemelos *m. pl.* (opera *or* field) glasses
gemir to groan, moan
general *m.* general
generalmente generally
género kind, sort; cloth, stuff
gente *f.* people; **mucha —,** a big crowd
geografía geography
gerundio gerund
giro turn, revolution: draft, order
gloria glory
gobierno government
godo, –a *m. and f.* Goth
golpe blow
Goya *m.* Goya (*Spanish painter*)
gracia name, grace; *pl.* thanks, I thank you
gramática grammar
gran *cf.* **grande**
grande great, big, large, grand
grandecito, –a (*fr.* **grande**) rather large, biggish
grave important, serious
gritar to cry, shriek, shout
grito cry, shout, yell
grupo group
guante *m.* glove
guantería glove shop

guardar to keep, protect; — **cama** stay in bed
guardia guard; *m.* guardsman, guard, policeman
guarismo numeral, cipher, figure
guerra war
guerrero warrior
guía *m. and f.* guide
Guillermo William
guisar to cook
gustar to taste, please; **me gusta** I like
gusto taste, pleasure

H

Habana: la —, Havana
haber to have, be; **hay** there is (are); — **de** have to; **no hay de que** you are welcome; **¿ qué hay?** what is the trouble?
habitación *f.* dwelling, apartment, room
habitante *m. and f.* inhabitant
habla speech
hablador, –ora talkative
hablar to speak, talk
hacendoso, –a active, industrious
hacer to make, do; — **falta** be needed; — **hacer** have made; — **una pregunta** ask a question; — **por** try to; **hace frío** it is cold; **hace una hora y media** an hour and a half ago; **hace tiempo que** it is quite a while since; **¿cuánto tiempo hace?** how long is it? —**se** become, (*of stocks*) stand, be quoted
hacha axe
hacia toward(s)
hacienda estate, plantation
hallar to find
hambre *f.* hunger; **tener —,** to be hungry
hambriento, –a hungry
haragán, –ana lazy
hasta to, up to, until, as far as, even; — **mañana** farewell till tomorrow; — **luego** good-bye for a while; — **que** until
hay *cf.* **haber**
hecho deed
helar(se) to freeze
hembra female
herido wounded man
herido, –a wounded, with a wound
herir to strike, wound
hermanito, –a *dimin. of* **hermano, –a**
hermano, –a brother, sister
hermosísimo, –a very beautiful
hermoso, –a beautiful, handsome, fine
heroico, –a heroic
hervir to boil, bubble
hidalgo (*Mexican coin*) 10 dollars; **doble —,** 20 dollars
hierro iron
hija daughter
hijito, –a *m. and f.* (*fr.* **hijo**) little son, daughter
hijo, –a son, daughter; *m. pl.* sons, children
hirviente boiling, bubbling
hispanoamericano, –a Spanish American
historia history
historiador *m.* historian
hogar *m.* hearth, home
hola hello
holgazán, –ana idler, drone
hombre *m.* man
hombrecillo (*fr.* **hombre**) *m.* little man
hombrón (*fr.* **hombre**) *m.* large (big) man
honra honor
honrado, –a honest, honorable
hora hour; **¿ qué — es?** what time is it?
horno furnace
hospedar to lodge; —**se** take lodgings
hotel *m.* hotel

hoy today; **— mismo** this very day
hubo there was, there were; *cf.* **haber**
huele *pres. indic. 3d sing. of* **oler**
huelga strike (*of workmen*)
huérfano, –a orphaned, orphan
huésped, –a *m. and f.* guest, boarder; **casa de —es** boarding house
huevo egg
huir to flee
humano, –a human

I

ideal ideal
idioma *m.* language
iglesia church
imaginar(se) to imagine
impaciente impatient
impedir to prevent, impede
imperativo imperative
impermeable *m.* waterproof (coat)
importancia importance
importante important
importar to be of importance, concern; **¡ no importa !** no matter !
imposible impossible
impresión *f.* impression
impreso, –a (*fr.* **imprimir**) printed
impuesto, –a imposed
inaugurar to inaugurate, begin
Inca *m.* Inca (*ruler*)
incidente *m.* incident
inclinar to bend, stoop
indagar to investigate
indicar to indicate
indicativo indicative
indio, –a Indian
indispensable indispensable
índole *f.* nature
industrioso, –a industrious
infinitivo infinitive
influir (en) to influence
informar to inform
ingeniatura engineering
ingeniero engineer
Inglaterra England
inglés, –esa English; Englishman, Englishwoman
inmediatamente immediately
inmediato, –a next
inmortal immortal
inmóvil motionless
inscribir to inscribe
inservible out of order, defective
insigne illustrious
insistir to insist
instante *m.* instant; **al —**, instantly
instruir to instruct
insultar to insult
inteligente intelligent
intención *f.* intention
interés *m.* interest
interesante interesting
interesar to interest; **—se (por)** be interested (in)
interior *m.* interior
interrogar to question
intervenir to interfere
íntimo, –a intimate
inválido, –a incapacitated, crippled
invencible invincible
invierno winter
invitar to invite
ir to go, go on, continue; **—se** go off, go away; **¡ vamos !** come, let's go; **¡ vaya !** fine !
ira anger
irritar to provoke, anger
Isabel Isabel, Elizabeth
isla island
Israel Israel
israelita *m. and f.* Israelite
Italia Italy
italiano, –a Italian
izquierdo, –a left

J

jabón *m.* soap
jamás ever, never; **no . . . —**, never

jamón *m.* ham
jardín *m.* (flower) garden
Jícara Jicara; *as a common noun* chocolate cup
Jorge George
José Joseph
joven *m. and f.* (young) man *or* woman, youth
joven young
jovencito, –a (*fr.* **joven**) *m. and f.* young fellow, youth, young girl
Juan John
Juana Jane
Juanito Johnny
juego game
jueves *m.* Thursday
juez *m.* judge
jugador, –ora player
jugar to play
Julián Julian
julio July
Julio Julius
junio June
juntito quite near
junto, –a united, joined together; *pl.* together; — **a** near
justicia justice
justo, –a just, exact
juzgado tribunal, court of justice
juzgar to judge

K

kilómetro kilometer

L

la *f.* the; that, the one, she, her, it; *pl.* the; those, the ones, they
la *pers. pron.* her, it; *pl.* them
labio lip
labrar to till
lado side
ladrar to bark
ladrón, –ona *m. and f.* thief, robber
lago lake
lágrima tear
lámpara lamp
lápiz *m.* pencil
largo, –a long; *noun* length
lástima pity
lastimar to hurt, injure
lavandera laundress
lavar to wash
le him, it, you; to him, her, it, you
lección *f.* lesson
lectura reading
leche *f.* milk
leer to read
lejano, –a distant
lejitos (*fr.* **lejos**) rather far
lejos far
lengua tongue, language
lenguaje *m.* language, speech, diction
leña wood
León *m.* Leon
les to them, to you
levantar to raise; —**se** rise, arise, get up
ley *f.* law
libertad *f.* liberty
libra pound
libre free
librería bookshop
librero bookseller
libro book
limón *m.* lemon
limosna alms
limosnita (*fr.* **limosna**) little alms, trifle for charity's sake
limpiar to clean, cleanse, clean up
limpio, –a clean
lindo, –a pretty
línea line
lingote *m.* ingot
lingüístico, –a linguistic
lirio lily
lista list; — **(de platos)** bill of fare
literatura literature

lo the; it, him, you, so; — **que** that which, what; — **cual** (— **que**) which
locomotora locomotive, engine
lodo mud; **hay** —, it is muddy
longitud *f.* length
los the; them, you; — **que** those who (whom); — **suyos** his men
lotería lottery
Louvre *m.* Louvre (*palace and museum at Paris*)
lucir to show off, display
lucha struggle
luego directly, soon, then, afterwards; — **que** as soon as
lugar *m.* place; **tener** —, to take place
Luis Lewis, Louis
Luisa Louisa
luna moon
lunes *m.* Monday
luz *f.* light

Ll

llamar to call, knock, ring; —**se** be named
llegar to arrive, come
llevar to bear, carry, take, lead; wear; — **a cabo** carry out; —**se** take away
llorar to weep, cry
llover to rain

M

macho male
madre *f.* mother
madrecita *dimin. of* **madre**
maduro, –a ripe
maestro, –a (school) master, mistress, teacher
magnífico, –a magnificent, splendid
mal badly, poorly; *noun* evil, harm; *adj. cf.* **malo**
maldad *f.* misdeed, wicked act
malísimo, – a (*fr.* **malo**) very bad
malo, –a bad, ill, sick
mamá *f.* mamma, mother
mandar to command, order, send
mando command
manejar to drive (*an autocar, etc.*)
manera manner, way; **de esta** —, in this way; **de todas** —**s** in any case, anyhow
mano *f.* hand
manteca butter
mantel *m.* tablecloth
mantequilla butter
manuscrito manuscript
manzana apple; city block
mañana morning, tomorrow; **por la** —, in the morning; — **por la** —, tomorrow morning; **pasado** —, day after tomorrow
mapa *m.* map
máquina machine
maquinista *m.* engineer, engine driver
mar *m. or f.* sea
marchar to march, go; —**se** go away
margen *f.* margin, bank
María Mary
mármol *m.* marble
martes *m.* Tuesday
marzo March
mas but
más more, most, plus; **no** — **que** only; — **bien** rather
matar to kill
matemáticas *f. pl.* mathematics
mayo May
mayor larger, largest; elder, older, oldest; main
me me, to me
mecánico, –a mechanical
Media Media
media stocking
mediados *m. pl.:* **a** — **de** about the middle of
medicamento medicine
medicina medicine
médico physician, doctor (*of medicine*)

medio, –a (a) half, middle
mediodía *m.* midday, noon
mejicano, –a Mexican
Méjico *or* **México** Mexico
mejor better, best
mendigo, –a *m. and f.* beggar
menester *m.* necessity, need; **ser —,** to be necessary
menor smaller, smallest; younger, youngest
menos less, least; **a — que** unless
mentir to lie
mentira lie; **es —,** it is not true
menudo: a —, often
mercado market
merecer to merit, deserve
mes *m.* month; **para el fin del —,** for the end of the month
mesa table, desk
mesita little table
metal *m.* metal
meter to put; **—se** plunge
metro meter
mezclar to mix; **—se con** mingle with
mi my
mí me
miedo fear; **tener — de** to be afraid of
mientras while; **— . . . ,** the . . . the
miércoles *m.* Wednesday
Miguel Michael
mil (one) thousand; *noun* *m.* thousand
militar *m.* soldier, officer
milla mile
millón *m.* million
mina mine
mineral *m.* mineral
minuto minute
mío, –a my, mine; **el (la, los, las, lo) mío (–a, –os, –as, –o)** mine
mirar to look (at); **¡ mira !** see here !
misericordia mercy
mismo, –a self, himself, *etc.;* same, very, own; **— que** same as
mitad *f.* half
modo way, mode, manner
mojado, –a wet
molde *m.* mould
molestar to annoy, trouble, disturb
molestia trouble
momento moment
moneda coin, money
monje, –a monk, nun
mono, –a monkey
montañes, –esa *m. and f.* mountaineer
montar to mount, ride; **— a caballo** ride on horseback; **montado en** riding on
morar to dwell, live
morder to bite
morir to die; **—se** die, be dying
mosca fly
mostaza mustard
mostrar to show
mover to move, actuate
mozo, –a youth, lad, lass; waiter, waitress
muchacho, –a boy, girl
muchísimo, –a (*fr.* **mucho**) very much
mucho, –a much, a great deal; *pl.* many; *adv.* much, a great deal, very
mueble *m.* article (piece) of furniture; *pl.* furniture
muela molar tooth
muerte *f.* death
muerto, –a *past part. of* **morir** died, dead, killed
mujer *f.* woman, wife
mujeraza large, coarse woman
mula mule
multiplicar to multiply
multitud *f.* multitude
mundo world; **todo el —,** everybody

Murillo Murillo (*Spanish painter*)
murmullo murmur
muro wall
museo museum
música music
muy very

N

nacer to be born
nacionalidad *f.* nationality
nada nothing, not at all, anything, in any respect; **no . . . —**, nothing
nadador *m.* swimmer
nadie no one, nobody, any one, anybody; **no . . . —**, nobody, not anybody
naranja orange
nariz *f.* nose
naturalmente naturally
neblina fog, mist
necesario, –a necessary
necesitar to need, want
negar to deny; **—se a** refuse
negocio business, affair
negro, –a black
nevar to snow
ni nor, or; **— . . . —**, neither . . . nor; **— . . . tampoco** not . . . either, nor . . . either
Nicolás Nicholas
nietecito, –a (*fr.* **nieto**) little grandson *or* granddaughter
nieto, –a grandson, granddaughter
nieve *f.* snow
ninguno, –a no, none; **no . . . —, –a** not any
niñito (*fr.* **niño**) small (little) child
niño, –a child, (small) boy, girl
no not, no; **— puedo menos de** I can't help; **¿ —?** isn't that so? aren't (didn't) you? *etc.*
noble noble
noche *f.* night; **esta —**, tonight
nombre *m.* name
nono, –a ninth
norte *m.* north
norteamericano, –a (North) American
nos us, ourselves, each other, one another; to us, to ourselves
nosotros, –as we, us
nota mark
noticias *f. pl.* news
novecientos, –as nine hundred
novela novel
noveno, –a ninth
noventa ninety
noviembre *m.* November
novio, –a sweetheart, fiancé(e)
nuestro, –a our, ours; **el (la, lo, los, las) —(–a, –o, –os, –as)** ours
Nueva York New York
nueve nine
nuevo, –a new
numerador *m.* numerator
número number; **gran —**, a large number
nunca never, ever; **no . . . —**, never, not . . . ever

O

o or; **— sea** or, that is
obedecer to obey
objeto object
obligar to oblige, compel
obra work; **— maestra** masterpiece
obrero, –a workman, working woman
obscurecer to grow dark
observar to observe
obstáculo obstacle, obstruction
octavo, –a eighth
octubre *m.* October
ocupación *f.* occupation
ocupado, –a busy, occupied
ocupar to occupy; **—se (de)** occupy oneself (with), take charge (of), concern oneself (with)

ocurrir to occur, happen
ochenta eighty
ocho eight; **las —,** eight o'clock; **— días** a week
ochocientos, –as eight hundred
odiar to hate
oficina office
ofrecer to offer
oído *m.* hearing, (inner) ear
oiga *pres. subj. 1st or 3d sing. of* **oír**
oír to hear, listen
ojalá (que) would that, if only, grant that
ojo eye
oler to smell; **— a** smell of
olvidar(se) to forget; **se me olvidó (hacerlo)** I forgot (to do it)
once eleven; **las — y media** half past eleven o'clock
onza ounce
ópera opera
opinar to opine, be of the opinion
opinión *f.* opinion
oportunidad *f.* opportunity
oportuno, –a opportune
óptimo, –a best, excellent, very good
opuesto, –a opposite, opposed
opulento, –a wealthy
orador *m.* orator
orar to pray
orden *f.* order
ordinal ordinal
oreja ear
oriental oriental
origen *m.* origin
original original
orilla shore
oro gold
os you, to you
osar to dare
otoño autumn, fall
otorgar to grant; **quien calla, otorga** silence gives consent
otro, –a other, another

P

Pablo Paul
padre *m.* father, priest; *pl.* fathers, parents
pagar to pay, pay for
página page
pague *pres. subj. 1st and 3d sing. of* **pagar**
pagué *pret. indic. 1st sing. of* **pagar**
país *m.* country, region, land
palabra word
palabrota (*fr.* **palabra**) bad word, coarse expression
palacio palace
pálido, –a pale
pan *m.* bread
pañuelo handkerchief
papá *m.* papa, father
papel *m.* paper; negotiable paper, security, obligation
paquete *m.* package
para for, to, in order to, by, by the end of; **— el mes** sometime during the month
paradero stopping place, whereabouts
paraguas *m.* umbrella
parar (se) to stop
parecer to appear, seem, seem fit, suit; **—se a** be like, resemble
pared *f.* wall, partition
pariente, –a *m. and f.* relative, relation
parque *m.* park
parte *f.* part; **por todas —s** everywhere; **la mayor — de** most
particular particular, individual
partida match, game
partir to depart, leave; **— de** leave
pasado, –a past, last; **lo —,** the past; **— mañana** day after tomorrow
pasar to pass, pass through, go, go ahead, enter, pass in, pass over; spend (time); **pase usted** (please) come in

pasearse to take a walk *or* ride, go about
paseíto (*fr.* **paseo**) short walk
paseo public promenade; walk, ride; **dar un —**, to take a walk (ride)
pasión *f.* passion
patear to kick
patio courtyard
patria (native) country, fatherland
pausa pause
pausado, –a slow, interrupted, broken
paz *f.* peace
pecado sin
pedir to ask, request, ask for; **— a** ask of
Pedro Peter
pelear to fight
peligro peril, danger
peligroso, –a dangerous
pelo hair
pelota ball
pelotón *m.* platoon
pensar to think, intend, mean (*followed directly by an infinitive*); **— en** think of, recall; **— de** think of, form an opinion of
peor worse, worst
pequeñito, –a (*fr.* **pequeño**) very small, wee, little, tiny
pequeño, –a little, small, slight
pera pear
perder to lose; **— a** ruin
perdón *m.* pardon
perdonar to pardon
perecer to perish
perezoso, –a lazy, idle
perfeccionar to perfect
periódico newspaper, periodical
permanecer to remain
permitir to permit
pero but
perro dog
perseguir to pursue, run after
persiana blind
persona person
personaje *m.* personage
pertenecer to belong
pertenencia holding
Perú: el —, Peru
pesar to weigh
pescado fish
peseta (*fr.* **peso**) peseta, franc (*nearly twenty U.S.A. cents or ten British pence*)
pesito (*fr.* **peso**) little dollar, only a dollar
peso weight; dollar
petróleo petroleum
piano piano
pícaro rascal
pie *m.* foot; **a —**, on foot; **en (de) —**, standing
piececito (*fr.* **pie**) tiny little foot
piedad *f.* pity; piety
pierna leg
pieza piece, room; **— para dormir** bedroom
pillete (*fr.* **pillo**) *m.* low rasca
pillo rogue
pimentero pepper caster *or* shaker
pintar to paint
pintor *m.* painter
pintura painting
Pío Pius
piso story, floor; **segundo —**, second floor (*in small towns*), third floor (*in a large apartment house*); **— alto** second floor; **último —**, top floor
pizarra slate, blackboard
pizarrón *m.* blackboard
plan *m.* plan
planchar to iron
plata silver
platillo saucer
plato plate
plaza square, market
plazuela (*fr.* **plaza**) little square
pluma pen, feather; **— tintero** fountain pen

plural plural
pobre poor
pobrecito, –a (*fr.* **pobre**) poor little (fellow)
poco, –a little, but little; **un —, a** little; **—s, –as** few; **— ha** a short while ago; **— a —,** little by little; **— faltó para que se cayese** he nearly fell
poder to be able, can, may; **— más** have the more power, be the stronger; **no — más** be played out, be able to do no more; **no puedo menos de** I can't help; **puede que** it is possible that
poder *m.* power
poderoso, –a powerful
poema *m.* poem
poesía poetry; **una —,** a poem
poeta *m.* poet
policía police
político, –a political; *noun m.* politician
politiquejo (*fr.* **político**) low politician
poltrona easy chair
polvo dust
pollito (*fr.* **pollo**) little chicken
pollo chicken
poner to put, place, set (*a table*), lay (*eggs*); **—se** put on (*clothing*), become, begin; (*of color*) turn; (*of the sun*) set
popular popular
por for, through, by, along, on account of, per; **— allí** over there; **— la mañana** in the morning; **— qué** why (*interrog.*)
pormenor *m.* detail
porque because
portero doorman
portorriqueño, –a Porto-Rican
portugués, –esa Portuguese
poseer, to possess, own
posible possible
postal postal
ppdo = **próximo pasado**
practicar to practise
prado meadow; **el Prado** *name of a promenade and park in Madrid*
preceder to precede
precisamente precisely, just now
preciso, –a necessary
preferir to prefer
pregunta question
preguntar (**a**) to ask (of)
preguntón, –ona inquisitive
preliminar preliminary
premiar to reward
premio prize
prensa press
preocupar to trouble, give concern
presenciar to witness, be present at
presentar to present; **—se** appear, be present
presente present; **lo —,** the present (time); **al —,** at present
prestar to lend
prevalecer to prevail
primavera spring
primer(o), –a first
primo, –a cousin
principal principal, leading, of importance
principio beginning; **al —,** at first; **a —s de** about the beginning of
prisa hurry; **tener —,** to be in a hurry; **darse —,** be in a hurry, make haste; **de —,** quickly, fast
pro *m. or f.* advantage; **en — de** in favor of
probable probable
probablemente probably
probar to prove, test
problema *m.* problem
prôdigio marvel
producir to produce, bring in
producto product
profesor, –ora professor, teacher

profeta *m.* prophet
profundo, –a profound
progenitor *m.* progenitor
programa *m.* program
prohibir to forbid, prohibit
prójimo neighbor
prometer to promise
pronombre *m.* pronoun
pronto soon, quickly
propina gratuity, tip
propio, –a own, of one's own
proposición *f.* proposition, proposal
propósito purpose, plan, proposition
prosperar to prosper
prosperidad *f.* prosperity
proteger to protect
provechoso, –a advantageous, profitable
proverbio proverb
provincia province
próximo, –a next; **el mes —** pasado last month, ultimo
proyecto plan
prueba proof
público, –a public
pueblecito (*fr.* **pueblo**) little town
pueblo people, town
puente *m.* bridge
puerta door, gate
pues well, why, however; since
puesto situation, position
pugnar (**por**) to fight, struggle (to)
punto point, element; **a — de** on the point of
puñal *m.* dagger
puñalada dagger thrust
pupitre *m.* writing desk
puro, –a pure

Q

que, el (la, las, los, las) —, who, which, that; **lo —**, that which, what
qué *interrog. and exclam.* what (a); how; **— tal** how; **a —**, for what, why
que *conj.* that, for, than, as; **tener —**, to have to, must; **de —**, of the fact that
quebrado fraction
quebrar to break
quedar to remain; **—se** remain, stay; **—se con** keep
quejarse (**de**) to complain (of)
quemar to burn
querer to wish, want, try; **— a** love, like; **— decir** mean, signify
querido, –a dear
queso cheese
quien who, whom, he who, him who; **—es . . . —es** some . . . some
quién *interrog. and exclam.* who, whom; **¡ — supiera!** if one (I) only knew how to!
Quijote Quixote
química chemistry
quince fifteen; **— días** a fortnight, two weeks
quinientos, –as five hundred
quinto, –a fifth
quinzavo fifteenth
quisiera (*fr.* **querer**) I should like (= be glad) to
quitar (**a**) to take (from *or* off)
quizás perhaps

R

Rafael Raphael
raramente rarely
raro, –a strange, odd, queer; rare
raudal *m.* stream, torrent, lot
rayo ray, beam
raza race
razón *f.* reason, right; **tener —**, to be right
real royal, real
real *m. Spanish silver coin worth about five cents; the Mexican* **real** *is worth twelve and a half*

Mexican cents or about six and a quarter U.S.A. cents
realista realistic, practical
rece *pres. subj. 1st or 3d sing. of* **rezar**
recepción *f.* reception
recibir to receive
recibo receipt
recientemente recently
recinto enclosure, field
recitar to recite
recomendar to recommend
recordar to recall, remind
rector *m.* rector
recuerdo recollection; *pl.* compliments, regards
recurrir to have recourse
redondo, –a round
reducir to reduce
referir to relate, utter
reforma reform
refrán *m.* refrain, proverb
regalar to give, present
regalo present, gift
regañar to scold
registro register
regla rule
regresar to go back, return
regreso return
reina queen
reinar to reign, prevail
reír to laugh; —**se** (**de**) laugh (at)
reja iron grill (*of a window*), (*open-work iron*) gate
relación *f.* account
relacionarse (**con**) to be related (to)
religioso, –a religious
reloj *m.* watch, clock
relojería watch making
relucir to shine, glisten, gleam
remangado, –a turned up, snub
remendar to mend, repair
reñir to quarrel
repantigado, –a lying back, lolling
repartición *f.* distribution
repartir to distribute
repasar to recite, repeat
repente: de —, suddenly
representar to represent
república republic
resfriado cold
residencia residence, lodging house, dormitory
resistir to resist
resolver to solve
respetar to respect
responder to respond, answer; — **de** answer for, be responsible for
restablecerse to get well
restablecido, –a recovered, well
restaurant *or* **restaurante** *m.* restaurant
resto rest, remnant
resultado result, outcome
resultar to result
retirarse to retire, retreat
retrasado, –a late
retrato portrait, picture
reunido, –a united, gathered, assembled
reunir to collect
revolver to disturb, disarrange
revólver *m.* revolver
rey *m.* king
reyezuelo (*fr.* **rey**) petty king
rezar to pray
rico, –a rich
rincón *m.* corner
río river
robar to rob, steal
Roberto Robert
rodilla knee
rogar to ask, entreat
rojo, –a red
Roma Rome
romano, –a Roman
romper(**se**) to break
ronco, –a hoarse
ropa clothing, clothes
rosa rose
rosario rosary

roto, –a broken
rubio, –a light-complexioned, blond(e)
ruido noise
ruso, –a Russian

S

S. S. Q. B. S. M. (P.) = **seguro(–a) servidor(–ora) que besa sus manos (pies)** yours truly
sábado Saturday
saber to know, know how (to), be able (to), can; — **a** taste of; **ya se sabe** of course
sacar to take out; — **una fotografía** take a picture
sacerdote *m.* priest
sacrificio sacrifice
sacudir to shake (off)
sala drawing room; — **de clase** classroom
salero saltcellar
salida going out, departure; — **del sol** sunrise
salir to come out, go out, issue, leave
salita (*fr.* **sala**) little room, anteroom
salud *f.* health; **bien de —,** in good health
saludable healthful
saludar to salute
salvar to save
sanar to cure, heal
sano, –a well, healthy
santiamén *m.* jiffy, instant
santo, –a holy, saint
saque *pres. subj.* 1*st and* 3*d sing. of* **sacar**
sastre *m.* tailor
se himself, herself, itself, oneself, yourself, themselves, yourselves; (= **le, les**) to him, to her, to it, to them, to you
secante drying, blotting
secuestrar to abduct, kidnap
sed *f.* thirst; **tener —,** to be thirsty
seda silk
seguida: en —, next, immediately, at once
seguir to follow, succeed, abide by, continue
según *prep.* according to; *conj.* according as, as
segundo, –a second
seguridad *f.* security, safety
seguro, –a secure, sure, firm
seis six
seiscientos, –as six hundred
semáforo semaphore
semana week; **la — que viene** next week
semejante such a
semejanza resemblance
senador *m.* senator
sencillo, –a simple, unmixed, unqualified
sentar to set, seat; fit, suit; **—se** sit down, be seated
sentimiento feeling, grief, sorrow
sentir to feel, regret; **lo siento** I am sorry; **—se** feel
seña sign
señalar to mark, point to
Señor *m.* Lord
señor *m.* sir, gentleman, Mr.; **los señores** the gentlemen, Mr. and Mrs.
señora madam, lady, wife, Mrs.
señorita young lady, Miss
septiembre *m.* September
séptimo, –a seventh
ser to be; **o sea** or
servicio service
servidor, –ora *m. and f.* servant
servilleta napkin
servir to serve; — **de** serve as; **—se de** make use of; **sírvase Vd.** please, be kind enough to
sesenta sixty

setecientos, –as seven hundred
setenta seventy
severo, –a strict, severe
Sevilla Seville
sevillano, –a (native) of Seville
sexto, –a sixth
si if; whether (*in indirect questions*); indeed (*in exclamations*)
sí yes; **yo sí creo que . . .** I certainly believe that . . .
sí himself, herself, itself, yourself, oneself, themselves, yourselves
siempre always, ever, still; **lo de —,** the usual thing
siete seven
siglo century
significar to signify, mean
siguiente following
silencio silence
Silvestre Silvester
silla chair, saddle
sillita (*fr.* **silla**) small chair
sillón *m.* (*fr.* **silla**) arm chair
simpático, –a friendly, agreeable
sin without
singular singular
sino but; **no . . . —,** only
sistema *m.* system
sitio place
sobre above, on, upon; **— todo** above all, especially
sobre *m.* envelope
sobresaliente excellent, surpassing
sobrinito, –a (*fr.* **sobrino**) *m. and f.* little nephew, niece
sobrino, –a *m. and f.* nephew, niece
socorrer to aid, help
socorro succor, help
Sofía Sophia
sol *m.* sun; **hace (hay) —,** the sun is shining
soldado soldier
soldadote (*fr.* **soldado**) *m.* big, rough soldier
solo, –a alone, solitary
sólo *adv.* only, merely
solución *f.* solution
sombrero hat
son: *see* **ser**
sonreír(se) to smile
sonrisa smile
sonrisita (*fr.* **sonrisa**) faint smile
sopa soup
sopero, –a for soup
sordo, –a deaf
sorprender to surprise
sortija ring
Sr. = **señor**
Sra. = **señora**
Srta. = **señorita**
su his, her, its, their, your, one's; **— . . . de Vd.** your
suavidad *f.* suavity, gentleness; *pl.* soft words *or* acts
subir to go up, take up; **—se** mount, climb
subscribir to subscribe; **—se** sign oneself
subjuntivo subjunctive
subordinado, –a subordinate, assistant
subrayar to underscore, underline
suceder to happen, follow (*in order*)
sucesivamente successively
suelo ground
sueño sleep; **tener —,** to be sleepy
sufragio suffrage vote
sufrir to suffer
sujeto subject
suma sum
sumamente exceedingly
superior superior
suplicar to beg, entreat
suponer to suppose
supuesto: por —, of course
sur *m.* south
suyo, –a his, her(s), its, your(s), their(s); **el (la, lo, los, las) —o (–a, –o, –os, –as)** his, hers, its, yours, theirs; **los —s** his men

T

tabaco tobacco
tacón *m.* heel
tal such, such a; **un —**, a certain; **con — que** provided that; **— vez** perhaps; **qué —**, how, (*as a greeting*) how goes it?
talentazo (*fr.* **talento**) great talent
talento talent
taller *m.* workshop
también also, too
tampoco as little, neither, nor . . . either; **ni . . . —**, not . . . either, nor . . . either
tan so, as; **¡ qué flores — bonitas !** what beautiful flowers !
tantico, –a (*fr.* **tanto**): **un —**, a little bit, somewhat
tanto, –a as much, so much; **—s, –as** as many, so many; **— . . . como** as (so) much . . . as; **por lo —**, therefore
tanto *adv.* so much, so
tardar to delay; **no tardará en venir** it will not be long before he comes; **a más —**, at the latest
tarde *f.* evening, afternoon; **por (en) la —**, in the afternoon
tarde late
tarea task
tarjeta card; **— de visita** visiting card
taxímetro taxicab
taza cup
té *m.* tea
te you, thee; to you, to thee
teatro theater
techo roof, ceiling
tejado roof
tela cloth, fabric
telita (*fr.* **tela**) ("cute") little cloth
tema *m.* theme, written exercise
temblar to tremble
temer to fear
temor *m.* fear
templar to temper, soften
temprano early
tenedor *m.* fork
tener to have, hold; **— que** have to
teoría theory
tercer(o), –a third
tercio, –a third
Teresa Theresa
terminar to finish, end
terquedad *f.* stubbornness, obstinacy
tertuliano, –a *m. and f.* guest, person present at a party
tesoro treasure, treasury
texto text
ti you, thee
tiempo time, weather; **¿ cuánto — (hace)?** how long (is it)? **a —**, in time
tienda shop, store
tiene *pres. indic.* 3*d sing. of* **tener**
tiernamente tenderly
tierra earth, land, ground
tinta ink
tinto, –a dark red
tío, –a *m. and f.* uncle, aunt
tipo type, figure, quotation
titulado, –a entitled
tirano tyrant
tocador *m.* dressing table
tocar to touch, play (*a musical instrument*); knock (*on a door*); be one's turn
todavía still, yet, as yet
todito, –a (*fr.* **todo**): **—s los días** every single day
todo, –a all, every; **— el día** all day; **todas las noches** every night; *n. pron.* all, everything; **por —**, in all
tomar to take
Tomás Thomas
tomo tome, volume
tonelada ton

tontería folly; *pl.* nonsense
tonto, –a fool; **hacerse el —,** to play the fool
torno turn; **en — de** around
toro bull; **corrida de —s** bull fight
torre *f.* tower
tortuoso, –a crooked
trabajar to work
trabajo work
traducción *f.* translation
traducir to translate
traer to bring
tragar to swallow
traidor, –ora *m. and f.* traitor; *adj.* treacherous
traje *m.* suit, costume
trajeron *pret. indic. 3d pl. of* **traer**
tranvía *m.* tramway, street car
tratamiento address
tratar to treat, have dealings (with); **— de** try to
trece thirteen
treinta thirty
tremendo, –a tremendous, frightful
tren *m.* train; **en —,** by train
tres three
trescientos, –as three hundred
tribu *f.* tribe
Trinidad *f.* Trinity
triste sad, gloomy, dismal
tronar to thunder; **por lo que pudiere —,** for a rainy day, against contingencies
tropa troop
trueno thunder
tu thy, your
tú thou, you
turista *m. and f.* tourist
tuyo, –a thine, yours; **el —,** *etc.*, thine, yours

U

u or
Ud. (= **usted**), **Uds.** (= **ustedes**) you
último, –a last; **— piso** top floor
único, –a only
uniforme *m.* uniform
uniformemente uniformly
unir to unite
universidad *f.* university
uno, –a one; **—s, –as** some, any, about; **a la una** at one o'clock
usado, –a worn, old (= worn)
usar to use
usted (*pl.* **ustedes**) you
útil useful
uva grape

V

V. (= **usted**) you; **VV.** *pl.* (= **ustedes**) you
vaca cow
vacaciones *f. pl.* vacation
vagamundo vagabond
valer to be worth; **más vale** it is better
valor *m.* worth, value; courage; **con —,** courageously
valle *m.* valley, vale
vanaglorioso, –a boastful, conceited
vanidad *f.* vanity
vano –a vain, useless
vapor *m.* steam, steamboat
vaporcito (*fr.* **vapor**) small steamboat
vara yard (*measure*)
variar to vary, change
vario, –a various, different; *pl.* several, varied, different
varita (*fr.* **vara**) little yard
varón *m.* male
vasallo vassal
vaso (drinking) glass
vaya *see* **ir**
Vd. (= **usted**) you; **Vds.** (= **ustedes**) you
vecindario neighborhood
vecino, –a neighbor, neighboring
veinte twenty

vela candle
Velásquez Velasquez (*Spanish painter*)
velocidad *f.* speed
vencer to conquer, win
vencido, –a conquered
vendedor, –ora vendor, seller
vender to sell
veneno poison, venom
venerable venerable
venir to come, happen
ventana window
venza *pres. subj.* 1*st sing. of* **vencer**
ver to see; **tener que — con** have to do with; **a —,** let us see
verano summer
veras: de —, really
verdad *f.* truth; **en —,** in fact; **¿ no es —?** (*or simply* **¿ verdad?**) isn't it so?
verdadero, –a true, real
verde green
verificarse to take place
verso verse
verter to pour forth, shed
vestido garment, clothes, suit
vestir to dress, clothe; **—se** dress (oneself)
vez *f.* time; **otra —,** again; **una —,** once; **dos veces** twice; **en — de** instead of; **tal —,** perhaps; **de — en cuando** from time to time; **rara —,** rarely
vía (*railway*) track, line
viajar to travel
viaje *m.* journey, travel
viajecito little trip
viajero, –a traveler
vicioso, –a vicious
vida life, living
viejecito, –a (*fr.* **viejo**) little old man *or* woman
viejo, –a old
viento wind
viernes *m.* Friday
vinagrera vinegar bottle
vino wine
visita visit
visitar to visit
vista sight, view
visto, –a *past part. of* **ver** to see
viudo, –a widower, widow
vivir to live
volar to fly
volumen *m.* volume
voluntad *f.* will
volver to turn, return, come back; **— a** (*do something*) again; **—se** turn around
vos you
vosotros, –as you, ye
voy 1*st pers. sing. pres. indic. of* **ir** to go
voz *f.* voice; **dar voces** to shout
vuelta turn, return; **a — de correo** by return mail; **estar de —,** to be back, have returned
vuestro, –a your, yours

Y

y and
ya already, now; **— no** no longer, no more; **— estamos** here we are
yerro *pres. indic.* 1*st sing. of* **errar**
yo I
yugo yoke

Z

zaguán *m.* porch
zapatería shoe shop
zapato shoe
Zurbarán Zurbaran (*Spanish painter*)

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH–SPANISH

A

a, an un, una
a.m. de la mañana
able: be — to poder
about (= *approximately*) cerca de, aproximadamente; (= *of*) de; (= *with regard to*) respecto de; **be — to** estar para
absent ausente; **——minded** distraído, –a
academy colegio
accept aceptar
accident accidente *m.*, desgracia
accompany acompañar
according to según
acknowledge reconocer; **— the receipt (of)** acusar recibo (de)
acquainted: be — with conocer
act hecho
add agregar, añadir
Adele Adela
adjust ajustar, arreglar
admirable admirable
admire admirar
advise aconsejar
affair asunto; **the — of yesterday** lo de ayer
affectionate cariñoso, –a; **very (most) —**, afectísimo, –a, afmo, –a
affirmative afirmativo, –a
afoot a pie
afraid: be — (of) tener miedo (de), temer
after *prep.* después de; *conj.* después que
afternoon tarde *f.*
again otra vez, de nuevo; **do —**, volver a hacer
against contra; *adv.* en contra
age edad *f.*; **middle —s** edad media
agent agente *m.*
ago: a long time —, hace mucho tiempo, mucho tiempo ha; **fifteen years —**, hace quince años
agree (to) convenir (en), prometer; (= *get along together*) entenderse
agreeable agradable
Alfred Alfredo
all todo, –a; **— day** todo el día
almost casi
aloud alto, en voz alta
Alphonsus Alfonso
already ya
also también
although aunque
always siempre
America América; **North —**, América del Norte
American americano, –a, norteamericano, –a
and y, e (*before i– or hi–*)
angry enojado, –a, irritado, –a, enfadado, –a; **be —, become —**, enojarse, irritarse, enfadarse
animal animal *m.*
animation animación *f.*
Anna Ana
another otro, –a; **one —**, los unos (a) los otros
answer responder; (*to a letter*) contestar

Anthony Antonio
anxious: be —, desear mucho
any (**one**) alguno, –a; alguien; cualquiera; **not** — (**one**) no . . . ningun(o), –a, no . . . alguno, –a (*after noun*); **not . . . in** — **way** no . . . en nada
anything algo, alguna cosa; (= *whatever*) cuanto, todo lo que; **not . . . —**, no . . . nada
anywhere alguna parte; **not go —**, no ir a ninguna parte; — (**else**) dondequiera, en cualquier parte
apparently al parecer
appear aparecer; (= *seem*) parecer
apple manzana; — **tree** manzano; — **orchard** manzanar *m.*
approach acercarse a
April abril *m.*
argue argüir
arise levantarse
arithmetic aritmética
arm brazo
army ejército
arrange arreglar, disponer
arrest prender; —**ed** preso
arrive (**at, in**) llegar (a)
Arthur Arturo
as como, pues; — . . . —, tan . . . como; — **soon** —, luego que, tan pronto como
ascertain averiguar
Asia Asia
ask (= *question*) preguntar; — **a question** hacer una pregunta; (= *beg, request*) pedir, rogar; — **of** pedir a; — **for** pedir
assistant subordinado, –a
at a; (= *in*) en
attack acometer
attend asistir a
attorney abogado
August agosto
aunt tía
Australia Australia
automobile automóvil *m.*
autumn otoño
avoid evitar
awake: — some one despertar a alguien; — (**oneself**) despertarse *or* despertar
away: be —, estar ausente; **go —**, irse, marcharse

B

back (*of person*) espalda; (*of animal*) lomo; (*of chair*) respaldo; **go —**, volver, regresar; — **of** detrás de
bad malo, –a; — **cold** fuerte resfriado; **it's too — !** ¡ es lástima !
badly mal, gravemente
ball pelota; **play —**, jugar a la pelota
barber barbero
bark ladrar
be (*permanently or inherently*) ser; (*temporarily or for position*) estar; — **cold** tener frío (*of a person or animal*), estar frío (*of an inanimate object*), hacer frío (*of the weather*)
beard barba
beautiful bello, –a, (= *handsome*) hermoso, –a
because porque
become hacerse, ponerse
bed cama; **go to —**, acostarse
bedroom dormitorio, alcoba
beer cerveza
before (*in position*) delante de; ante; (*in time*) antes de; (= *formerly, beforehand*) antes; *conj.* antes (de) que; — **that** antes
beg mendigar; (= *request*) pedir, rogar, suplicar
begin (**to**) empezar (a), principiar (a), echarse (a)
behavior conducta

behind detrás (de)
believe creer
belong pertenecer
beloved amado, –a, querido, –a
besides además
best mejor
better mejor
between entre
Bible Biblia
bicycle bicicleta
bill (= *account*) cuenta; (= *poster*) cartel *m.*; (= *bird's* —) pico; (= *bank note*) billete *m.*
bird pájaro, ave *f.*
birthday día de cumpleaños, cumpleaños *m.*
black negro, –a
blackboard pizarra, pizarrón *m.* (*in most of Spanish America*), encerado (*if of waxed cloth*)
blind ciego, –a
blond, blonde rubio, –a
blotting-paper papel secante *m.*
blow soplar; **the wind** —s hace (hay) viento
blue azul
boarding house casa de huéspedes
boat barco; **row** —, bote *m.*; little —, barquito, botecito
book libro
borrow pedir (tomar) prestado, –a
boy muchacho; (= *young* —) niño
brake freno
brandy aguardiente *m.*, coñac *m.*
bread pan *m.*
break romper
breakfast desayuno; **have** —, desayunarse; **eat** —, tomar el desayuno
breeze vientecillo
bride novia
bring traer; — **down** bajar
broken roto, –a
brother hermano; —**-in-law** cuñado
brush cepillo; *verb* acepillar
build construir
building edificio
bump chichón *m.*, bulto *f.*
burn quemar; *intr.* arder; (—*up* or *down*) quemarse, incendiarse; **his house** —**ed last month** su casa se le quemó (incendió) el mes pasado
burnish bruñir
busy ocupado, –a
but pero, mas, sino (*after negative*)
butter mantequilla, manteca
button botón *m.*
buy comprar
by (*with passive verbs*) por, de; (= *near*) junto a, cerca de, al lado de; — **day** de día; — **my watch** en mi reloj; **one** — **one** uno a uno

C

cake bollo
call llamar, (= *call for, get*) buscar; — **on** visitar
can poder; (= *know how*) saber
Canada (el) Canadá *m.*
canal canal *m.*
candle vela
candy *or* **candies** dulces *m. pl.*
cap gorra
capital (= *city*) capital *f.*
captain capitán *m.*
car coche; (= *motor car*) automóvil *m.*
care cuidado; **take** — **of** cuidar; *verb* — **for** cuidar
careful: be —, tener cuidado; **be** —! ¡cuidado! ¡tenga Vd. cuidado!
carpet alfombra
carriage coche *m.*, carruaje *m.*
carry (off) llevar, llevarse; — **a motion** votar (aprobar) una moción
case caso; **in** —, en caso que

Catalan catalán, –ana
Catalonia Cataluña
catch coger; (= *take*) tomar; (= *tie, fasten*) amarrar; — **cold** coger un resfriado (resfrío), tomar catarro, resfriarse; **he caught the yellow fever** le dió la fiebre amarilla
cause causa, motivo
cent centavo
center centro
centime céntimo
certain, a —, cierto, –a
chain cadena
chair silla
change cambiar, convertir
charge (= *cost*) precio; *verb* pedir, cobrar
Charles Carlos
chat charlar
cheerful alegre
cheese queso
chemistry química
child niño, –a; —**ren** niños *m. pl*; (= *sons and daughters*) hijos *m. pl.*
chin barba
choose escoger
city ciudad *f.*
class clase *f.*; —**room** clase, sala de clase, aula (*in a university*)
clean limpiar
clerk dependiente
climate clima *m.*
clock reloj (de pared, de mesa); **at six o'clock** a las seis; **what o'clock is it?** ¿ qué hora es?
close cerrar
clothes ropa; **take the — off one** desnudar a alguno, quitar la ropa a alguno
Co. (= *company*) Cía
coalition coalición *f.*
coat levita; (= *boy's* —) chaqueta; (= "*sack*"—) saco *or* americana; (= *evening* or "*dress*" —) frac *m.*; (*of uniform*) casaca
coffee café *m.*
cold *noun* frío; (= *illness*) resfriado, resfrío, catarro; **catch —**, coger un resfriado (resfrío), resfriarse; **it is —**, hace frío
cold *adj.* frío, –a; **be —**, *see* **be**
collar cuello
collection colección *f.*
collide (with) chocar (con)
collision choque *m.*
color color *m.*
comb peine *m.*; *verb* peinar
come venir; (*a train*) llegar; — **in** entrar (en *or* a); — **in!** ¡ pase usted ! — **out** salir
comfortable cómodo, –a
command mandar; *noun* orden *f.*, mandato
company compañía; **Co.** Cía
conceited egoísta, pagado (–a) de sí mismo (–a)
conquer vencer
consequently por consiguiente
console consolar
content, contented contento, –a, satisfecho, –a
contentedly tranquilamente, contentamente
continent continente *m.*
continue continuar
contrast: make a —, contrastar
conversation conversación *f.*
copper cobre *m.*
copy copia; (*of a work*) ejemplar *m.*
cordially cordialmente
correct corregir
correctly correctamente
cost costar
costly costoso, –a
cottage casita
count contar
country país *m.*; (= *native land*) patria; (*as distinguished from the city*) campo; — **house** casa de campo

countryman campesino
couple par *m.;* **a —** of algunos, –as
course curso, asignatura, materia
cousin primo, –a
cow vaca
crack partir
cravat corbata
crowd: a big —, mucha gente
cry gritar, dar voces; (= *weep*) llorar; *noun* (= *outcry*) grito
Cuba Cuba
Cuban cubano, –a
cuff puño
cup taza; (= *wine cup*) copa
cure sanar
cut cortar

D

daily diariamente, todos los días, cada día
danger peligro
dare atreverse (a), osar
date fecha; *verb* fechar
dated at con fecha de, fechado, –a, en
daughter hija
day día *m.;* **good —,** buenos días; **what — of the month is it?** ¿a cuántos estamos del mes?
dead muerto, –a
deal: a great — (of) mucho, –a; **a great —,** *adv.* mucho
dear (= *beloved*) querido, –a, caro, –a; (= *expensive*) caro, –a, costoso, –a; **Dear Sir** Muy Señor mío
dearly (= *expensively*) caramente, costosamente; (= *affectionately*) tiernamente, cariñosamente
death muerte *f.*
deceive engañar
December diciembre *m.*
decide resolver, resolverse (a); decidir, decidirse (a)
deed hecho
defective inservible, defectivo, –a
defend defender
departure partida
describe describir
description descripción *f.*
desire desear
desk pupitre *m.*, mesa, escritorio
destroy destruir
detail pormenor *m.*, detalle *m.*
die morir
difference diferencia
different diferente, varios, –as
difficult difícil
dine comer
dining room comedor *m.*
dinner comida
disappearance desaparición *f.*, desaparecimiento
discharge despedir
dispute disputa
distinctly distintamente
distinguish distinguir
distinguished distinguido, –a
do hacer
doctor doctor *m.;* (= *physician*) médico
dog perro
dollar (*in Spain*) duro; (*in America*) peso; (*of U.S.*) dólar *m.*
door puerta
doubt duda; *verb* dudar
doze dormitar
dozen docena
draft giro
draw sacar
drawing dibujo
drawing room sala
dress vestir; *intr.* vestirse
drink beber; *noun* bebida
drive (*as a motor car*) manejar
drop (= *let go of*) soltar; (= *let fall*) dejar caer
dry secar; (= *wipe*) enjugar
due: be —, deberse

E

each cada; — **other** (el) uno a (l) otro
ear oreja; (= *inner ear or hearing*) oído
early temprano
earn ganar
ease facilidad *f.*
easy fácil; — **chair** poltrona
eat comer; — **a meal** comer; — **breakfast** tomar el desayuno, desayunarse
effort esfuerzo
egg huevo
eight ocho
eighteen diez y ocho
eighth octavo, –a
eighty ochenta
either . . . or o . . . o; **not . . . —**, no . . . tampoco, no . . . ni uno ni otro
elevated elevado, –a
else: something —, otra cosa
embrace abrazar
emphasis énfasis *m. or f.*
employ emplear
employee empleado, –a
end extremidad *f.*, extremo
enemy enemigo, –a
engine máquina; (= *locomotive*) locomotora
engineer maquinista *m.*
England Inglaterra
English inglés, –esa
enjoy: — oneself divertirse
enough bastante, suficiente
enter entrar (en); (*in Spanish America usually*) entrar (a)
entitle titular
envelope sobre *m.*
erase borrar
err errar
Europe Europa
even *adv.* aun; — **if** aunque
evening tarde *f.*; **good —**, buenas tardes, buenas noches
ever (= *always*) siempre; (*in a question*) jamás, alguna vez; **not . . . —**, no . . . nunca, no . . . jamás; **sadder than —**, más triste que nunca
every (**one**) todo, –a; cada (uno, –a); **—body** todos (*pl.*), todo el mundo; — **night** todas las noches; — **time** cada vez
evil mal *m.*
example ejemplo
exception excepción *f.*
excited agitado, –a; **rather —**, [agitadito
excitement agitación *f.*, alboroto
exclaim exclamar
expect esperar, contar con
expensive costoso, –a, caro, –a
explain explicar
express expresar
expression expresión *f.*
extinguish apagar, extinguir
eye ojo; **—glasses** anteojos *m. pl.*

F

face cara
factory fábrica
faithful fiel
fall caer; — **down** caerse
false falso, –a
family familia
far lejos; **as — as** hasta
farm granja, cortijo, hacienda, estancia (*chiefly for cattle, in Argentina*)
fast (= *firm*) firme, seguro, –a; (= *swift*) veloz, ligero, –a; **be —** (*as a watch*) adelantar, estar adelantado
fast *adv.* (= *firmly*) fuertemente, firmemente; (= *rapidly*) aprisa, de prisa, rápidamente
fatal fatal
father padre *m.*, papá *m.*
fault culpa; **it is your —**, usted tiene la culpa, la culpa es de usted

favor favor *m.;* **your** — (= *letter*) su apreciable carta
fear temer; *noun* miedo
February febrero
feel sentir; *intr.* sentirse
feeling sentimiento
fever fiebre *f.*
few, a —, pocos (–as), unos (–as), unos (–as) cuantos (–as); —**er** menos
fiancé novio
field campo, recinto; (*athletic*) —, cancha
fifteen quince
fifth quinto, –a
fifty cincuenta
fill (*as an order*) ejecutar
final final
find hallar; (= *meet*) encontrar
fine bueno, –a, primoroso, –a, excelente
finger dedo; — **nail** uña (de dedo)
fire (*in the abstract*) fuego; (= *burning wood or coal*) lumbre *f.*, candela (*e.g., in Cuba*); (= *conflagration of a house, etc.*) incendio; (*as a cry*) ¡ fuego !
firm casa; (= *firm name*) firma
first primer(o), –a; (*in compound ordinals*) primo, –a; — **floor** piso bajo, los bajos; *adv.* primero, en primer lugar; **at** —, primero
fist puño
fit sentar, caer, estar
five cinco; — **hundred** quinientos, –as
floor suelo; (= *story*) piso; **first** (**second**) —, (*of a two-story house*) piso bajo (alto) *or* los bajos (los altos); *in a tall building the floors are* piso bajo, (*sometimes* el entresol, **mezzanine**), piso principal *or* piso primero, piso segundo, *etc.*
flower flor *f.*
fog neblina, niebla
foggy: it is —, hay neblina
follow seguir
following siguiente
fond: be (**very**) — **of** querer (mucho)
food alimento
foolish bobo, –a
foot pie *m.*
football fútbol *m.;* **play** —, jugar al fútbol
for (= *for the sake of, in exchange for*) por; (= *destination*) para; (= *since*) desde; *conj.* pues, puesto que
forbid prohibir
forehead frente *f.*
forest bosque *m.*, monte *m.;* **small** —, bosquecito, montecito
forget olvidarse; **I forgot** (**to do it**) se me olvidó (hacerlo)
fork tenedor *m.*
form forma
forty cuarenta
four cuatro
fourteen catorce
fourth cuarto, –a
fragrant oloroso, –a, fragante
France Francia
Frances Francisca
freely libremente, generosamente
French francés, –esa
frequently a menudo, muchas veces, con frecuencia
Friday viernes *m.*
friend amigo, –a
friendly simpático, –a
frighten espantar, asustar; **be** —**ed** asustarse
from de, desde; — . . . **to** de . . . a, desde . . . hasta
front fachada
fruit fruta(s)
fully completamente
fun: make — **of** burlarse de, mofarse de
furnace horno

furnished amueblado, –a
furniture muebles *m. pl.*

G

game juego, (= *match*) partida
garden jardín *m.*
garlic ajo
gate puerta, reja
gather (*flowers*) coger
general general
gentleman señor *m.;* caballero
geography geografía
George Jorge
German alemán, –ana
Germany Alemania
get (= *obtain*) conseguir, obtener; (= *go after*) ir a buscar; **go (come) and —**, ir (venir) a buscar; (= *become*) ponerse; **— well** restablecerse; **— lost** extraviarse
gift regalo
girl muchacha, niña
give dar
glad alegre, contento, –a; **I am —** (**to**) me alegro (de), me da gusto (placer) de, tengo mucho gusto (placer) en
glass (= *drinking glass*) vaso; (= *eyeglasses*) lentes *m. pl.*, anteojos *m. pl.*
glove guante *m.*
go ir; pasar (*al pizarrón*); **— away** irse, partir; **— back** regresar, volver; **— out** salir; **— up** subir; **— up to** acercarse a; **— in** *or* **into** entrar (en *or* a); **— with** acompañar; (*of a watch, boat, etc.*) andar; **— on a trip** hacer un viaje
God Dios *m.*
gold oro; (= *of gold*) de oro
good bueno, –a; **be — for nothing** no valer nada, no servir para nada
good-bye adiós; **— for a while** hasta luego; **— until we see each other again** hasta la vista
goodness bondad *f.*, (lo) bueno
grammar gramática
granddaughter nieta
grandfather abuelo
grandparents abuelos
grandson nieto
grant otorgar, conceder
great gran(de); **a — deal** mucho, –a
Greek griego, –a
green verde
ground suelo; **— floor** piso bajo, los bajos
grow crecer
guest huésped *m.*, huéspeda *f.;* convidado, –a
guide guía *m. or f.; verb* guiar

H

hair cabello, pelo; (*of the head*) cabellos
half mitad *f.; adj.* medio, –a; **a —**, *or* **— a** medio, –a, la mitad (de)
ham jamón *m.*
hand mano *f.;* **come to —**, venir a (mis) manos
handkerchief pañuelo
handsome hermoso, –a
happen acontecer, suceder
happily felizmente
happy feliz
hard duro, –a; (= *difficult*) difícil; *adv.* diligentemente, mucho; **very —**, mucho, muchísimo; **study —**, estudiar mucho *or* con mucho ahinco
harm mal *m.;* (= *damage*) daño
hat sombrero
hate odiar, aborrecer
have *aux. verb* haber; (= *possess, hold*) tener; **— to** tener que, haber de, deber

he él; — **who** el que, quien
head cabeza
health salud *f.;* **be in good (better)** —, estar bien (mejor) de salud
healthful saludable
healthy sano, –a
hear oír
heat calor *m.*
heaven cielo
hello hola
help ayudar; **he could not — doing it** no pudo menos de hacerlo
hen gallina
Henry Enrique
here aquí, acá
heroic heroico, –a
high alto, –a, elevado, –a; (*of a price*) subido, –a
him le, lo; él
himself se
his su, sus; el (la, lo, los, las) suyo (–a, –o, –os, –as); el (la, lo, los, las) . . . de él
historian historiador *m.*
history historia
holy santo, –a
home (= *to one's* —) a casa; **at —,** en casa
honorable honrado, –a
hope esperar
horse caballo
horseback: on —, a caballo
hot caliente
hotel hotel *m.*
hour hora
house casa
how como; *interrog.* cómo; — **much (many)** cuánto, –a (–os, –as)
however sin embargo, pues
hundred, one —, cien(to)
hunger hambre *f.*
hungry hambriento, –a; **be (very) —,** tener (mucha) hambre
hurry prisa; **be in a —,** tener prisa; **in a (great) —,** (muy) de prisa
hurt lastimar, herir; **did not — himself** no se hizo daño; *adj.* herido, –a
husband marido, esposo

I

if si
ill enfermo, –a, malo, –a
illness enfermedad *f.*
immediately en seguida, inmediatamente
imperative imperativo
in en; (= *within*) dentro de; (*after a superlative*) de; — **the morning** por la mañana
independent independiente
Indian indio, –a
indicate indicar
indispensable indispensable
industrious aplicado, –a
influence influencia, influjo
inform enterar, avisar
inhabitant habitante *m.*
ink tinta
inquisitive preguntón, –ona
insist (on) exigir, insistir en
instance: for —, por ejemplo
instant instante *m.;* (= *present month*) del corriente, del presente
instead of en lugar (vez) de
intelligent inteligente
intend pensar, tener la intención de
interesting interesante
introduce presentar; (= *admit*) introducir
investigate indagar
invite convidar, invitar; — **him to go with us** invitarle a acompañarnos
iron hierro
ironically irónicamente, con ironía

Isabel Isabel
island isla
it él, ella, ello; lo, la
Italian italiano, –a

J

Jane Juana
January enero
John Juan
joke chiste *m.*
judge juez *m.*
July julio
June junio
just *adv.* justamente, exactamente; **to have — done it** acabar de hacerlo

K

keep guardar
kidnap secuestrar
kill matar; **—ed** matado, –a, muerto, –a
kilometer kilómetro
kind clase *f.*, especie *f.*; *adj.* bondadoso, –a; apreciable *or* atenta (*carta*); **be — enough (to)** tener la bondad (de), servirse
kindness bondad *f.*
kiss besar
kitchen cocina
knife cuchillo; (= *claspknife*) navaja; (= *penknife*) cortaplumas *m.*; **table —**, cuchillo de mesa
know (= *be acquainted with*) conocer, (= *be aware of, know as the result of study, etc., be able*) saber; **— how** saber; **I —**, conozco *or* sé; **let them —**, conozcan *or* sepan

L

lad muchacho
lady señora
lamp lámpara
language lengua, idioma *m.*; (= *style of language*) lenguaje *m.*
large gran(de)
last último, –a, postrer(o), –a; **— week** la semana pasada; **the — of** a fines de; *verb* durar
late tarde; retrasado (*of a train, etc.*); **at the latest** a más tardar
Latin latín *m.* (*the language*); latino, –a *adj.*
laugh reír(se); **— at** reírse de
laundress lavandera
lawyer abogado
lazy perezoso, –a, haragán, –ana
leap year año bisiesto
learn (to) aprender (a); (= *be informed*) saber
least menos; **at —**, al (por lo) menos
leave dejar, abandonar; (= *depart*) partir (de); **— for** partir para, marcharse para; (*of a train*) salir; (= *go out*) salir; **take — (of)** despedirse (de)
leg pierna
lend prestar
less menos
lesson lección *f.*
let (= *leave*) dejar; (= *permit*) permitir; (= *rent*) alquilar, arrendar; *sometimes expressed by* que *with the pres. subj. of the main verb*
letter carta
library biblioteca
lie mentir
lie (down) acostarse
life vida
lift levantar, alzar
light alumbrar, iluminar; (*a fire or lamp*) encender
light-complexioned rubio, –a
lighten relampaguear
likable amable, simpático
like querer (a), gustar (de); **I —**, me gusta (*lit.* '*it pleases me*')

lily lirio
line línea
listen escuchar
little poco, –a; (= *small*) pequeño, –a, chico, –a
live vivir; — **in** habitar
living vida
locket medallón *m.*
London Londres *m.*
long largo, –a; **a — time** mucho tiempo; **as — as** mientras, mientras que; **how —,** cuánto tiempo (hace que); *see* tardar
look (at) mirar; — **after** cuidar; — **for** buscar; (= *appear*) parecer; — **like** parecerse a
lose perder
lost: get —, extraviarse
lot porción *f.;* **a — of** mucho, –a, gran número de; **a — of tears** un raudal de lágrimas
lottery lotería
loud alto, –a; *adv.* (= *en voz alta*) alto
Louise Luisa
love amar, querer (a)
low bajo, –a; *adv.* bajo
lunch(eon) almuerzo; **have —,** almorzar

M

ma'am = **madam**
machine máquina
madam señora
magnificent magnífico, –a
make hacer; (= *earn*) ganar; — (*a mistake*) cometer
man hombre *m.;* **his men** los suyos
manage administrar, dirigir
many muchos, –as
map mapa *m.*
marble mármol *m.;* (*in a game*) bola, bolita
March marzo
march marchar
mark nota; *verb* señalar
marry casarse (con)
Mary María
match fósforo; (= *game*) partida; *verb* caer bien con
mathematics matemáticas *f. pl.*
matter *verb* importar
may poder, tener permiso (de)
May mayo
me, to —, me
meal comida
mean (= *intend*) pensar; (= *signify*) significar, querer decir
meat carne *f.*
mechanic mecánico
medicine (= *science of*) medicina; (= *drug*) medicamento
meet encontrar; encontrarse con
melancholy melancolía
melt fundir, (*of ice, etc.*) derretirse
mend remendar, componer, reparar
merchant comerciante *m.*
merely sólo, solamente, no . . . más que
metal metal *m.*
Mexican mejicano, –a (*or* mexicano, –a)
Mexico Méjico (*or* México)
middle medio, –a; *noun* medio; **in the — of** en medio de, en el centro de
milk leche *f.*
million millón *m.*
mine mío, –a, –os, –as; el (la, lo, los, las) mío (–a, –o, –os, –as)
minute minuto
mirror espejo
miser avariento, –a *m. and f.*
Miss (la) señorita; (*before given names*) doña
mistake error *m.*, falta
mistaken: be —, equivocarse, engañarse
moment momento
Monday lunes *m.*
money dinero

month mes *m.*
more más
moreover además
morning mañana; **tomorrow —,** mañana por la mañana
most más; (= *very*) muy; (= *the greater part of*) la mayor parte de
mother madre *f.*
motion movimiento; (*in a parliament or congress*) moción *f.*
motive motivo
motor car automóvil *m.*
mountain montaña
mouth boca
Mr. (el) señor *m.*; (*before given names*) don
Mrs. (la) señora; (*before given names*) doña
much mucho, –a; **very —,** muchísimo,– a; **so** (**as**) **—** tanto, –a, como
mud lodo; (= *mire, slime*) fango
mule mulo, –a (*the fem. form is generally used*)
music música
must tener que, haber de; (= *moral obligation*) deber
mustache(**s**) bigotes *m. pl.*
my mi, mis; mío (–a, –os, –as)

N

nail clavo; **finger —,** uña (de dedo)
name nombre *m.*; (= *surname*) apellido; **my — is** me llamo
napkin servilleta
native natural *m. and f.*
nature naturaleza, (= *disposition, character*) índole *f.*
near cerca de, junto a
nearly casi
necessary necesario, –a; **be —,** ser necesario, preciso, menester
neck cuello, pescuezo
necklace collar *m.*
necktie corbata
need necesidad *f.*
need necesitar
needy necesitados, –as, pobres
negative negativo, –a
negro negro, –a
neighbor vecino, –a *m. and f.*
neither . . . nor no . . . ni, ni . . .ni
nephew sobrino
never nunca, jamás
new nuevo, –a; **New York** Nueva York
news noticia, noticias, *f. pl.*; **a piece of —,** una noticia
newspaper periódico
next próximo, –a, siguiente; **— month** el próximo mes, el mes que viene (entra); **the — page** la página siguiente
niece sobrina
night noche *f.*; **last —,** anoche
nine nueve
nineteen diez y nueve
ninety noventa
ninth noveno, –a; (*in compound ordinals*) nono, –a
no no
no, no one, none ningun(o), –a, no . . . ningun(o), –a, no . . . alguno, –a
nobody nadie
noise ruido
nor ni
north norte *m.*; *adj.* norte
North-American norteamericano, –a
nose nariz *f.*
not no; **— . . . either** ni . . . tampoco
notable notable
note notar; **be —d** notarse
notebook cuaderno
nothing nada
notice fijarse en
novel novela
November noviembre *m.*

now ahora, ya
number número
nut nuez *f.*

O

object objeto, cosa
oblige obligar
observe observar, (= *keep*) guardar
obstruction obstáculo
occur suceder, acontecer
o'clock: at six —, a las seis
October octubre *m.*
of de; (*with* pensar) en; (*with verb of separation*) a
offer ofrecer
office oficina, despacho
often muchas veces, a menudo
old viejo, –a, anciano, –a; (= *ancient or of long standing*) antiguo, –a; **be ten years —,** tener diez años; **— man (woman)** anciano (–a)
older (*of persons*) mayor
on en; (= *on top of*) sobre, encima de; **— time** a tiempo
once una vez; **at —,** en seguida
one un(o), –a; **— or another** uno(–a) u otro(–a), alguno(–a) que otro(–a); **the —, that —,** el, *etc.*, aquel, *etc.*
only sólo, solamente, no . . . más que, no . . . sino; *adj.* único, –a
open abrir
opposite opuesto, –a
opulence opulencia
or o, u (*before* o- *or* ho-); **not . . . —,** no . . . ni
orange naranja
order (= *command*) orden *f.*; (= *orderliness*) orden *m.*; (*of goods*) pedido; **in — to** para; **in — that** para que; **out of —,** inservible
original original
other, another otro, –a; (= *the rest*) demás
ought deber; **I — to** yo debiera
our nuestro, –a
ours nuestro (–a, –os, –as); el (la, lo, los, las) nuestro (–a, –o, –os, –as)
out fuera; (= *outside*) afuera; **go —,** salir; **go — into the street** salir a la calle; **be —,** (= *get well*) restablecerse
outdoors afuera
outside afuera
over (= *upon*) sobre; (= *above*) encima de; (= *to the other side of*) al otro lado de; **— there** por allí
overcoat sobretodo, abrigo; (= *cloak*) capote *m.*
own propio, –a, mismo, –a; **to —,** poseer
owner dueño (**el dueño** *is used even when referring to a woman*)

P

p.m. (*till dark*) de la tarde; (*after dark*) de la noche
package paquete *m.*
page página
pale pálido, –a
paper papel *m.*; (= *newspaper*) periódico
pardon perdón *m.*; *verb* perdonar
parents padres *m. pl.*
Paris París
parrot loro, cotorra (*species of small —*)
part parte *f.*
pass pasar
past (lo) pasado
past *adj.* pasado, –a; **at half — one o'clock** a la una y media
pastry pasteles *m. pl.*
Paul Pablo
pay pagar
peace paz *f.*

peach melocotón *m.*, durazno (= *a common variety of small peach*)
pearl perla
pen pluma
pencil lápiz *m.*
penknife cortaplumas *m.*
people pueblo; (= *persons*) gente *f.*
pepper pimienta
perhaps tal vez, quizás
permission permiso
permit permitir
person persona
personage personaje *m.*
personal personal
Peter Pedro
Philadelphia Filadelfia
Philippines Filipinas *f. pl.;* **in the —,** en Filipinas
philosophy filosofía
photograph fotografía
physician médico
piano piano
pick (*flowers, etc.*) coger
picnic: go on a —, pasar el día en el campo
picture cuadro; (= *portrait*) retrato; (= *engraving*) grabado, lámina
piece pedazo; (*of music, etc.*) pieza; (*of furniture*) mueble *m.*
pity piedad *f.*, misericordia, lástima; **it is a —,** es lástima; **what a —,** qué lástima
place lugar *m.*, sitio
plan plan *m.*
plate plato
play jugar; (*on a musical instrument*) tocar; **— ball** jugar a la pelota; **— football** jugar al fútbol
player jugador *m.;* **football —,** futbolista
please gustar, agradar; (= *be kind enough*) hágame Vd. el favor (de), tenga Vd. la bondad (de), sírvase; **we are —d (to)** tenemos el gusto (de)
pleasure gusto, placer *m.*
plural plural
pocket bolsillo, faltriquera
poem poesía, poema *m.*
poetry poesía
point out *or* **at** indicar
police policía
pond estanque *m.*
poor pobre
porter portero
Portuguese portugés, –esa
possess poseer
possible posible
post office correo, casa (administración) de correos
potato patata, (*in most parts of Spanish America*) papa
pound libra
pour echar
praise alabar
pray rezar
prefer preferir
present regalo, presente *m.; verb* presentar; **be —,** asistir, estar presente
prettily lindamente, bonitamente
pretty bonito –a, lindo, –a, hermoso, –a
price precio
print imprimir
probably probablemente; *may be expressed by indic. fut. or cond.*
programme programa *m.*
promise prometer
pronoun pronombre *m.*
pronounce pronunciar
property bienes *m. pl.*
prove probar
proverb refrán *m.*, proverbio
provided con tal que
publish publicar; **be —ed** publicarse, salir a luz
punish castigar
pupil discípulo, –a *m. and f.*

pure puro, –a
purse bolsa, bolsillo
put poner; — **on** poner, ponerse; — **out** (*a fire or light*) apagar; — **to bed** acostar

Q

quarrel reñir
quarter cuarto; **at a** — **past one o'clock** a la una y cuarto
question pregunta; **ask a** —, hacer una pregunta
quickly rápidamente

R

railway ferrocarril *m.*
rain llover
raise levantar
rapidly rápidamente
rare raro, –a
rarely raramente, rara vez
reach alcanzar; (= *touch*) tocar; (= *extend*) tender, extender; (= *arrive at*) llegar a
read leer
reader (*a book*) libro de lectura
ready listo, –a
reason razón *f.*; — **for** razón de
recall recordar
receipt recibo; **we are in** — **of** acusamos recibo de
receive recibir
recover (*health*) restablecer(se), sanar
red rojo, –a; (= *bright red*) encarnado, –a; (= *dark red, "brick color"*) colorado, –a
reduce reducir
refuse negarse a
regards recuerdos *m. pl.*
register registro
regret sentir
regular regular; **he is a** — **fool** es un bobo
rejoice alegrarse
relate relacionarse con; **all relating to** cuanto se relaciona con
remain quedar(se), permanecer
remember acordarse (de), recordar
repeat repasar, repetir
reply contestar, responder
republic república
respect estimación *f.*
rest descansar; *noun* descanso; (= *remnant*) resto, (lo) demás; **take a** —, descansar
restaurant restaurant *or* restaurante *m.*
return volver, regresar
rich rico, –a
ride pasearse (*en automóvil, etc.*)
rifle rifle *m.*, fusil *m.*
rifle shot fusilazo
right justo, –a; (*as compared to left*) derecho, –a; **be** —, tener razón
ring sortija, anillo
rise levantarse; (*of sun, moon, etc.*) salir
river río
road camino
rogue pícaro, –a *m. and f.*, pillo, –a *m. and f.*
Rome Roma
roof tejado, techo
room cuarto, pieza; **bed**—, alcoba, dormitorio; **bath**—, cuarto de baño; **class**—, aula, sala de clase; **dining** —, comedor *m.*; **state**—, camarote *m.*; (= *space*) lugar *m.*, espacio
rule regla
run correr; — **down** *or* **over** pasar por encima de, atropellar
Russian ruso, –a *m. and f.*

S

sacrifice sacrificio
sad triste

saint san(to), –a; **—'s day** día del santo, días *m. pl.*
salary sueldo
sale venta; **for —,** de venta
salt sal *f.*
sandwich emparedado
Saturday sábado
save salvar; (*money*) ahorrar
say decir; **it is said** se dice
scholar (= *pupil*) discípulo, –a *m. and f.*
school escuela
schoolmaster maestro, profesor
scold regañar, reñir
seat sentar; **be —ed** (= *sitting*) estar sentado, –a, (= *take a seat*) sentarse
second segundo, –a; **— floor** *see* floor
secure firme, sólido, –a, seguro, –a
see ver; **let us —,** a ver, vamos a ver
seek buscar
seem parecer, figurarse
self mismo, –a, propio, –a
sell vender
send enviar, mandar, remitir; **— for** mandar a buscar
sentence frase *f.*, oración *f.*
September se(p)tiembre *m.*
serious serio, –a; (= *dangerous*) grave, peligroso, –a
seriously gravemente
servant criado, –a
serve (as) servir (de)
set sentar; (*of the sun, moon, etc.*) ponerse; (= *the table, etc.*) poner
seven siete
seventeen diez y siete
seventh sé(p)timo, –a
seventy setenta
several varios, –as
severe severo, –a
severity severidad *f.*
Seville Sevilla
share (*of stocks*) acción *f.*
shave afeitar, rasurar; *intr.* afeitarse, rasurarse
shed verter
shelf anaquel *m.*
shine lucir, brillar; **the sun —s** hace (hay) sol
shirt camisa
shoe zapato
shop tienda; (*work*) —, taller
short corto, –a; **a — time** poco tiempo; **a — while** (time) **ago** poco tiempo ha, hace poco tiempo
should (= *ought to*) deber; **you — do so** Vd. debiera hacerlo; — *also denotes conditional in* **'I — do it if I could,'** *etc.*
shout gritar
show enseñar, mostrar
shut cerrar
sick malo, –a; enfermo, –a
side lado; **on the other —,** al otro lado
silver plata; (= *of silver*) de plata
simple sencillo, –a
since desde; *conj. temporal* desde que; *causal* pues, puesto que
sincere sincero, –a
sincerely sinceramente
singular singular
sir señor *m.*, caballero
sister hermana
sit (down) sentarse; **—ting** sentado, –a
six seis
sixteen diez y seis
sixth sexto, –a
sixty sesenta
skilful experto, –a, hábil
slate pizarra
sleep sueño; *verb* dormir; **go to —,** fall a—, dormirse
sleepy: be —, tener sueño
slow lento, –a, detenido, –a, atrasado, –a; **be —,** (*as a watch,*

train, etc.), atrasar, estar atrasado, –a
slowly despacio
small pequeño, –a, chico, –a
smell oler; — **of** oler a; **it —s** huele
smoke humear, echar humo; — (*tobacco*) fumar (tabaco)
sniff olfatear
snow nieve *f.*; *verb* nevar
so tan; — **much** (**many**) tanto, –a (tantos, –as); — . . . **as** tan . . . como; **he said —,** lo dijo
soap jabón *m.*
sofa sofá *m.*
soft muelle, blando, –a
soiled sucio, –a
soldier soldado
some alguno, –a; *pl.* algunos, –as, unos, –as, unos (–as) cuantos (–as)
somebody, some one alguien, alguno, –a
something algo, alguna cosa; — **else** otra cosa
son hijo
soon pronto, presto, temprano; **as — as** luego que, tan pronto como, en cuanto
Sophia Sofía
sorry afligido, –a, triste; **be —,** sentir(lo)
soul alma
soup sopa
Spain España
Spanish español, –ola; (= *the Spanish language*) el castellano, el español *m.*
Spanish American hispanoamericano, –a
speak hablar
spectacles espejuelos [broso, –a
spectacular maravilloso, –a, asom-
spelling ortografía
spend gastar, emplear; (*of time*) pasar
spite: in — of himself a su despecho, a pesar suyo
splendid magnífico, –a, espléndido, –a
split partir
spoon cuchara; **tea—,** cucharita
spring (= *season*) primavera
square plaza
squirrel ardilla
stand estar de *or* en pie
station (*of railway*) estación *f.*
statue estatua
stay quedar(se); — **in bed** guardar cama
steal robar
stenographer estenógrafo, –a, taquígrafo, –a
still todavía, aun (*or* aún)
stone piedra
stop parar(se), detener(se); — **a car** (**automobile**) parar (detener) un automóvil; **the clock has —ped** el reloj se ha parado
store tienda
story cuento, relación *f.*
stove (= *cooking* —) fogón *m.*; (= *heating* —) estufa
strange extraño, –a, particular
stranger extranjero, –a *m. and f.*; (= *unknown*) desconocido, –a *m. and f.*
street calle *f.*
stretched out tendido, –a
strong fuerte
study estudio; *verb* estudiar
subject sujeto
subjunctive subjuntivo
such, such a tal
suddenly repentinamente, de repente
suffer sufrir
summer verano
sun sol *m.*
Sunday domingo
superintendent director *m.*

supper cena; **have —,** cenar
support mantener
suppress suprimir
sure seguro, –a; cierto, –a
surprise sorprender, extrañar
swallow tragar
sweet dulce; —s dulces *m. pl.*
system sistema *m.*

T

table mesa; **small —,** mesita
tablecloth mantel *m.*
tailor sastre *m.*
take tomar, (= *carry*) llevar; — **off** quitar (a); — **away** llevarse; — **a trip** hacer un viaje; — **leave** despedirse; — **your seats** siéntense Vds.
talk hablar
talkative hablador, –ora
tall alto, –a
task tarea
taste gusto; *verb* gustar; *intr.* saber a
tastefully con buen gusto
tea té *m.*; —**spoon** cucharita
teach enseñar
teacher maestro, –a, profesor, –ora
tear lágrima
telephone *verb* telefonear; *noun* teléfono
tell decir, contar
ten diez
tenderly tiernamente
tenth décimo, –a
term (*of school, college, etc.*) curso
terrible terrible
Tetuan Tetuán
than que, de (*before numerals*), del que, de la que, *etc.* (*before dependent clauses*)
thank dar (las) gracias (a), agradecer; **I — you!** ¡ gracias !
that (*rel.*) que
that (*dem.*) ese, –a, –o; áquel, aquella, aquello
that (*conj.*) que; (= *in order that*) para que
that one aquél, aquélla
the el, la, lo, los, las
theater teatro
their su, sus; el (la, los, las) . . .de ellos (ellas)
them los, les, las; ellos, ellas
theme tema *m.*
then entonces, luego
there allí, allá; (*near person addressed*) ahí; **over —,** por allí; — **is** (**are**) hay
therefore por consiguiente, por esto (eso)
Theresa Teresa
they ellos, ellas
thief ladrón, –ona *m. and f.*
thing cosa; **little —,** cosita
think pensar; — **of** pensar en; — **about** pensar de; (= *believe*) creer, opinar
third tercer(o), –a; (*in compound ordinals*) tercio, –a
thirst sed *f.*
thirsty: be —, tener sed
thirteen trece
thirty treinta
this (*dem.*) este, –a, –o, –os, –as; — **one** (*pron.*) éste, ésta, *etc.*
Thomas Tomás
those who los que, *etc.*
thousand, one —, mil; millar
three tres
throat garganta
through por; — **ticket** billete (boleto) directo
throw echar, arrojar; (— *a ball, stone, etc.*) tirar; — **away** botar, arrojar; — **down** echar al suelo
Thursday jueves *m.*
ticket billete *m.*, boleto (*Spanish American*)

time tiempo, hora; **what — is it?** ¿ qué hora es? **the first —,** la primera vez; **some—s** algunas veces; **on —,** a tiempo; **from — to —,** de vez en cuando
tired cansado, –a
to a, hasta; (= *in order to*) para
toast tostadas *f. pl.*
tobacco tabaco
today hoy
together: all —, a compás
tomorrow mañana; **day after —,** pasado mañana; **— morning** mañana por la mañana
too también; **— much** demasiado, –a; **it's — bad!** ¡ es lástima !
toothache: he has a —, le duelen los dientes *or* las muelas (*lit.* '*the teeth ache to him*')
toward(s) hacia
towel toalla
town pueblo, ciudad *f.*
track vía, línea
train tren *m.*
trained: well —, formal, bien educado, –a
traitor traidor, –ora *m. and f.*
translate traducir
travel viajar
traveling bag maleta
treat tratar
tree árbol *m.*
tremble (with) temblar (de)
Trinity Trinidad *f.*
trip viaje *m.*, viajecito, excursión *f.*; **make** *or* **take** *or* **go on a —,** hacer un viaje (viajecito) *or* una excursión
trouble molestar
trousers pantalones *m. pl.*
true verdadero, –a; (= *faithful*) fiel; **it is —,** es verdad (cierto)
trunk baúl *m.*
truth verdad *f.*
try (= *test*) probar; (= *tempt*) tentar; (= *endeavor*) tratar (de), procurar, esforzarse (por), intentar
Tuesday martes *m.*
turn (= — *around*) volverse; (= *become*) ponerse, hacerse
twelve doce
twenty veinte
twice dos veces
two dos; **— hundred** doscientos, –as
typewriter máquina de escribir
typhoid fever fiebre tifoidea

U

ugly feo, –a
umbrella paraguas *m.*
uncle tío; **—(s) and aunt(s)** tíos *m. pl.*
under debajo de, bajo
underscore subrayar
understand entender, comprender
unfortunate desdichado, –a, desgraciado, –a
unhappy infeliz
United States Estados Unidos *m. pl.*
unless a menos que
until hasta; *conj.* hasta que
us nos, nosotros, –as; **to —,** nos
use usar, emplear, servirse de; **he —d to do so** lo hacía, solía hacerlo; *noun* empleo, uso
useful útil
usually por lo común, por lo general, comúnmente

V

various varios, –as
vary variar
velvet terciopelo
vendor vendedor, –ora *m. and f.*
veranda galería
verb verbo
verbal verbal

verse verso
very muy, mucho
vest, waistcoat chaleco
view vista; **in — of the fact that** visto que
village aldea, pueblecito
visit visitar; *noun* visita
voice voz *f.*; **in a low —**, en voz baja
volume tomo, volumen *m.*
vote votar

W

waistcoat chaleco
wait (for) esperar, aguardar
waiter mozo, camarero, (*Mex.*) mesero
walk andar, ir a pie, pasearse; **— with** acompañar; *noun* paseo
walking stick bastón *m.*
wall muro; (= *inner — of house*) pared *f.*; (*of fortification*) muralla
want (= *lack*) carecer de; (= *wish*) querer, desear
war guerra
warm caluroso, –a, cálido, –a; **I am —**, tengo calor; **it is —**, hace calor; **— water** agua caliente
was to (= *should*): *see* deber
wash lavar
wash basin jofaina, palangana
watch reloj *m.*
water (el) agua
way camino, dirección *f.*; (= *manner*) manera, modo; **not . . . in any —**, no . . . en nada
we nosotros, –as
wealthy rico, –a, opulento, –a
weapon arma
wear llevar, usar
weather tiempo; **be good —**, hacer buen tiempo
Wednesday miércoles *m.*
week semana; **in a —**, en ocho días; **in two —s** en quince días
weep llorar
well bueno, –a, bien (de salud); *adv.* bien, pues
wet mojado, –a
what *rel. pron.* lo que; **— is mine** lo mío; **— had happened** lo acontecido; *interrog.* qué, (= *which*) cuál
whatever por más . . . que
when cuando; *interrog.* cuándo
whenever cuando, cuandoquiera que, siempre que
where donde; *interrog.* dónde; (= *whither*) a dónde; (= *wherein*) en donde
whether si; (*after* dudar, *etc.*) que
which que, el (la) cual, el (la) que; *interrog.* cuál
while (= *time*) tiempo; **a —**, un rato, un momento; *conj.* mientras, mientras que
white blanco, –a
who que, el (la) cual, el (la) que, quien; *interrog.* quién
whole todo, –a; entero, –a
wholesale por major
whom *rel.* que, a quien, al que, *etc.*, al cual, *etc.*
whom *interrog.* a quién
whose cuyo, –a; *interrog.* de quién
why *interrog.* por qué, para qué
wicked malo, –a
wickedness iniquidad *f.*, (lo) malo
wide ancho, –a
wife mujer *f.*, señora, esposa
wild silvestre
will (= *be willing*) querer; *otherwise* 'will' *denotes future time*
willing dispuesto, –a, inclinado, –a; **be —**, querer
win ganar
wind viento
wind *verb* dar cuerda a (*un reloj*)
window ventana
windy: it is —, hace (hay) viento
wine vino

winter invierno
wire alambre *m.*
wish querer, desear; **I — I had** quisiera tener
with con
within dentro de
without sin
woman mujer *f.;* **young —,** joven *f.*
wood (*as fuel*) leña; (*material*) madera
word palabra
work trabajo; (= *literary or artistic production*) obra; *verb* trabajar; **— as** trabajar de
workshop taller *m.*
world mundo
worry molestar; (= *be worried*) tener cuidado, atormentarse
worst peor; **the —,** lo peor
worth: be —, valer
would *denotes conditional tense as in* **'he — do it if he could,'** *or imperfect indicative as in* **'when he lived in Madrid he — take Spanish lessons every day.'**
write escribir
wrong: be —, no tener razón

Y

yard (= *measure*) vara, metro
year año
yell grito; **give a —,** emitir un grito
yellow amarillo, –a
yes sí
yesterday ayer; **the day before —,** anteayer, antes de ayer
yet todavía, aun (*or* aún)
young joven; **— gentleman** señorito; **— lady** señorita
your tu, vuestro, –a, su, su(s) *or* el (la, los, las) . . . de Vd.
yours tuyo, –a, vuestro, –a, suyo, –a, el (la, los, las) de Vd., el tuyo, *etc.*, el vuestro, *etc.*, el suyo, *etc.*

INDEX

a: bef. direct obj., 111; *al* (*a la*, etc.) = Eng. 'a,' 103, *c;* bef. infins., 97; with verbs meaning 'take from,' etc., 111, *a*, 207; idioms, 221

Abstract Nouns: used with def. art., 105 (1); pl. of, 110 (3)

acabar (de), 210

accentuation, 15; of diphthongs and triphthongs, 16; of monosyllables, 17; of compound words, 18; of *–iar* and *–uar* verbs, 240–241

Accusative a, 111 (3)

Accusative Case: see Direct Object and Accusative (Personal) *a*

acordarse, 136, *b*

acostarse, 136, *b*

Adjectives, Lesson XVIII; fem., 35; neuter gender, 104; pl., 37; use of pl., 110 (1), *a;* apocopation, 114–117; position, 119, 120; position of pred. adj., 218 (2); of superlative, 123, *g;* agreement, 118; comparison, 123, 124; *than*, 127; repetition, 118, *d;* 120, *d;* used substantively, 121; of nationality, 35, *a*, 105 (4); adj. for adv., 118, *e;* different meaning with *ser* and *estar*, 52 (2), *b*

Adverbs, Lesson XXVIII; position, 219; comparison, 125, 126; *lo* used, 104, *a*, 125, *a; aquí, acá, ahí, allí, allá*, 200; *mucho*, 201; comparison of *mucho*, 126; *muy*, 201; *ya*, 203; *–mente*, 204; *tan*, 128, 166, *a;* idioms, 210

Agreement: of subj. and verb, 216; of adj., 118

ahí, allí, allá: see Adverbs

al = *a el*, 30 (1)

alegrarse, 136, *b*

alguien, algo, alguno: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns

alguno: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns

'all,' 181, *a*

'almost,' *poco faltó para que*, 210

Alphabetical List of Verbs, 293

ambos: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns

andar: inflection, 262; meaning, 198; in periphrastic progressive tenses, 98, *b*

Anomalous Past Participles, 281–283

'any,' 175

Apocopation of Adjectives, 114–117

Apposition: noun in, 105 (2), *b;* art. omitted, 106 (1), 103, *a;* art. aft. noun, 123, *g*

aquel: see Demonstratives

aquí, acá: see Adverbs

Articles, Lesson XVI

'ask of': verbs denoting, 111 (2), *a*, 207

atreverse, 136, *b*

Augmentatives: see Qualifying Suffixes

–azo, –acho, –ajo, –ada: see Qualifying Suffixes

'be' = *ser* or *estar*, 52

bien: comparison, 126; *más bien*, 126, *a*

bonito: position, 120, *a*

bueno: apocopation, 114; position, 120, *a;* comparison, 124 (1); *buenos días*, etc., 34

'but,' 213

cada: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns
caer: inflection, 275; idioms, 199
'can': see *poder* and *saber*
Capitalization, 23
–car verbs: orthographic variations of, 236, 236 (1)
Cardinals: see Numerals
caro: position and meaning, 120, *c*
casa: idioms, 111, *a*, 221
Cases: see Possessive Case, Indirect Object, and Personal *a*
castellano, 105 (4), and footnote
–cer and **–cir** verbs: orthographic variations of, 237, 242
ciento: see Numerals
cierto: indef. art. omitted, 103, *b;* position and meaning, 120, *c*
Collectives: see Numerals
color: adj. of, 104
Commands: subjunctive used in, 58
como: *tan . . . como*, 128; used with *saber*, 154, footnote
Comparison, Lesson XIX
Compound Words: accent of, 18
con: *conmigo*, etc., 133, *a*, and footnote
Conditional Sentences, 93–95
Conjunctions, Lesson XXIX; 211–215; *y*, *e*, 211; *o*, *u*, 212; *pero*, *mas*, *sino*, 213; *cuando*, 214; *donde*, 215; *porque*, 215. See also *que*, *como*, etc.
conocer: inflection, 242; meaning, 154
Consonants, 5; labials and labiodentals, 6; dentals or linguadentals, 7; palatals, 8; sibilants, 9; aspirates, 10; tongue-trilled, 11; fricative *y*, 12; double, 14
cosa: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns
countries, cities, etc.: names of, 105 (5)
cual, el cual, cuál: see Relatives and Interrogatives
cualquiera, 189
cuando: see Conjunctions
cuanto: as relative, 160; *cuanto . . . tanto* = 'the . . . the,' 123, *d*

d: lost in imperatives, 76, *a*
dar: inflection, 263; idioms, 155
Dative Case: see Indirect Object; ethical dative, 140
de: denotes possession, 111, 146; after superlatives = 'in', 123, *e;* = 'than,' 127, *a*, *c;* bef. infins., 97; = 'by,' 205, *a*, footnote; denotes material, etc., 208; idioms, 221
deber = 'should,' 72 (2); with dependent infin., 97, *a*
Defective Verbs, 284–292
Definite Article, Lesson XVI; forms, 30, 104; *el* for *la*, 30 (2); use, 104–105; used in place of possessive, 144; with superlatives, 123, *b*, *f*, *g;* with poss. pron., 145; with rel. pron., 158, 159, *b*; with prepositional phrases and relative clauses, 146, 152; with infin., 97 (3), 105 (7); omission, 106; omitted bef. poss. pron., 146, *b; lo*, 104; *lo*, with superlative adv., 125, *a;* = Eng. 'a,' 'an,' 103, *c*
del = *de el*, 30 (1)
Demonstratives, Lesson XXIII
Adjectives, 149; meaning, 48, 150; position, 149, *a;* repetition, 48, *a*
Pronouns, 151; 'the former,' 'the latter,' 151, *a;* 'that,' 151, *b; aquel* bef. phrase and clause, 152, *a; en* (*de*, *a*) *ésta* (*ésa*), 151, *c*
día, 24 (2), *a*
diferente: position and meaning, 120, *c*
Diminutives: see Qualifying Suffixes
Diphthongs: kinds of, 4; accentuation of, 16
Direct Object (of verbs): with *a*, 111 (3); position of, 218

'do': aux. 'do' not translated into Spanish, 32
don, doña: use, 105 (2), footnote; art. not used, 105 (2), *a*
donde: see Conjunctions; = relative, 162
dormirse, 136, *c*
dos: los dos, 183

e: see Conjunctions
él, ella, ello, etc.: see Personal Pronouns
el: see Definite Article
Elision of Vowels, 3 (2)
en: with adjectives of nationality, 105 (4); with names of countries, 105 (5); idioms, 221
estar: inflection, 260; meaning, 52; to express position, 52 (2); in periphrastic progressive tenses, 98, *b; estar para* (*por*) 148
este, ese: see Demonstratives
–ete, –ejo: see Qualifying Suffixes

'for,' 205
'former' ('the former,' 'the latter'), 151, *a*
Fractionals: see Ordinals
Future Indicative: see Tenses
Future Subjunctive, 91

–gar verbs: orthographic variations of, 236 (2)
Gender: of nouns, 24, 25; of adj., 35; of adj. modifying several nouns, 118; neuter gender of adj., 104; of def. art., 104; of poss. pron., 145, *b;* of demon. pron., 151; of relatives, 158, *c*
Genitive Case: see Possessive Case
–ger and **–gir** verbs: orthographic variations of, 237
grande: apocopation, 115; position and meaning, 120, *c*, 115, *b;* comparison, 124 (2)
–guar verbs: orthographic variations of, 236
–guir verbs: orthographic variations of, 237

haber: inflection, 259; meaning and use, 42; *hay*, 42, *a*, 67 (2); *ha* in temporal clauses, 42, *a*, 66, *a;* idioms, 42, *a*, 44, 67, 148
hacer: inflection, 268; to express state of weather, 67; time, 66, *a*, 74; idioms, 173; *hacerse*, 136, *b*
'have' = *tener* or *haber*, 42
hay: see *haber*
hermoso, 120, *a*
Hypothetical Subjunctive, 91

i changed to *y* in verbs, 238; omitted, 239
–iar verbs: accentuation of, 240–241
Imperative Mood: see Moods
Imperfect Tenses: see Tenses
Inceptive Verbs, 242
Indefinite Adjective Pronouns, Lesson XXVI; *alguien, algo*, 174; *alguno*, 175; apocopation of, 114; *unos*, 175, *c; nadie, nada*, 176; *ninguno*, 177; apocopation of, 114; *mucho*, 178; comparison of, 124 (3); *muchísimo*, 178, *a; poco*, 179; *tanto*, 180; comparison of, 124 (3); *todo*, 181; *mismo*, 182; in refl. constructions, 136, *a; ambos*, 183; *cada*, 184; *otro*, 185; *uno y otro*, etc., 186; *el uno, el otro* in reciprocal constructions, 137; *tal*, 187; *cosa*, 188; *la, las*, 140, *b*
Indefinite Article, Lesson XVI; forms, 26; repetition, 26, *a; un* for *una*, 102, *a;* omitted, 103; in expressions of measure, 103, *c*
Indicative Mood: see Moods
Indirect Object, 111 (2); with verbs meaning to 'take from,' 'ask of,' etc., 111 (2), *a*, 207; ethical dative, 140
Infinitive Mood: see Moods
Interrogative Sentences, 60
Interrogatives, Lesson XXV; 165–

170; *qué*, 166; *quién*, 167; *quién* in optative expressions, 96; *cuál*, 168; *cúyo*, 169; *cuánto*, 170; *qué cosa*, 188, footnote
ir: inflection, 269; meaning, 198; in periphrastic progress. tenses, 98, *b*; *irse*, 136, *c*; 'go and' = *ir a*, 163, *a*; idioms, 164, 221
Irregular Verbs, 258–280
–ísimo, 123, *h*
'it,' 132
–ito, –illo, –ico, –ín, –ino: see Qualifying Suffixes

jamás, 171

'know' = *conocer* or *saber*, 154

la, las: with force of indef. pron., 140, *b*
'last' = *último*, *postrero*, or *pasado*, 114, footnote
'latter' ('the former,' 'the latter'), 151, *a*
'let' and inf. = Span. subj., 78
levantarse, 136, *b*
lindo, 120, *a*
lo (neuter art.), 104; with superlative adv., 125, *a*; idioms, 104, *a*

mal: comparison, 126
malo: apocopation, 114; position, 120, *a*; comparison, 124 (1)
mano, 24 (2), *a*
mapa, 24 (2), *a*
mas: see Conjunctions
más: comparative of *poco*, 124 (3), 126; used to form comparatives, 123–126; *más bien*, 126, *a*; *no más . . . que*, 127, *b*, 213, *a*; in exclamations, 166, *a*; idioms, 191
mayor, 124 (2); *la mayor parte de* = 'most,' 194, *a*
medio and **mitad**, 194, *b*
mejor, 124 (1), 126
menor, 124 (2)
menos, 124 (3), 126; idioms, 191
–mente: see Adverbs
mientras . . . = 'the . . . the,' 123, *d*
mil: see Numerals
mismo: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns; idioms, 210
Moods:
Infin.: 'to,' bef. infin., 97; with def. art., 97 (3); aft. prepositions, 97 (2); reference list, 294; after expressions of 'willing,' 'fearing,' etc., 82, footnotes; after *oír* and *ver*, 155
Participles: use of pres. part., 98; of past part., 100
Imperative, 75–76
Subjunctive: difference between ind. and subjunc. moods, 80; subjunc. to express command, 58, 78; in dependent clauses, 80, 81, 82, 90; pres. subjunc. to denote fut. time, 82, *a*; imp. subjunc. in *–ra* = pret. or pluperf. ind., 87, footnote; choice between imp. subj. in *–se* and *–ra*, 87; imp. and fut. (hyp.) subjunc. built on pret. stem, 89; fut. (hyp.) subjunc., 91; condition "contrary to fact," 93; subjunc. in indirect discourse, 95; idioms, 83, 96
morirse, 136, *c*
'most,' 123, *h*; 124 (3), *a*
mucho: pron., see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns; adv., 201; comparison, 124 (3), 126; = 'very,' 201, *a*
Multiplicatives: see Numerals
muy: see Adverbs; = 'most,' 123, *h*

nadie, nada, ninguno: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns
Negation: neg. sentence, 31; neg. prons. and advs., 171
Neuter Gender: see *lo*, 104
'never,' 171, footnote
ni . . . ni, 171
ninguno: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns

no: see Negation; *no más . . . que*, 127, *b; que no*, 210
nosotros, nos: see Personal Pronouns
Nouns, Lesson XVII; gender, 24, 25; pl., 29; use of pl., 110; pl. of abstract nouns, 110 (3); sing. noun to denote something that belongs to every member of group, 110 (2); poss. case, 111, 146, *a;* dative case, 111 (2), 207; accusative case, 111 (3); position of subj. and obj. noun, 217, 218; in predicate, 52 (2) *a;* in apposition, 105 (2), *b;* requiring def. art., 105 (1); used as adj., 120, *e*, 208
nuevo, 120, *c*
Number: of noun, 29; of adj., 37; of adj. modifying several nouns, 118
Numerals:
Cardinals, 192; apocopation of *uno*, 114; of *ciento*, 117; used instead of ordinals, 193, *c, d, e*
Ordinals, 193; apocopation of *primero* and *tercero*, 114
Fractionals, 194
Collectives, 195
Multiplicatives, 196
Phrases, 197
Def. art. omitted, 106 (2); denoting hours, 74; denoting days, 74, 193, *e;* after comparatives, 127, *a*
nunca, 171

o: see Conjunctions
oír: inflection, 276; followed by dependent infin., 155; idioms, 155
ojalá, 96
olvidarse, 136, *b*
–ón, –ote: see Qualifying Suffixes
'only': 127, *b*
Ordinals: see Numerals
Orthographic Variations, 235–241
Orthography: non-phonetic, 13
otro: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns

para, 205, 208; = 'to,' 97, *b*, 205, *b;* idioms, 210
parte: in fractional expressions, 194, *a*
Participles, 43, 98, 100; anomalous past participles, 281–283
pasado, 114, footnote
Passive Voice, 136, *f*
peor, 124 (1), 126
pequeño: position, 120, *a;* comparison, 124 (2)
Perfect Tenses: see Tenses
Periphrastic Progressive Tenses: see Tenses
pero: see Conjunctions
Personal a, 111 (3); omitted, 111 (3), *a, b;* to distinguish object from subject, 111 (3), *c*
Personal Pronouns, Lessons XX–XXI; as subj. and obj. of verb, 130; *tú* and *usted*, 131; *ello* and *lo*, 132; *se* and *sí*, 135, 136; subj. pron. omitted, 130, *a;* position of obj. pron., 130, *b, c, d, e;* of two obj. prons., 138, 139; of refl. *se*, 135, *a; se* for *le, les*, 138, *a; la, las* for *le, les*, fem., 130, *h; le* and *lo* as masc. obj. pron., 130, *i;* refl. prons. of 1st and 2d pers., 136; prepositional forms, 133; poss. case, 146; explicit obj. of verb, 139; *conmigo*, etc., 133, *a*, and footnote
Pluperfect Tense: see Tenses
Plural: of nouns, 29; of adjs., 37; use of, 110
pobre, 120, *c*
poco: pron., see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns; adv., comparison, 124 (3), 126
poder: inflection, 265; idioms, 191
poner: inflection, 271; *ponerse*, 136, *b;* idioms, 210
por, 205, = Eng. 'a' or 'per,' 103, *c;*

bef. *el cual* (*que*), 158, *a;* idioms, 83, 210
porque: see Conjunctions
Position: of nouns, 217, 218; of adjs., 119, 120; of advs., 219
Possessives, Lesson XXII
Adjectives, 142; position, 143; def. art. for poss., 144; repetition, 48, *a*
Pronouns, 145, 146; explicit forms, 146
Possessive Case, 111 (1), 146, *a;* elliptical for 'at (to, from) the house, etc., of,' 111 (1), *a*
postrero, 114
Prefixes in Syllabification, 21
Prepositions, Lesson XXVIII; and see *a, de, en, para, por,* etc.; reference list of prepositions bef. infin., 294; preposition retained bef. substantive clause, 206; idioms, 210
Present Tense: see Tenses
Preterite Perfect: see Tenses
Preterite Tense: see Tenses
primero: see Numerals
Pronouns: see Personal Pronouns, Possessives, etc.
Pronunciation, 1–14
Punctuation, 22

Qualifying Suffixes, Lesson XXX; 222–227; diminutives, 223; their meaning, 224; augmentatives, 225; combinations of diminutive and augmentative endings, 226; *–azo* and *–ada* to denote result of action, 227
Quantity of vowels, 3
que and **qué:** see Relatives and Interrogatives
que (*conj.*): rarely omitted, 82, *b;* = 'than,' 127; *que* for *cuando,* 214, *a;* idioms, 83
querer: inflection, 264; = 'will,' 72 (1); with dependent infin., 97, *a;* idioms, 96, 191
quien and **quién:** see Relatives and Interrogatives
quienquiera, 189
–quir verbs: orthographic variations of, 237

Radical-changing Verbs, 243–256
Reciprocal Construction, 137
Reflexive Construction, 135–136
Regular Verbs, 232–241
reír: inflection, 255; *reírse,* 136, *b*
Relatives, Lesson XXIV; 156–162; *que,* 157; *el cual, el que,* 158; *quien,* 159; *cuanto,* 160; *cuyo,* 161; *donde,* 162; relative not omitted, 156, *b; del que,* etc., after comparatives, 127, *c;* followed by subjunc. mood, 82 (6); *cada cual,* 184

s: lost in imperatives, 78, *b*
saber: inflection, 267; meaning, 154; idioms, 155
salir: inflection, 274; idioms, 210
santo, 116
se and **sí:** see Personal Pronouns
'self,' 182; in refl. constructions, 136, *a*
sentarse, 136, *b*
Sentences: negative, 31; interrogative, 60; conditions "contrary to fact," 93; when the verb of the apodosis is subjunc., 95
señor, señora, and **señorita,** prefixed to title, 105 (2)
Sequence of tenses, 90
ser: inflection, 258; meaning, 52; with predicate nouns, 52 (2), *a;* periphrastic progressive tenses, 98, *b;* idioms, 53, 148
'should' = cond. ind. or *deber,* 72 (2)
si: followed by cond. ind., = 'whether,' 93, *b;* as intensive adverb, 202
sí ('yes'), *que sí,* as intensive adverb, 202; idioms, 210
sin: followed by *el cual* (*que*), 158, *a*
sino: see Conjunctions

'some,' 175
Subject (of verb): position, 60, 217
Subjunctive Mood: see Moods
Syllabification, 19–21

'take from,' verbs of, 111 (2), *a*, 207
tal: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns
tampoco, 171
tan: *tan . . . como*, 128; in exclamations, 166, *a*
tanto, 180; *tanto . . . como*, 128; *cuanto . . . tanto* = 'the . . . the,' 123, *d*
tener: inflection, 261; meaning and use, 42; *a* omitted after it, 111 (3), *a;* with nouns denoting bodily characteristics, 105 (6); idioms, 44, 148
Tenses:
Pres. = Eng. perf., 66
Imperf. and pret. ind., use of, 62; imperf. = Eng. pluperf., 66; perf. ind. for pret., 62, *b*
Fut. and cond. ind., formation of, 69, footnote; fut. and cond. of probability, 73; cond. ind. with *si*, 93, *b;* Span. pres. and imperf., = Eng. perf. and pluperf., 66
Pluperf. and pret. perf., 65
Pres. subj. to express fut. time, 82, *a*
Imperf. and fut. (hyp.) subj., on pret. stem, 89; choice between forms in *-se* and *-ra*, 87; imperf. in *-ra* = pluperf. or pret. ind., 87, footnote
Fut. (hyp.) subj., use of, 91
Imperf., use of, 90
Perf. tenses, 233
Periphrastic progress. tenses, 234, 98, *b*
Sequence of, 90
In conditions, 93, 94, 95
tercero: see Numerals
'than,' 127
'the . . . the' (*correlative*), 123, *d*
'there,' expletive, 200, *c*
Time: expressions of, — with art., 105 (3); hours, days, etc., 74, 193, *e;* with *haber* and *hacer*, 66, *a;* with fut. and cond. of probability, 73; 'for,' 205, *c;* idioms, 210, 221
Titles: def. art. bef. title, 105 (2)
'to' bef. infin., 97, 294; = *por* or *para*, 205, *b*
todo: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns
Triphthongs: kinds of, 4; accentuation of, 16
tú: see Personal Pronouns

u: see Conjunctions
-uar verbs: accentuation of, 240–241
-uelo, -ucho: see Qualifying Suffixes
-uir verbs, 257
último, 114, footnote
un, una: 26; see Indefinite Article
uno: see Numerals
unos, uno y otro: see Indefinite Adjective Pronouns
'used to': expressed by imperf. ind., 62, *a*
usted: see Personal Pronouns

valer: inflection, 273; idioms, 210
vario, 120, *c*
venir: inflection, 270; in periphrastic progressive tenses, 98, *b;* 'come and' = *venir a*, 163, *a;* idioms, 164
ver: inflection, 280; followed by dependent infin., 155
Verbs, 229–293
Principal parts, 231
Regular verbs, inflection, 232; perf. tenses, 233; periphrastic progressive tenses, 234; orthographic variations, 235–241
Inceptive verbs, 242
Radical-changing verbs, 243–256
1st class, 245–250

2d class, 251
3d class, 252–256
–**uir** verbs, 257
Irregular verbs, 258–280
Anomalous past participles, 281–283
Defective verbs, 284–292
Alphabetical list of irregular verbs, 293
Reference list of verbs with or without a preposition, 294
Refl. construction, 135, 136, 140
Recip. construction, 137
Followed by infin. with or without *a* or *de*, 97, 294
Position of subj., 217; of obj., 218 (1); of pred. adj., 218 (2); of adv., 219
Agreement with subj., 216
'very,' 201, *a*
viejo, 120, *a*
Voices: passive voice, 136, *f.*; refl. for passive voice, 136, *d*, *e*
volver (**a**), 210
vosotros: see Personal Pronouns
Vowels: pronunciation of, 2; elision of, 3 (2); quantity of, 3 (1)

weather: idioms, 67
'will': as independent verb or auxiliary, 72 (1)
Word Order, 217
'would': expressed by imperf. indic., 62, *a*

y: see Conjunctions
ya: see Adverbs
yo: see Personal Pronouns
'you,' 131

–**zar** verbs, orthographic variations of, 236

antes de – (time)
delante de – (place)

después de (time)
detras de (place)

Independent Clause	Dependent Clause
Pres. or Fut	Time contemporary – Pres. Subj.
	Time prior – Impf Subj. / Pres. Perf. "
	Time subsequent – Pres. Subj.
Past or Cond	Time contemporary – Imp. Subj.
	Time prior – Plupf Subj.
	Time subsequent – Imp. Subj.

Conditional Sentences

1.- Nothing implied – Indicative

2.- Less Vivid Future – possibility in future
Condition = either form of Imp. Subj.
Result = Ra form of Subj. or the conditional

3. Contrary to Fact –
Same as above.

Progressive Tenses = estar + pres. part.

Passive Voice = ser + past part.

	a	e	i	o	u
K	ca	que	qui	co	cu
θ	za	ce	ci	zo	zu
G	ga	gue	gui	go	gu
X	ja	je ge	gi	jo	ju
Kw	cua	cue	cui	cuo	—
Gw	gua	güe	güi	güo	—